Form NHS-HIS-100
FY 1965

NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEY

INTERVIEWER'S MANUAL

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS
Acting as Collecting Agent for
U.S. Public Health Service

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART A

DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY
AND
PERSONS TO BE INTERVIEWED

		Page
CHAPTER 1.	DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY	A-1
A.	Purpose of the National Health Survey	A-1
	1. General	A-1
	2. Examples of uses of the data	A-2
	3. Who uses the data	A-4
B.	Sponsorship of the Survey	A-4
	1. The Health Interview Survey (NHS-HIS)	A-4
	2. The Health Examination Survey (NHS-HES)	A-4
	3. The Health Records Survey (NHS-HRS)	A-5
C.	Design of the Sample on which the Health Interview Survey is based	A-5
	1. Selection of sample PSU's	A-5
	2. Selection of sample segments and households	A-5
	3. The quarterly sample	A-6
D.	Scope of the Survey	A-6
E.	Information accorded confidential treatment	A-6
CHAPTER 2.	THE SAMPLE UNITS TO BE INCLUDED IN THE SURVEY	A-7
A.	General	A-7
B.	Area segments	A-7
	1. Listing materials	A-7
C.	Procedure in determining units to be interviewed	A-7
	1. Determine week of interview	A-8
	2. Determine general location of segment	A-8
	3. Segment Map	A-9
	4. Use of Segment List	A-9
	5. Disregard List of Structures With No Living Quarters	A-11
	6. Use of Special Dwelling Listing Sheet	A-11
D.	Types of area segments	A-12
	1. TA segments	A-12
	2. NTA segments	A-12
E.	Procedure in locating sample units	A-12
	1. Use of maps to locate the segment	A-12
F.	Procedure within the segment	A-15
	1. Procedure for checking listing in TA Segments	A-15
	2. Procedure in NTA segments	A-16

G. Procedures for handling extra, merged, or converted units.. A-17
1. Identification of housing unit..... A-17
2. "Extra" units..... A-18
3. Merged units..... A-21
4. Converted units..... A-21
5. Units no longer in existence or listed in error..... A-21
H. Special Dwelling Places..... A-22
1. Special Dwelling Listing Sheet..... A-22
2. Sample units selected from a complete listing..... A-22
3. Sample units selected from a register..... A-22
4. New or missed special dwelling place..... A-22
5. Verify address, name and type of special dwelling place..... A-23
6. Housing unit changed to entire special dwelling place.. A-23
7. More than one unit on Segment List found to be in special dwelling place..... A-23
8. Special dwelling place discovered in answer to questionnaire Items 12-14..... A-24
9. Further instructions on special dwelling places..... A-24
I. Office assistance in difficult cases..... A-24
J. How to treat TA segments where number of units exceeds 20.. A-24
1. How to subsample..... A-25
2. Example of subsampling..... A-25
3. Which units to interview after subsampling..... A-25
4. Report subsampled segments on Segment Folder..... A-26

CHAPTER 3. THE HOUSING UNIT AND WHOM TO INCLUDE IN THE SURVEY..... A-27

A. The Housing Unit..... A-27
1. Many kinds of living quarters..... A-27
2. Examples of housing units and "other units"..... A-27
3. Household defined..... A-28
4. Definition of a housing unit..... A-28
5. Direct access defined..... A-28
6. Kitchen or cooking equipment defined..... A-29
7. "Other unit" defined..... A-29
B. Rules for Handling Unusual Situations..... A-30
1. Trailers, boats, tents, and railroad cars..... A-30
2. Guests and servants quarters..... A-30
3. Boarding house..... A-31
4. Rooming house..... A-31
5. Combination rooming and boarding house..... A-31
6. Hotels..... A-32
7. YMCA's and YWCA's..... A-33
8. Motels, tourist camps or courts, etc. A-33
9. Vacation cabins..... A-33

C. Rules for classifying living quarters in special dwelling places A-33
1. Armed Forces installations (excluding Armed Forces hospitals) A-34
2. Convents, Monasteries, and Sisters', Brothers' or Priests' residences A-34
3. Facilities for housing students A-34
4. Facilities for housing workers A-34
5. Flophouses and missions A-35
6. General hospitals including VA and Armed Forces hospitals, children's hospitals and maternity hospitals A-35
7. Nurses' homes or quarters A-35
8. Recreational and religious camps A-36
9. Private residential clubs and tourist homes A-36
10. Nursing, convalescent and rest homes A-36
11. Specified institutions listed in Appendix A to Part A .. A-37
12. Special Note: "Staff" and "Nonstaff" units A-37
D. How to apply the housing unit definition at the time of interview A-37
1. Typical family group A-37
2. Additional household members - ask about separate quarters A-37
3. Five or more boarders or roomers A-38
4. Vacant living quarters A-38
E. Office assistance in difficult cases A-38
F. Whom to include in the survey A-39
1. General rules A-39
2. Usual place of residence—defined A-39
3. Persons to be counted as household members A-40
4. Persons not to be counted as household members A-41
G. Rules for counting special classes of persons A-42

APPENDIX A (PART A). CODES FOR TYPES OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES A-44

APPENDIX B (PART A). SELECTING SAMPLE UNITS FROM A REGISTER IN A SPECIAL DWELLING PLACE A-47

PART C
HOW TO LIST (See Part C, Table of Contents) ..... (buff pages)

PART D

THE HEALTH QUESTIONNAIRE
AND
HOW TO CONDUCT THE INTERVIEW

(After page A-53 if Parts B and C are not in the Manual)

CHAPTER 1. IDENTIFICATION SHEET
(Front page of the Questionnaire)..... D-1

A. Use of front page..... D-1
B. Determination of "YEAR BUILT" in area segments at time of interviewing..... D-1
1. Identification of units for which "YEAR BUILT" determination to be made..... D-2
2. Procedures for determining "YEAR BUILT"..... D-2
C. Item 1. Number of questionnaires..... D-5
D. Items 2-8. Location and identification of unit..... D-5
1. Items 2(a), 2(b), and 2(c). Location of unit..... D-5
2. Items 3-7. Identification..... D-6
3. Item 8. Serial number..... D-7
4. "Extra" unit in NTA or B segment..... D-7
5. Items 6-8. To be copied to additional questionnaires.. D-7
E. Items 9-15. When and how to fill..... D-7
F. Land Usage..... D-7
1. Item L: To be filled by office..... D-7
2. Item 9. Own, rent, or rent-free..... D-7
3. Items 10(a)-(b). Acreage..... D-8
4. Item 10(c). Sale or produce ($50 or more)..... D-10
5. Item 10(d). Sale or produce ($250 or more)..... D-10
6. Noninterviews..... D-11
G. Item 11. Type of unit..... D-11
H. Items 12-14. Listing check..... D-11
1. Wording of questions..... D-12
2. Item 12..... D-12
3. Item 13..... D-13
4. Item 14..... D-13
5. "Other units"..... D-13
6. Table X..... D-14
I. Item 15. Telephone number..... D-15
J. Item D..... D-16
K. Item 16. Record of calls..... D-16
1. Calls for entire household..... D-16
2. Return calls for individual respondents..... D-17
3. Illustration of how to fill Item 16..... D-17
L. Item 17. Noninterviews..... D-18
1. Type A noninterviews..... D-18
2. Type B noninterviews..... D-19
3. Type C noninterviews..... D-21
4. Type Z noninterviews..... D-22

M. Items 18 and 19. Name and code of interviewer..... D-23

CHAPTER 2. SELECTED PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS
(Questions 1-5)..... D-24

A. Symbols, type face and general rules..... D-24
1. Symbols used..... D-24
2. Questions in heavy type..... D-24
3. Use of pronoun, "you"..... D-24
4. How to delete an entry..... D-24
5. Use of footnotes..... D-25
B. Questions on personal characteristics..... D-25
C. Eligible respondent..... D-25
1. For questions 3-5..... D-26
2. Exceptions to eligible respondent rule..... D-26
3. Return call may be necessary..... D-27
4. No eligible respondent in household..... D-27
D. Question 1. Names of household members..... D-27
1. List all household members..... D-27
2. Questions 1e and 1f..... D-28
a. Question 1e. Usual residence elsewhere..... D-29
b. Question 1f. In Armed Forces..... D-29
(1). "Armed Forces"--defined..... D-30
(2). Armed Forces Reserve..... D-30
3. Who are household members..... D-30
4. Delete the name if not a household member..... D-30
5. Use additional questionnaires if more than 6 household members..... D-31
6. Prescribed order of listing household..... D-31
7. How to enter names..... D-31
E. Question 2. Relationship to head of household..... D-32
1. Head of household..... D-32
2. Relationship of other persons..... D-33
3. Persons in "special dwelling places," rooming houses, etc. D-33
F. Questions 3-5. How to ask the questions..... D-33
1. Illustration A (order of asking questions 1-5)..... D-34
G. Question 3. Age at last birthday, race, and sex..... D-34
1. Race and sex..... D-35
H. Question 4. Marital status..... D-35
1. Annulled marriages..... D-35
2. Separated persons..... D-35
3. Common-law marriages..... D-35
I. Question 5. Work status in past 2 weeks..... D-36
1. Work—defined..... D-36
2. Where to proceed next..... D-36

3. Question 5b. With a job or business..... D-36
a. Job—defined..... D-37
b. Business—defined..... D-37
4. Question 5c. Looking for work or on layoff..... D-37
a. How to record the answer..... D-37
b. Looking for work—defined..... D-38
c. Layoff—defined..... D-38
5. Question 5d. Which—looking or on layoff..... D-38
6. Question 5e. Are you retired..... D-38
J. Item H. Whom to interview..... D-39

CHAPTER 3. HEALTH AND HOSPITALIZATION QUESTIONS, 6-13 AND ITEM R..... D-40

A. General procedure..... D-40
1. Order of asking questions 6-13..... D-40
Illustration B (order of asking questions 6-13)..... D-41
2. How to record illness conditions reported in questions 6-12..... D-42
3. Use of probes in questions 6-8..... D-42
4. Probe in question 9..... D-43
5. Questions 10, 11. List of conditions and list of impairments..... D-43
6. Question 12. Other problems with health..... D-43
7. Question 13. Hospitalization probe question..... D-43
B. Questions 6-8..... D-43
1. Time reference..... D-43
2. Last week or the week before—defined..... D-44
3 a. Calendar card..... D-44
3. Question 6. Sick last week or the week before..... D-46
4. Question 7. Medicine or treatment..... D-46
5. Question 8. Accidents and injuries during last week or the week before..... D-47
C. Question 9. Injuries which still bother a person..... D-47
1. What to record..... D-48
D. Question 10. Conditions List, Card A..... D-48
1. Time reference..... D-49
2. How to ask the question..... D-49
3. Conditions not present at time of interview..... D-50
4. Present conditions not causing trouble..... D-50
5. Doubts about recording..... D-50
6. Hasn't had condition for 12 months or more..... D-51
7. "Arrested" conditions..... D-51
8. Conditions volunteered..... D-51
9. How to record the answers..... D-51
10. What to record..... D-51
E. Question 11. Impairments List, Card B..... D-51
F. Question 12. Other ailments, conditions, or problems with health..... D-52
1. Time reference..... D-52
2. How to ask the question..... D-52
3. Impairments and conditions on Card A..... D-53

G. Question 13. Hospitalizations since specified date..... D-53
1. "Being in a hospital"—defined..... D-54
2. Nursing homes, rest homes, or similar places..... D-54
H. Item R. Who responded..... D-55
1. Adults..... D-55
2. Children..... D-55
3. "At home" but not interviewed..... D-55

CHAPTER 4. TABLE I AND TABLE A—ILLNESSES, IMPAIRMENTS, AND INJURIES. D-56

A. Table I..... D-56
1. General procedure..... D-56
2. Column (a). Column number of person..... D-56
Illustration C (order of entering conditions in Table I)..... D-57
3. Column (b). Question number..... D-58
4. Column (c). "Doctor ever talked to"..... D-58
B. Table I (Columns (d-1)-(d-4))..... D-58
1. Column (d-1). Asking the question..... D-61
a. Recording name of condition..... D-62
b. Vague or incomplete description..... D-62
c. Accidents or injuries—entry in column (d-1)..... D-62
d. Injuries defined..... D-63
e. Adequate reporting of nature of injury for column (d-1)..... D-64
2. Column (d-2). Cause of condition..... D-66
a. Impairment defined..... D-66
b. Symptom defined..... D-67
c. Amount of detail required for impairments and symptoms in column (d-2)..... D-67
d. Illustration D (Examples of entries in columns (d-1)-(d-2)..... D-68,69
3. Column (d-3). Kind of trouble..... D-68
a. When to ask column (d-3)..... D-70
b. How to ask column (d-3) for allergies, strokes.... D-70
4. Column (d-4). Part of body affected..... D-71
a. Conditions for which column (d-4) must be asked... D-71
b. Detail needed..... D-72
c. Illustration E (Examples of conditions properly reported in columns (d-1)-(d-4)..... D-72,73
5. Condition to which remaining questions refer..... D-72
a. Re-ask column (c) if "No"..... D-74
C. Types of reporting problems..... D-74
1. Dental conditions..... D-75
2. Pregnancy and childbirth..... D-75
3. Menstruation and menopause..... D-75
4. Cysts, tumors or other growths..... D-76
5. Illness resulting from vaccination, immunization, etc. D-76
6. Mental illness..... D-76
7. Names of operations..... D-76
8. Reaction to drugs..... D-76

9. Illnesses occurring in past 12 months not now present..... D-76
10. Illnesses, etc., starting after "last Sunday night".. D-77
11. Conditions first reported in Table I..... D-77
12. Conditions reported later in the interview..... D-78
13. Birth injuries..... D-78
14. Broken eardrum..... D-78
15. Uncertain injuries..... D-78
16. Conditions reported separately which may be the same..... D-79
a. Caution about deciding two conditions are the same..... D-79
b. Procedure for conditions which are reported to be the same..... D-79
D. Table A..... D-79
1. Information from Table I..... D-80
2. Questions 1 and 2..... D-81
a. Question 1. When it happened..... D-81
b. Question 2. Nature of injury and part of body... D-81
3. Question 3(a). Motor vehicle involved in accident... D-81
4. Question 3(b). Number of motor vehicles involved.... D-82
5. Question 3(c). Was motor vehicle moving..... D-83
6. Questions 4(a) and 4(b). Where accident happened.... D-83
7. Question 5. At work when accident happened..... D-85
E. Table I (Columns (e)-(w))..... D-86
1. Columns (e)-(h). Restricted activity last week or the week before..... D-86
a. "Things you usually do"—defined..... D-86
b. Columns (g) and (h). Cut down for as much as a day..... D-87
(1) "Cut down for as much as a day"—defined.... D-87
2. Column (i). How many days during that two-week period..... D-88
3. Column (j). Number of days in bed..... D-89
a. "Day in bed"—defined..... D-89
b. Check entry..... D-89
4. Column (k). Days lost from school..... D-89
a. "School day"—defined..... D-89
b. School vacation..... D-90
c. Disregard work days..... D-90
5. Column (l). Days lost from work..... D-90
a. Work—defined..... D-90
b. "Work day"—defined..... D-90
c. Disregard school days..... D-90
6. Check for number of days reported in columns (k) and (l)..... D-90
Illustration F (Some patterns of restricted activity)..... D-91
7. Check between columns (i), (j), (k), and (l)..... D-92
8. Overlapping days of restricted activity..... D-92

9. Columns (m)-(o). Condition first noticed during or prior to past 3 months D-92
a. "First noticed"—defined D-92
b. Past 3 months—defined D-93
c. Column (o). Condition started prior to or during past 2 weeks D-93
10. Column (p). Condition first noticed during past 12 months or before D-93
11. Column (aa). Instructions to interviewer D-94
12. Column (q). Bed days during past 12 months D-95
a. "Bed day"—defined D-95
b. Help the respondent to estimate D-95
c. Check entry D-95
d. Overlapping bed days D-95
13. Column (r). Bed days during last week or the week before D-95
14. Column (s). Number of times doctor seen in past 12 months D-96
15. Column (t). Activities affected by health D-96
a. Card to be used D-96
b. How to ask the question D-97
c. Illustrations of some limitations D-97
d. Where to record D-98
e. If "4" reported D-98
16. Column (u). Due to illness conditions D-99
a. Which condition D-99
b. "Temporary" activity limitations D-99
17. Column (v). Mobility limitation D-99
18. Column (w). Due to illness conditions D-100
19. Question 14. Visual acuity D-101
a. Question 14a. Ability to read newspaper print with glasses D-101
b. Questions 14b and c D-102

CHAPTER 5. TABLE II--HOSPITALIZATIONS D-103

A. Hospitalizations and stays in nursing homes, rest homes, or similar places D-103
1. Interviewer Instruction D-103
2. General procedure for Table II D-103
3. Column (a). Column number of person D-104
4. Column (b). Question number D-104
5. Column (c). Date entered hospital D-104
a. Caution regarding correct entry for year D-105
6. Column (d). Number of nights in hospital, nursing home, etc D-105
a. Not overnight, delete D-106
b. Entire stay prior to reference period D-106

7. Columns (e), (f), and (g). Check on 12-month and 2-week period..... D-107
a. Column (e). Number of nights in past 12 months.. D-107
b. Column (f). Nights in hospital, nursing home, etc., during last week or the week before..... D-107
c. Column (g). Still there last Sunday night..... D-108
8. Column (h). Condition causing hospitalization or stay in nursing home, rest home or similar place..... D-108
a. Check with column (q), Table I..... D-109
9. Column (i). Operations performed..... D-109
a. Surgical operation—defined..... D-110
b. How to report surgical operations..... D-110
c. Fractures, dislocations, and stitches..... D-110
10. Column (j). Name and address of hospital..... D-111
a. Check local telephone directory..... D-112
B. Question 15. Baby born in hospital..... D-112
1. Question 15a. Baby in household..... D-112
2. Question 15b. Births and deliveries shown in Table II..... D-112
3. Question 15c. Was baby born in the hospital..... D-112
4. Question 15d. Birthdate of baby..... D-112
C. Conditions to be carried back to Table I..... D-112

CHAPTER 6. MEDICINES AND SMOKING HABITS (QUESTIONS 16-22)..... D-114

A. General..... D-114
B. Medicines--Questions 16-17 and Tables P and NP..... D-114
1. Question 16. Medicines prescribed by a doctor..... D-114
a. Medicine prescribed by a doctor--defined..... D-115
b. Question 16b and Table P..... D-115
c. Question 16c..... D-116
d. Complete Table P..... D-116
e. More than five medicines reported..... D-118
2. Question 17. Medicines NOT prescribed by a doctor... D-118
a. Column (a) of Table NP..... D-119
b. Question 17c..... D-119
c. Complete Table NP..... D-120
d. More than five non-prescription medicines reported..... D-122
3. Conditions to be carried back to Table I..... D-122
C. Smoking Habits--Questions 18-22..... D-123
1. Question 18a. Cigarettes smoked during entire life.. D-123
a. Question 18b. Most cigarettes smoked per day.... D-124
2. Question 19. Persons now smoking cigarettes..... D-124
a. Question 19a. Smoke cigarettes now..... D-124
b. Question 19b. How many cigarettes smoked now.... D-125
c. Question 19c. How many cigarettes smoked 12 months ago..... D-125

3. Question 20. Former cigarette smokers..... D-126
a. Question 20a. How many cigarettes smoked 12 months ago..... D-126
b. How long since smoked cigarettes fairly regular regularly..... D-126
4. Question 21. Cigars..... D-127
a. Question 21a. Ever smoked cigars..... D-127
b. Question 21b. Smoke cigars now..... D-127
c. Question 21c. How many cigars smoked now..... D-127
d. Question 21d. How long since smoked cigars..... D-127
5. Question 22. Pipe smoking..... D-128
a. Question 22a. Ever smoked a pipe..... D-128
b. Question 22b. Smoke a pipe now..... D-128
c. Question 22c. How many pipefuls smoked..... D-128
d. Question 22d. How long since smoked a pipe..... D-128
6. Where to proceed next..... D-128

CHAPTER 7. PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND INCOME (QUESTIONS 23-25).... D-129

A. Questions 23-25..... D-129
1. Order of asking questions 23-25 (Illustration G)..... D-129
B. Question 23. Service in Armed Forces..... D-129
1. "Armed Forces"—defined..... D-129
2. Questions 23b, 23c, and 23c. Service during war..... D-130
3. Periods of service..... D-130
C. Question 24. Education..... D-130
1. Make only one mark..... D-130
2. Regular school..... D-130
3. Nonregular schools..... D-131
4. Junior high school..... D-131
5. Post-graduate schooling..... D-131
6. Other school systems..... D-131
7. No schooling..... D-131
8. Question 24b. Year finished..... D-131
D. Question 25. Family income..... D-132
1. Income of all related members..... D-132
2. Income of unrelated persons..... D-133
3. Problem cases..... D-133
4. Approximation acceptable..... D-134
5. Reasons for obtaining income..... D-134

CHAPTER 8. ITEM D AND DIABETES SUPPLEMENT..... D-135

A. General..... D-135
B. Item D on Front of Questionnaire..... D-135
C. Diabetes Supplement (Form NHS-HIS-1(d)..... D-135
1. Respondent rules..... D-135
2. Record of return calls..... D-136

D. General interviewing procedure..... D-136
1. Use footnotes..... D-136
2. "Don't know" answers..... D-137
3. Conditions, hospitalizations, and other health information reported while asking the Diabetes Supplement..... D-137
4. Miscellaneous points..... D-137

PART E

INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES
QUALITY AND QUANTITY OF WORK
AND ADMINISTRATIVE

CHAPTER 1. THE INTERVIEW..... E-1

A. Purpose of this chapter..... E-1
B. How to begin the interview..... E-1
1. Introduce yourself to the respondent..... E-1
2. Ask the first question as soon as possible..... E-1
a. Advance letter..... E-2
3. If persons outside immediate family are present..... E-2
4. Explaining the survey..... E-2
a. Respondent questions purpose..... E-3
b. Confusion with other Census work..... E-3
c. Why this household..... E-4
d. Respondent questions time required for interview..... E-4
e. Refusals..... E-4
C. Your own manner..... E-4
D. How to ask the questions..... E-5
1. Follow the order on the questionnaire..... E-5
2. Information given out of turn or volunteered..... E-5
3. Ask each question exactly..... E-6
a. Do not ask question when the answer has been provided earlier..... E-6
4. Avoid influencing the respondent..... E-7
5. Listen to the respondent..... E-7
6. Repeat the question when necessary..... E-8
7. Repeating the answer..... E-8
8. Do not practice medicine..... E-8
9. Pacing the interview..... E-9
10. Flashcard Booklet, NHS-HIS-501..... E-9
E. Asking additional questions..... E-10
1. When to ask additional questions..... E-10
2. How to ask additional questions..... E-10

F. Recording information correctly..... E-11
1. General..... E-11
2. Recording answers of "don't know"..... E-12
3. Recording information for unrelated persons..... E-12
4. Making corrections..... E-12
G. Review of work..... E-12
1. At close of interview..... E-12
2. Prior to transmittal..... E-13
H. Letter to be left at household after interview..... E-13
I. Use of telephone..... E-13

CHAPTER 2. MAINTAINING BALANCE BETWEEN QUALITY AND QUANTITY OF WORK. E-14

A. Introduction..... E-14
1. The group you are joining..... E-14
2. Rules to become a successful interviewer..... E-14
B. Importance of careful work..... E-15
1. Know your questionnaire..... E-15
2. Review completed questionnaires..... E-15
C. Plan each day's travel..... E-15
D. Getting enough successful interviews..... E-15
E. Plan your calls..... E-16
1. Concentrate on "Not home"..... E-16
F. Number of calls allowed..... E-16
G. Quality Standards..... E-16
1. Some of your households will be reinterviewed..... E-16
2. Excessive Type A noninterviews..... E-17
3. Completion of work on time..... E-17
4. Editing Reports (Form NHS-HIS-705)..... E-17
5. Observation..... E-18
6. Group training..... E-18
7. Home study..... E-18
8. INTERviewer COMMunication (Referral Sheet)..... E-18
H. Production Standards..... E-19

CHAPTER 3. ADMINISTRATIVE..... E-20

A. General information..... E-20
B. Hours of work..... E-20
C. Confidentiality of Survey Information..... E-20
1. Falsification of information..... E-20
2. Bureau of the Census Administrative Order..... E-20
D. Use of Forms 11-35 and 11-35A..... E-20
E. Transmittal of materials..... E-21
1. Late transmittals..... E-22
2. Packaging and mailing..... E-22

APPENDIX A (PART E). CONFIDENTIAL NATURE OF INFORMATION COLLECTED IN NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEYS..... E-23

APPENDIX B (PART E). LIST OF ERROR CODES FOR ILLNESS, INJURY, AND HOSPITALIZATION ENTRIES..... E-25

APPENDIX C (PART E). LIST OF ERROR CODES OTHER THAN DIAGNOSTIC..... E-28

FIGURE I. Example of Form 11-35..... E-34
FIGURE II. Example of Form 11-35A (Front)..... E-35
FIGURE III. Example of Form 11-35A (Back)..... E-36
FIGURE IV. Example of Form NHS-HIS-705..... E-37
FIGURE V. Example of Form NHS-HIS-706..... E-38

PART F

PROCEDURE FOR B SEGMENTS
(See Part F, Table of Contents).....(salmon pages)

NHS-HIS-100
FY 1965

PART A

DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY

AND

PERSONS TO BE INTERVIEWED

CHAPTER 1.

DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY

A. Purpose of the National Health Survey

1. General

The basic purpose of the National Health Survey is to obtain information about the amount, and distribution of illness, its effects in terms of disability and chronic impairments, and the kind of health services people receive.

Prior to the present National Health Survey, the last nationwide survey of health was made in 1935-36, and many developments affecting the national health have taken place since then:

We have gone from depression to prosperity and through two wars.

The "wonder drugs" such as penicillin have been discovered and put into use.

Public and private health programs have been enlarged.

Hospitalization and other health insurance plans broadened their coverage and now protect many more people.

Increased research programs on all major illnesses, such as heart disease, cancer, tuberculosis, muscular dystrophy and polio are leading to their cure, control or prevention through the development of products like the Salk Polio Vaccine.

Despite extensive research on individual diseases in the last 20 years, one important element has been missing. We have had only piece-meal information from the people themselves on their illness and disability or the medical care they have obtained. Prior to the National Health Survey, which started in May 1957, many persons although sick or injured never became a "health statistic," since requirements for reporting illnesses were limited to hospitalized illnesses and certain contagious diseases.

In recognition of the fact that current information on the Nation's health is inadequate, and that National and Regional health statistics are essential, the Congress authorized a continuing National Health Survey (Public Law 652 of the 84th Congress).

2. Examples of uses of the data

What kind of information is obtained from the National Health Survey? How is this used? Here are some examples taken from a discussion of the program before the Congress:

a. Help give direction to health expenditures

Total health expenditures—both public and private—run into many billions of dollars a year. Better statistical information helps to give more effective direction to the expenditure of these large sums.

b. Occurrence and severity of illness and disability

Data on health statistics are valuable tools for the public health officer. The nationwide system of reporting communicable disease has been an important factor in the reduction, and in some instances virtual eradication of, some diseases which were chief causes of illness, disability, and even death several generations ago. Knowledge of the number and location of many diseases made it possible to develop effective programs of immunization, environmental sanitation, and health education which are essential factors in their control.

Today, chronic illness and disability—among both adults and children constitute our greatest public health challenge. Chronic illness and disability lower the earning power, living standards, and the general well-being of individuals and families. They reduce the Nation's potential output of goods and services and, in advanced stages, burden individuals, families and communities with high costs of care and assistance. The basic public health principle to be applied is the same: prevention. Better information on occurrence and severity of diseases and disability are needed in order to prevent their occurrence.

c. Control of accidents

Likewise, accidental injuries in the home and on the highways are extremely costly to society, and programs for effective control are still in their infancy. Statistics on the frequency of nonfatal

as well as fatal accidents of various types help to shape accident prevention programs and measure their success.

d. Health of the aged

There is nationwide interest in prolonging the effective working life of the aged and aging. Knowledge of the health status of people in their middle and later years is essential to effective community planning for the health, general welfare, and continued activity of older persons.

e. Health education and research

Governmental health programs have their counterparts in many of the national and local voluntary associations and organizations. These associations collect large sums—in the neighborhood of $250 million annually—to promote research and education in such fields as poliomyelitis, cancer, tuberculosis, heart disease, mental health, crippling conditions, multiple sclerosis, alcoholism, and so on.

In the past, these organizations had to rely on mortality statistics almost exclusively as a source of information about the disease or condition with which they are principally concerned. Current health statistics produced by the National Health Survey aid such groups greatly in planning their activities and expenditures.

f. Health facilities—hospital care, rehabilitation, insurance, etc.

The growth of prepayment coverage under voluntary health insurance has increased the demand for the kind of illness statistics which can provide reliable estimates of the numbers of people who will be ill for a given number of weeks or months. Illness statistics provide an improved measurement of need for hospitals and other health facilities, and assist in planning for their more effective distribution. Public school authorities are aided in their planning for the special educational problems of mentally retarded or physically handicapped children. Vocational rehabilitation programs, public officials and industries concerned with manpower problems and industrial safety and health measures, the insurance industry, and the pharmaceutical and appliance manufacturers are also greatly assisted by reliable statistics on illness and disability.

g. Factors related to various diseases

Furthermore, statistical information of this kind is an additional tool for medical research. Study of data showing associations between certain economic, geographic, or other factors and the various diseases indicate new avenues of exploration and suggest hypotheses for more precise testing.

3. Who uses the data

The principal users of the data are the United States Public Health Service, State and local health departments, public and private welfare agencies, medical schools, medical research organizations, and corporations engaged in the manufacture of drugs and medical supplies. Many other organizations and individuals also use the data.

B. Sponsorship of the Survey

The National Health Survey is sponsored by the United States Public Health Service, which is a part of the Department of Health, Education and Welfare. The Public Health Service has asked the Bureau of the Census to conduct the interviewing because of the Bureau's broad experience in conducting surveys. The findings of the Survey are analyzed and published regularly by the Public Health Service.

The National Health Survey is not a single survey but a continuing program of surveys which includes the following:

1. The Health Interview Survey (NHS-HIS)

This is the survey covered in this manual and is the one which you will be working on most of the time. It is often referred to simply as "HIS" to distinguish it from the Health Examination Survey and the Health Records Survey described below.

2. The Health Examination Survey (NHS-HES)

As the name suggests this survey collects health information primarily by means of an actual clinical examination. Census interviewing plays a role in this survey but generally only to identify the sample persons who are to be asked to participate in the examinations. The latter are conducted by doctors and dentists from the Public Health Service. If you are ever requested to work on this survey you will be given specific details regarding its procedures and objectives. (The Health Examination Survey is generally referred to as "HES".)

3. The Health Records Survey (NHS-HRS)

This survey collects information on health and related services by examining the records in places in which people receive medical services, such as hospitals and other places which provide medical, nursing, and personal care. If you are ever asked to work on any of the various surveys which are included under this general heading you will be given special instructions before starting your assignment. (The Health Records Survey is generally referred to as "HRS.")

C. Design of the Sample on which the Health Interview Survey is based

The Health Interview Survey is based on a sample of the entire civilian noninstitutional population of the United States. Over the course of a year a total of approximately 42,000 households are interviewed. These households are located in 50 States and the District of Columbia.

The sample for the survey was designed as follows:

1. Selection of sample PSU's

First 357 sample areas called primary sampling units or PSU's were set up by:

a. Forming combinations of one or more counties or parts of counties from all of the counties in the United States.

b. Then grouping together those county combinations that had similar characteristics such as geographic region, size and rate of growth of population, percent of nonwhite population, principal industry and type of agriculture.

c. And, finally selecting one county combination (PSU) from each group to represent all the county combinations in the group.

2. Selection of sample segments and households

Within each PSU, there is finally selected the "segments" which contain the households to be interviewed. There will be approximately nine households to be interviewed in each segment. Further details regarding the nature of the segment and selection and identification of the sample households are to be found in Part A, Chapter 2 and Part F of this Manual.

3. The quarterly sample

The entire group of households assigned for interviewing in any one quarter of the year is called a sample, since it represents a complete sample of the population. Each sample is identified by the letter "B" plus a number; for example, B30, B31, etc. A segment will never be assigned for interviewing more than once in a sample.

D. Scope of the Survey

Health information is gathered for every civilian person in the sample of 42,000 households. Adult residents found at home at the time of your call, provide the information required.

The questionnaire for the survey provides for certain information to be collected on a continuing basis. In addition to these basic items on the questionnaire, supplemental inquiries are carried from time to time in order to provide information on special topics. Any one supplemental inquiry may be repeated at regular intervals, or may be carried only once.

E. Information accorded confidential treatment

All information which would permit identification of the individual is held strictly confidential, seen only by persons engaged in the National Health Survey, (including related studies carried out by the Public Health Service), and not disclosed or released to others for any other purpose.

CHAPTER 2.

THE SAMPLE UNITS TO BE INCLUDED IN THE SURVEY

A. General

There are two general types of segments in the NHS-Health Interview Survey:

B segments

These are segments for which a list of addresses has been drawn from the Decennial Census listings and from permits for new construction from the Survey of Construction. Instructions for B segments are given in Part F of the Manual. B segments have no boundaries on a map.

Area segments

These are segments for which, before a segment is assigned to you for interviewing, either you or another Census employee will have canvassed the area within the segment boundaries and listed all living quarters in the segment on the Segment List and, in some cases, on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet.

B. Area segments

This chapter tells you how to identify the sample units in the area segments which are to be included in the survey. See Part A, Chapter 3 for definitions of the types of units used in listing ("housing units," "other units," and units in special dwelling places).

1. Listing materials

For each segment assigned to you for interviewing, you will receive a Segment Folder which will contain a detailed map of the segment, a Segment List, and a List of Structures With No Living Quarters. You may also receive a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet or a Special Dwelling Worksheet, if there is a special dwelling place such as an institution, dormitory, hotel, etc., in the segment.

C. Procedure in determining units to be interviewed

Use the following procedure to determine which units are to be interviewed, and when they are to be interviewed.

1. Determine week of interview

Determine the week of interview from the last date (i.e., for the current sample) given for the instruction "interview sample units during week of." This will be in Section I on the front of the Segment Folder. Do no interviewing in the segment before the week specified.

2. Determine general location of segment

Determine the general location of the segment from the tab of the Segment Folder and from the approximate location on the grid map, if one is furnished for the segment, which may be a county map or a city street or block map.

a. PSU number and name

You will find the code of the PSU in which the segment is located on the extreme left of the tab of the Segment Folder. On the new Segment Folders, Form NHS-202 (4-24-62), the area included in the PSU will be entered in the "PSU Name" box on the Segment folder tab. In other cases, your supervisor will inform you of the area included in the PSU.

b. Grid reference

If there is a grid map for the segment, there will be a grid reference in the "Grid Ref." box showing the approximate location of the segment on the grid map.

Use your grid map in planning your itinerary and in driving to the general area of the segment.

c. Place

There will be an entry in the "Place" box on the Segment Folder tab. This will identify the city or town in which the segment is located, or will read "Remainder of_____County" if the segment is in a rural area.

d. Type of segment

The type of segment (TA, NTA or B) will be entered in the "Type" box on the tab of the Segment Folder. This will also be entered in Item 7b on questionnaires prepared by your office.

The two types of area segments, TA (Take All) and NTA (Non-Take All), will be discussed in Section D below. (B segments will be discussed in Part F of the Manual.)

e. Sample

A sample designation for the three-month period ("sample") in which the interview week falls is entered here. The period April-June 1964 is designated B29, July-September 1964 is designated B30, and the designation progresses indefinitely in this fashion. The designation that applies at any given time is the one entered in the box furthest to the right. Thus, in the following illustration,

Sample

B22	B26	B30				

since B30 is the last entry to the right, the current interview week is within the period July-September 1964.

f. Section IV, Special instructions and notes

Examine Part A of Section IV, at the bottom of the front page of the folder, to find if your Supervisor has written any special instructions or notes for the segment. If you want to make some notes for yourself, such as directions for reaching the segment, enter them in Part B of this section.

g. Other entries on the folder

Other entries on the tab and front of the folder pertain to office operations or listing instructions.

3. Segment Map

A detailed map of the segment has been attached to the inside of the Segment Folder. The exact segment boundaries are outlined in red on this map. See Section E below, for instructions on use of the segment map.

4. Use of Segment List

One line of the Segment List will have been filled by the lister to describe each unit that he found in the segment at the time of listing.

a. Heading items

Heading items will have been filled to correspond to similar entries on the Segment Folder. The notation "Sheet ____ of ____ Sheets" will have been filled to indicate the first, second, third, etc. sheets, and the total number of sheets. Where the lister was able to determine this information, the post office serving the area containing the segment has been entered also.

b. Segment boundaries or direction of travel

For an urban segment, the section headed "Urban segments--boundaries" will have been filled to indicate the north, east, south and west segment boundaries.

For a rural segment, there will be a separate Segment List for each road or road section in the segment. The lister assigned consecutive letters beginning with A to the roads or road sections in the order traveled (Road A, Road B, etc.). He identified the roads by letter on the segment map and used this road designation on the Segment List. The section headed "Rural segments--direction of travel" will have been filled to identify the road or road section by entries after "Proceeding from," "To" and direction of travel on the lettered road entered in column 2 of the Segment List.

c. Column 2 Street name or road

An entry in this column identifies the street or road of all addresses in the columns to the right. A line across the column separates addresses on one street or road from those on another in urban segments.

d. Column 3 House number or side of road

The house number, if any, will have been entered in this column. In a rural segment L or R (for Left or Right) will be encircled to indicate the side of the road, based on the direction of travel given at the top of the sheet.

e. Column 4 Description or location

There will be entries in this column to help you locate households where more description is needed than a street name and house number. Where there is no house number, the appearance of the house and nearby landscape features will be described, or the mileage from the nearest intersection will be entered. If there is a mailbox or sign with the family name on it, the name will be entered on the last line for the description. If at the time of listing it was determined that there is more than one unit in a structure, the location of each unit within the structure will be indicated.

Any structure thought not to contain living quarters, but on the same property as a listed unit, will be indicated by a check in the appropriate box to the right of the Unit's description (and is to be considered as part of the sample unit).

f.	Column 5 Sample designation	An entry of the current sample designation (for the current three-month period) in this column indicates a unit that has been selected for the current sample. Units for which the current sample designation has been crossed off are eliminated from the survey.
g.	Column 6 Serial number	A serial number entered here corresponds to the serial number entered in Item 8 of the questionnaire.
h.	Column 7 Additions and deletions	You will make entries in this column when you add or delete a sample unit, in accordance with instructions in Paragraph G below.
i.	Column 8 YEAR BUILT	For some of your segments you will have a blue Segment List or buff Supplemental Segment List for NTA Segments. These have a column 8. In certain segments the person who did the listing was to make a partial determination of "YEAR BUILT" at the time of listing. Column 8 was used for recording this information. (You are to determine "YEAR BUILT" at the time of interviewing for units for which it was not determined at the time of listing. Instructions for this are in Part D, Chapter 1.)
j.	Remarks section	The lister will have used the Remarks section at the bottom of the sheet to explain any special problems encountered in the listing.
5.	Disregard List of Structures With No Living Quarters	The List of Structures With No Living Quarters was completed by the lister. You need not concern yourself with this list during the interviewing phase.
6.	Use of Special Dwelling Listing Sheet	If there is a special dwelling place in the segment, the name, address, and type of place will be entered on a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. The units to be interviewed in the place may be listed on this sheet or the total number of units may merely be recorded in the heading.

D. Types of area segments

There are two types of area segments in the Health Interview Survey: Take All (TA) and Non-Take All (NTA). In a TA (Take All) segment you "take all" (interview all) households in the segment; in an NTA (Non-Take All) segment you interview only households at designated addresses. Type of segment is identified on the Segment List and on the Segment Folder tab.

1. TA segments

In TA segments, you will conduct an interview at each of the units listed on the Segment List and at any other units you find in the segment. Note that there is an entry of the current sample designation in Column 5 of the Segment List for each of the units listed.

Occasionally you may be assigned a "large" TA segment in which you will interview only a sample of the units. See Paragraph J below.

2. NTA segments

NTA segments are those which contain more housholds than are desired for interview in any particular sample. Interviews are to be conducted only at the addresses for which you are furnished questionnaires (indicated in Column 5 of the Segment List) and at any unlisted units at the same address. (See discussion below.)

E. Procedure in locating sample units

The procedure in locating sample units in TA and NTA segments consists of using your maps to find the segment, proceeding through the segment using the route of the original lister, and stopping for interviews at units for which you are furnished questionnaires.

1. Use of maps to locate the segment

a. Use of grid map

Use the grid map furnished with your assignment to find the general location of a segment. The grid map will cover a large enough area so that you can spot the general location of a segment in relation to major landmarks of the city or county.

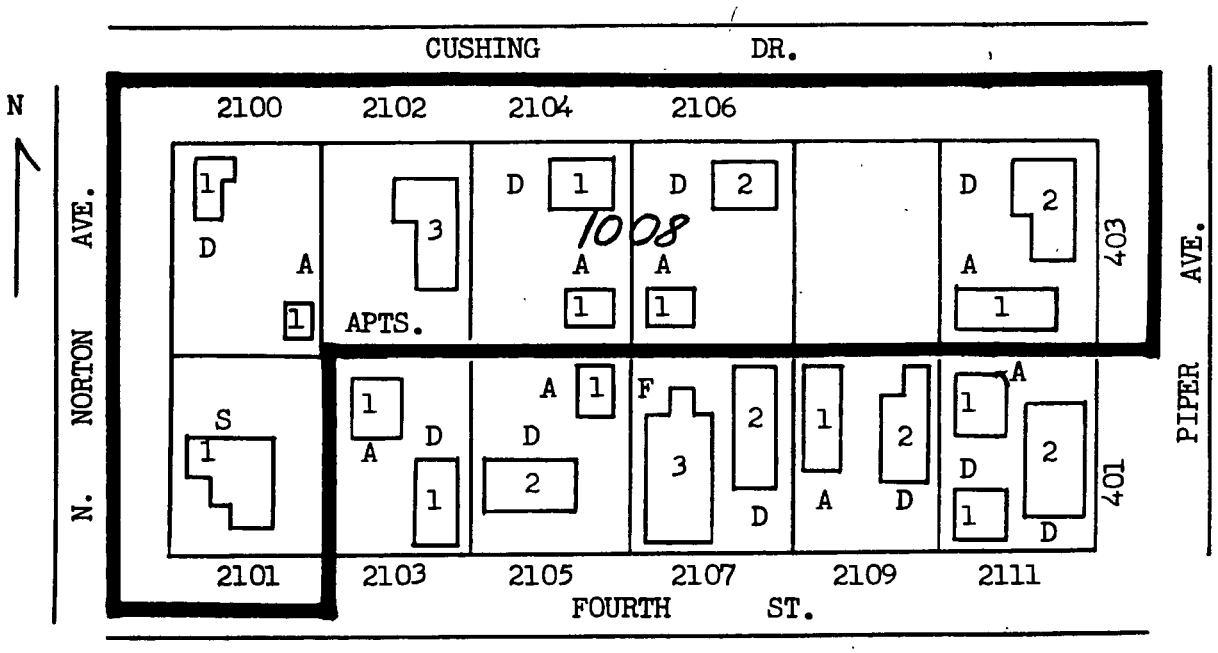
b. Use of segment map

After you have determined how to get to the general area of a segment, use the detailed segment map for defining the exact boundaries of the segment. The boundaries outlined in red on the segment map are to be followed exactly in determining what structures are included and what structures are excluded. The red lines shown on the map represent the exact location of the segment boundaries.

(1) Sanborn detail maps

Wherever possible, segments are outlined on Sanborn detail maps which show the location and addresses of individual structures. (See illustration below. The heavy black line represents the red line boundaries of the segment.)

SANBORN DETAIL MAP



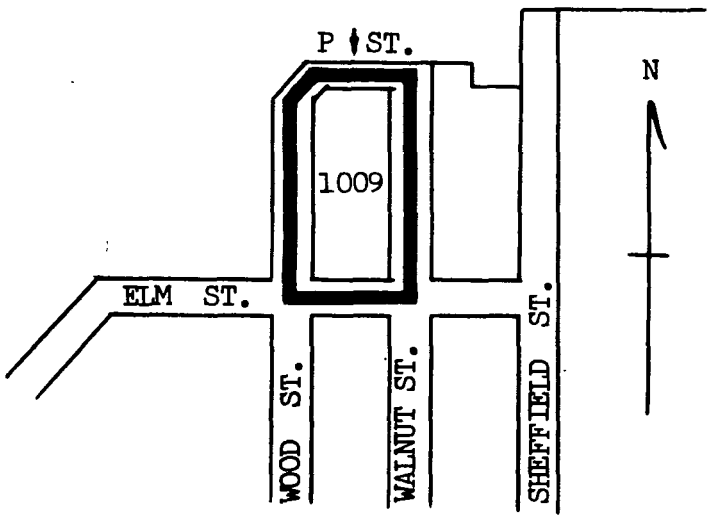
(The letter "D" indicates dwelling; "F" flat; "S" store; "Apt." apartments; and "A" garage. The numbers inside indicate the number of floors in the structure and the numbers along the margin are street numbers.)

Notice that in the segment outlined, the eastern boundary extends from the middle of Cushing Drive to the boundary between 403 and 401 Piper Ave. The southern boundary extends from Piper Ave. along the back property lines of 2103-2111 Fourth Street, the property line between 2101 and 2103 Fourth Street, and then along Fourth Street to N. Norton Ave. The other boundaries are the middle of N. Norton Ave. and Cushing Drive.

(2) Block or Street maps

Some segments will be outlined on Block or Street maps which show only the location of blocks or streets and no structure detail. The figure below illustrates a Block Map.

B L O C K M A P



(3) Other kinds of segment maps

Segments in rural areas will be outlined on county highway maps or (infrequently) on reproductions of large-scale hand-drawn maps prepared by other interviewers.

F. Procedure within the segment

1. Procedure for checking listing in TA Segments

In TA Segments you are to check the listing as you proceed around the segment, interviewing the sample units as you come to them. Add to the Segment List (Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for units in special dwelling places) any units not previously listed and cross off units which no longer exist (except for mergers).

After completing the listing check and making any necessary additions or deletions, enter your initials and the month and year (e.g. 7-64) in the spaces provided on the inside of the Segment Folder, to show that the listing of the TA segment has been brought up to date at the time of interview.

All units should be listed, whether occupied, vacant or under construction. Fill a questionnaire for each unit added to the lists unless the segment is "large" and is subsampled. (See paragraph J below.)

a. Determine precise boundaries of segment from Segment Map

In checking the listing of TA Segments, start at the point on the segment boundary where the original listing started. Determine the precise boundaries of the segment from the Segment Map which is attached to the inside of the Segment Folder. Identify the boundaries of the segment on the ground from the boundaries given on the Segment Map.

Always use the boundaries exactly as shown on the map even though changes may have been made on the ground since the map was drawn. Thus, if a segment boundary is shown on the map as a road, and the road has been relocated since the map was made, the <u>old</u> location of the road is to be considered as the segment boundary.

b. Specific procedure in rural TA segments

For TA segments in rural areas, follow the route of the original listing. However, cover <u>all</u> roads within the boundaries shown on the map, even if the original listing shows no units to be located on a given road. If a road itself is a boundary, the center of the road is considered the boundary

and all units on the side of the road which is within the segment are to be interviewed. If a rural road is not a boundary, canvass both sides of the road at the same time.

Follow each path or lane that might lead to places where people live. Also, look for side roads, breaks in the trees and telephone wires, etc., which may indicate the presence of living quarters.

c. Specific procedure in urban segments

For TA segments in urban areas, follow the route of the original listing. However, always watch for units that may have been missed and for any new units. There may be living quarters in alleys, courts or other passageways. Be sure to cover these and also look for basement, side and rear entrances as they may lead to separate units. Determine whether there are living quarters behind structures that face the street, such as units over garages, over or behind stores, in back yards, etc.

d. Structures which cross segment boundaries

If a structure crosses a segment boundary, consider it to be inside the segment if its main entrance is within the boundary outlines. "Main entrance" means the entrance for which the address of the building is given. If the building has no address, consider the main entrance to be the one most frequently used by visitors and persons other than tradesmen, servants, etc.

2. Procedure in NTA segments

In NTA segments you are not to check the listing of the entire segment unless you have special instructions from your Supervisor to do so. When the entire NTA segment is not to be checked, simply proceed to the addresses indicated in Item 2 of the questionnaire in the order in which these units were listed.

In locating the sample units assigned to you for interviewing, check to see that they are <u>inside</u> the segment boundaries. If not inside the segment boundaries, return the questionnaire for the unit as a noninterview: Type C—"In sample by mistake" and footnote that it is outside the segment, describing the situation fully.

G. Procedures for handling extra, merged or converted units

The following procedures apply (1) when you find "extra" units in a TA segment or at a sample unit in an NTA segment; or (2) when you find that two listed units have been merged and are now occupied as a single unit; or (3) when you find a single unit has been converted into 2 or more units.

1. Identification of housing unit

You are to fill out a questionnaire for each housing unit and unit in a special dwelling place that you find in a TA segment (except in subsampled TA segments) and for each sample unit and each "extra" unit that you find in an NTA segment. You are to fill only the front of the questionnaire for any merged, demolished, or nonexistent unit assigned to you for interviewing. At each sample unit, you will need to apply the definition of a housing unit to identify each household to be interviewed separately. (For the definition of a "housing unit" see Part A, Chapter 3.)

a. Usually only one housing unit

Most of the sample units will be single-family houses, one part of a duplex (two-family house), or an apartment in a regular apartment house.

b. More than one housing unit

In some cases, however, you may find that there are one or more unlisted separate housing units at the address or on the property of a sample unit. The most common case of this kind is a structure that appears to be a single-family home but actually is divided into two or more apartments. You may also find that a part of a structure represents more than one housing unit; for example, an upstairs apartment may be subdivided into two apartments. Sometimes you will find a house in the rear on the same property as the sample unit.

When you find more than one housing unit at the address or on the property of a sample unit, consider one unit to be the one originally listed and the others to be "extra" (see paragraphs G-2-a and G-2-b below).

c. Mergers

You may discover that because of conversions of two or more housing units into one housing unit since the listing, or because of an error in the listing, the unit selected for the sample should be combined with another.

For example, two apartments have been converted to a one-family house after the segment was listed. Or, a house which the lister recorded as having two apartments actually was always a single-family house. These are examples of what are called "mergers".

2. "Extra" units

In TA segments, an "extra" unit is any unit ("housing unit" or "other unit") not previously listed which is within the segment boundaries and is discovered while interviewing a sample unit or in bringing lists up to date.

In NTA segments, an "extra" unit is a unit ("housing unit" or "other unit") which is discovered while interviewing a sample unit and is on the same property or in the same structure as the sample unit AND has not been listed previously although it is within the segment boundaries.

NOTE: A merged unit should be considered as though it "has not previously been listed." Therefore, a unit previously merged with a sample unit which later becomes unmerged should be considered as an "extra" unit.

The procedures for handling "extra" units will differ depending upon whether the unit is in a TA or NTA Segment.

a. If unit is in a TA segment

If the "extra" unit is in a TA segment, proceed as follows:

(1) List the "extra" unit on the next unused line of the Segment List. In Column 7, on the line on which you have listed the extra unit, write "Extra," the reason you have added it, and the date (month and year). A typical entry might be: "Extra, new construction, 9-64." If the "extra" unit is discovered in asking questionnaire Items 12, 13 or 14, enter in Column 7 "Extra" and the item number which led to its discovery. For example, "Extra, Item 14."

(2) Interview the household in the "extra" unit. See Part D, Chapter 1 for instructions on filling identification items on the questionnaire.

(3) If the "extra" unit is occupied, enter the last name of the household head in Item 8 of the questionnaire for the "extra" unit. If the "extra" unit is vacant, enter "Vacant" in Item 8. Be sure to enter the complete mailing address (including the post office and State) in Item 2a for vacant, as well as occupied, units.

b. If unit is in an NTA segment

If the "extra" unit is in an NTA segment examine the Segment List to see whether it has already been listed. If it has not been listed (or if it has been listed but was previously merged), proceed as follows:

(1) Make no entries on the Segment List.

(2) Interview the household in the "extra" unit only if it is on the same property as the original unit. This "property" is defined as the land (with its buildings) on which is located the address or description in Item 2 a of the questionnaire for the original unit at which the extra unit was found. This "property" could range from a single-family house and lot to a 200-acre farm.

(3) If the "extra" unit is occupied, enter the last name of the household head in Item 8 of the questionnaire for the "extra" unit. If the "extra" unit is vacant, enter "Vacant" in Item 8. Be sure to enter the complete mailing address (including the post office and State) in Item 2a for vacant, as well as occupied, units.

(4) Enter in Item E on the front of the questionnaire for the "extra" sample unit the serial number of the original sample unit, and the Segment List sheet and line number of the first unit listed on the same property as the original sample unit, if it is in an NTA segment. Also enter the questionnaire item number (Item 12, 13, or 14) by which the "extra" unit was discovered.

c. When structures identified in Column 4 become "extra"

Sometimes you will find that an "X" has been entered in one of the check boxes to the right of Column 4 on the Segment List—☐ Farm Buildings, ☐ Store, ☐ Garage, or ☐ Other. This means that, at the time of listing, the structures checked contained no living quarters but were found on the same property as the sample unit. For purposes of interviewing, these checked structures are to be considered as part of the original sample unit. However, if you learn that any of these checked structures are now being occupied (or are now intended for use) as separate living quarters, you should pick them up as "extra" units and treat them as described above. On the other hand, if some people are now occupying these structures on the property of the sample unit, but their quarters do not constitute separate living quarters, these persons should be considered as part of the household occupying the main sample unit. See Part A, Chapter 3 for definition of separate living quarters.

(1) Farm buildings

If an "X" has been entered in the check box labeled "farm buildings," this entry refers only to such structures as barns, chicken coops, silos, and tool sheds which contained no living quarters at the time of listing and are not ordinarily intended for human occupancy. However, if you happen to learn that one or more of these structures is being occupied as separate living quarters, you would treat them as "extra" units as mentioned above.

(2) Does not include structures intended as living quarters

An "X" in the "farm building" check box would not include such other structures on the farm property as tenant houses, cabins, shacks or bunkhouses which, at the time of listing, were occupied or intended for occupancy as living quarters. Units of this type should have been listed separately. However, if they have not been listed separately and you pick them up as "extra" units, treat them as described above depending upon whether they are in TA or NTA segments.

3. Merged units

Where two or more units on the Segment List have been merged so that only one housing unit now exists, do not cross off any of the merged units listed. Instead on the line for each except the first of the merged units listed, enter in Column 7 "Merged," the Segment List line number of the first of the merged units listed and the date the merger was discovered. Correct the description in Column 4, if necessary, for the first of the merged units listed.

a. Interviewing merged units

First unit involved in merger--a sample unit: If the first of the listed units which are involved in the merger is a sample unit for which you have a questionnaire, interview the merged unit on that questionnaire. If the merger involves any other units for which you have questionnaires, turn in these questionnaires as Type C noninterview—"Other-merger."

First unit involved in merger—not a sample unit: If the first of the listed units involved in the merger is not a sample unit but the merger involves one or more other units for which you do have questionnaires, turn in all the questionnaires as Type C noninterview—"Other-merger."

b. When unit built after April 1, 1960 is involved in merger in Permit Area

If in a TA or NTA Segment in a Permit Area (PA), a current sample unit merges with a unit which was built after April 1, 1960, report the current sample unit as Type C noninterview—"Other-merged with unit built after April 1, 1960."

4. Converted units

Where a sample unit has been converted by structural changes or by use into two or more units, interview all units and treat all but the first as "extra."

5. Units no longer in existence or listed in error

For sample units which have been listed in error, found to be outside the segment boundaries, demolished or converted permanently to commercial use, cross the unit off the Segment List and enter in column (7) the reason and date deleted, e.g. "Demolished 7/64."

H. Special Dwelling Places

Part of your assignment may consist of interviewing at special dwelling places, such as transient hotels, trailer camps, dormitories, institutions and the like, where some or all of the living quarters do not meet the housing unit definition. A list of the different types of special dwelling places is given in Part A, Appendix A.

1. Special Dwelling Listing Sheet

Special dwelling places which you are to visit in a given segment are entered on a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. This form contains information on the name and type of the special dwelling place, where it is located, the living quarters or persons in the special dwelling place that you are to cover, etc.

2. Sample units selected from a complete listing

For special dwelling places in which the sample units (that is, rooms, suites of rooms, beds, etc.) were selected from a complete listing, the office will have given you questionnaires for the sample units with the front partially filled, just as it does for regular units.

You will also receive from the office a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the special dwelling place.

3. Sample units selected from a register

For a special dwelling place where a register of units is available (as for example, a list of rooms in a dormitory), you will usually be directed by your office to sample the units directly from the register. Instructions for carrying out this sampling are given in Part A, Appendix B.

4. New or missed special dwelling place

If in checking the listing of a TA segment you find a special dwelling place for which no Special Dwelling Listing Sheet has been filled, prepare one for it and list all units (staff or unclassified) in the place on it. Fill a questionnaire for each unit listed, unless the segment is "large" and is subsampled (see paragraph J below).

5. Verify address, name and type of special dwelling place

For each special dwelling place in your assignment in TA, NTA, and B segments, at the time of interviewing you are to check to see if the address, name and type are correct. If the address is incorrect, if the name has changed, or if both the name and type have changed, correct both the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet or Worksheet and the questionnaires. Report the changes on an INTERCOMM. (Refer to Appendix A to Part A for type and type code.)

An example of a change in type of special dwelling place would be a tourist home, code 76 that had been converted to a nursing, convalescent or rest home, code 40.

6. Housing unit changed to entire special dwelling place

If you find at the time of interviewing in TA and NTA segments that a housing unit on the Segment List is an entire special dwelling place, prepare a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place, listing all staff or unclassified units. Prepare new questionnaires for and interview all units listed. Enter in column 7 of the Segment List "entire special dwelling place." If in a TA Segment, cross the housing unit off the list; if in an NTA Segment, do <u>not</u> cross it off the list. Return the original questionnaire as Type C non-interview. Report the change on an INTERCOMM.

An example of such changes would be: a large single-family house has been converted to a sorority house.

7. More than one unit on Segment List found to be in special dwelling place

If you find at the time of interview in a TA or NTA Segment, that units listed on separate lines of the Segment List are <u>units</u> in a special dwelling place, do not relist the units on a Special Dwelling Worksheet or Special Dwelling Listing Sheet but report the situation on an INTERCOMM showing:

a. The name, address and type of place.
b. The number of all units in the place, for example, "rooms 1-14 non-staff," "room 15 staff.

Interview any staff or unclassified units designated for the current sample on the Segment List. Report current sample units found to be nonstaff units as Type C noninterview.

For example, units in a nontransient hotel may have been listed on separate lines of the Segment List and the hotel may change to a transient type by the time of interview. Retain the place on the Segment List in this case and interview the current sample units and report the situation on an INTERCOMM.

8. Special dwelling place discovered in answer to questionnaire Items 12-14

If a special dwelling place is discovered in answer to questionnaire Items 12-14 and no units in the place have previously been listed or sampled, prepare a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place. List and interview all units (staff or unclassified) in the place.

9. Further instructions on special dwelling places

Detailed instructions on how to proceed in special dwelling places are to be found in Part A, Chapter 3 and Appendix A and B.

I. Office assistance in difficult cases

If you cannot clearly determine how to proceed in a special dwelling place call your office for assistance. Before calling, however, assemble all the information that you think would be useful to your offfice in advising you on how to proceed. (Interviewers not yet trained in listing should call their office for assistance in any case involving listing in a special dwelling place.)

J. How to treat TA segments where number of units exceeds 20

In TA segments which have not been subsampled in the office and in which it is obvious that the number of units eligible for interview exceeds 20, subsample the units as instructed below in paragraph J-1. If it is not obvious that the total number of units exceeds 20, interview all the units even though you later discover the number exceeds 20.

In TA segments which have been previously subsampled, and in which extra units are found at the time of interview, continue the subsampling pattern used in the office, and interview all the units corresponding to the current sample designation.

Do not re-subsample a segment which has been subsampled by your office even though the size of the segment has increased so much that the segment is in the next highest interval in column 1 of the following table.

1. How to subsample

If the total number of listed units is	Apply the following sampling instructions to the listed units	
	Start with and take the	and take every
21-40	1st unit	2nd
41-60	2nd unit	3rd
61 and over	3rd unit	4th

In applying the subsample pattern in segments containing a special dwelling place, treat the two lists, the regular listing sheet and the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet as if they were a single list, carrying the subsampling pattern over from the segment list to the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet.

On the listing sheets, cross out the current sample designation and serial numbers of any of the units which are not selected as a result of applying the subsampling instructions given in the above table. Enter the current sample designation in Column 5 (or Column 3 for specials) for each of the listed units selected as a result of applying the subsampling pattern and for which there is no sample designation already entered.

2. Example of subsampling

For example, suppose in a TA segment (with no special dwelling place) 15 units were listed but when you arrive to start your interviewing the number has increased to 36 units. By referring to the subsampling table, you can see that you should start with and take the first, third, fifth, etc., units and right through to the last listed unit.

You will cross out the sample designations and serial numbers for the 2nd, 4th, and 6th units up through the 14th unit and will enter sample designations in Column 5 (since none has previously been entered) for the 17th, 19th, 21st up through the 35th lines.

3. Which units to interview after subsampling

After you have subsampled the units listed in segments containing more than 20 units, interview only those units for which there is still a sample designation in the appropriate column of the Segment List.

	Questionnaires for units eliminated in sub-sampling are to be returned as Type C noninterviews: "Eliminated in sub-sample."
4. Report sub-sampled segments on Segment Folder	Record the subsampling rate on the Segment Folder in Section IV-B for each segment that you subsample. Report this as follows: "Subsampled by taking every_____."

CHAPTER 3.

THE HOUSING UNIT AND WHOM TO INCLUDE IN THE SURVEY

A. The Housing Unit

This chapter tells you how to identify a household, how to decide which persons at one address should be recorded on the questionnaire, and whether more than one questionnaire should be used for residents at the address.

Each household in the survey will be interviewed on a separate questionnaire. It is necessary, therefore, that you learn what constitutes a household. At the beginning of each interview you must determine how many households there are at the address you are visiting. To do this, you must know what kind of living quarters are at the address.

1. Many kinds of living quarters

People live in all kinds of places—houses, apartment houses, trailers, rooming and boarding houses, dormitories, etc. Some houses are arranged for just one family, some for two or more families, and other places (apartment houses), have living arrangements for dozens of families. Hotels, rooming and boarding houses, institutions and the like have living arrangements for many persons.

We need some kind of common denominator, or unit, to determine how many living arrangements there are in all of the types of places where people live. Therefore, all living quarters have been divided into two categories: "housing units" and "other units."

2. Examples of housing units and "other units"

Ordinarily a housing unit is a single family house, an apartment, or a flat. It may also be a trailer, boat, or tent. A housing unit may be located in a structure devoted primarily to business or other non-residential use, such as quarters in a warehouse where the watchman lives, or a barber's living quarters in back of his shop.

Examples of other units are: a room in a boarding house, a cot in a bunkhouse for migratory workers, a room in a nurses' home, and an unoccupied trailer site.

3. Household defined

A household is the entire group of persons who live in one housing unit or one "other unit." It may be several persons living together or one person living alone. It includes the household head and all his relatives occupying the housing unit or "other unit." The household may also include roomers, servants, or other persons not related to the head, who live there. Regardless of whether the household occupies a housing unit or an "other unit," it is to be interviewed on a separate questionnaire.

4. Definition of a housing unit

A group of rooms or a single room is regarded as a housing unit when it is occupied as separate living quarters; that is:

a. When the occupants do not live and eat with any other persons in the structure

AND

b. When there is either:

(1) Direct access from the outside or through a common hall (as defined below)

OR

(2) A kitchen or cooking equipment for the exclusive use of the occupants.

5. Direct access defined

Living quarters have direct access if there is either:

a. An entrance to the living quarters directly from the outside of the structure

OR

b. An entrance to the living quarters from a hall, lobby, or vestibule used by the occupants of more than one unit.

This means that the hall, lobby, or vestibule is not part of any unit but must be clearly separate from all units in the structure. Any room that serves the same purpose as a hotel lobby is considered a common hall provided it is not part of any unit.

Living quarters do not have direct access if the only entrance to the unit is through a room or a hall of another unit.

6. Kitchen or cooking equipment defined

The terms "kitchen" and "cooking equipment" are defined as follows:

a. Kitchen

A kitchen is a room used primarily for cooking and preparation of meals.

b. Cooking equipment

A unit has cooking equipment when it has either:

(1) A range or stove whether or not it is used regularly,

OR

(2) Other equipment, such as a hotplate or other electrical appliances, if the equipment is used for the regular preparation of meals—usually one or more each day.

7. "Other unit" defined

"Other units" are quarters where the living arrangements are not sufficiently separate to meet the housing unit definition. These units are located in places, such as hotels, institutions, dormitories, etc., where the residents have their own rooms, groups of rooms or beds but also have some common living arrangements such as a common dining hall, lobby or living room or common recreational facilities.

Some of the rooms, groups of rooms, etc., in these places are always classified as "other units" even though they have direct access or cooking equipment (e.g. living quarters in nurses' homes). Other rooms, groups of rooms, etc., are classified as "other units" only if they do not meet the housing unit definition.

B. Rules for Handling Unusual Situations

Although most of the time you will be interviewing in the more common types of living quarters, such as single-family houses, apartments, flats, etc., you may from time to time be assigned sample households in the less usual kinds of living places.

1. Trailers, boats, tents and railroad cars

Trailers, tents, boats, and railroad cars that are occupied, or vacant and intended for occupancy as separate living quarters on the site where located, are to be considered as housing units. Unoccupied trailer or tent sites, however, are "other units."

2. Guests and servants quarters

Occasionally quarters for guests or servants are located in a structure separate from the main house. Such quarters are to be handled according to the special rules given below.

a. Guest quarters

Living quarters reserved for use by guests in a structure separate from the main house are considered as part of the main house. The guest house is not "separate living quarters occupied by a group of persons living and eating together" because the guests are considered as part of the group of people with whom they are staying. The main house together with the guests' quarters constitutes one housing unit.

In some cases, however, quarters referred to as "guest quarters" or a "guest house" may be occupied by persons who are not "guests." For example, a house which the people of the main house refer to as the "guest house" may be rented; quarters in a school referred to as "guest quarters" may be occupied by the janitor and his family. In such cases, the quarters are to be considered as separate living quarters.

b. Servants' quarters

Living quarters which are located in a structure separate from the main house and occupied or intended for occupancy by servants are considered a separate housing unit only if they have separate cooking equipment which the servants use for preparation of meals. Otherwise, such quarters are considered as part of the employer's quarters and the combination is one housing unit. (This rule also applies to servants' quarters located within the same structure as the main house.)

3. Boarding house

A boarding house is an establishment with 5 or more rooms for rent to boarders and which serves regular meals to the residents who pay a combined rate for their room and meals on a weekly or monthly basis. None of the living space in a boarding house constitutes a housing unit; classify each living arrangement, including the quarters for the proprietor or resident manager, as an "Other unit."

If there are four or fewer rooms for rent to boarders, combine these rooms with the landlord's quarters (or with each other if the landlord does not live in the structure). In this situation, interview all of the occupants on one questionnaire (or one set of questionnaires). Consider the entire living space as one housing unit.

4. Rooming house

A rooming house is an establishment with 5 or more rooms, or suites of rooms, for rent to roomers who usually pay for their rooms on a weekly or monthly basis. No regular meals are served, but linens and maid service may be provided. In establishments such as these, consider each separate living arrangement which meets the housing unit definition as a housing unit. Living arrangements which do not meet the housing unit definition are to be classified as "Other units."

If the sample unit at which you are interviewing contains four or fewer rooms for rent to roomers, consider each room or suite of rooms, which meets the housing unit definition as a separate housing unit. The rooms which do not meet the housing unit definition should be combined with the landlord's quarters, if the landlord lives in the structure. If the landlord does not live in the structure consider each room, which does not meet the housing unit definition, as part of the housing unit through which access to the room is gained.

5. Combination rooming and boarding house

A combination rooming and boarding house is an establishment with 5 or more rooms for rent that serves meals to some resident persons but only rents rooms to others.

Quarters occupied by boarders are always "other units." The quarters occupied by roomers, the proprietor, manager or other resident employees may be housing units or "other units" depending on whether the quarters meet the housing unit definition.

If there are four or fewer rooms for rent, combine rooms occupied by boarders with the landlord's quarters (or with each other if the landlord does not live in the structure). Rooms that are occupied by roomers and meet the housing unit definition should be considered housing units. Rooms that do not meet the housing unit definition should be considered as part of the housing unit through which access to the room is gained.

6. Hotels

A hotel is an establishment that rents rooms or suites of rooms to transient or non-transient guests and provides regular hotel service, such as linens, maid, and desk service.

a. Non-transient hotel

A non-transient hotel is one in which 75 percent or more of the rooms or suites are occupied or intended for occupancy by permanent guests. Permanent guests usually stay a month or more at reduced monthly or weekly rates. All rooms or suites of rooms in a non-transient hotel are classified as housing units.

b. Transient hotel

A transient hotel is one in which more than 25 percent of the rooms or suites are occupied or intended for occupancy by transient guests. Transient guests usually stay less than a month and pay daily rates. In a transient hotel, only the rooms occupied or intended for occupancy by non-transient (permanent) guests (if any) or by resident employees are ordinarily listed or sampled; these are classified as housing units, if they meet the housing unit definition. At the time of listing it may have been necessary to list or sample all the rooms because the manager could not distinguish between "transient" and "permanent" quarters. In a situation such as this, rooms or units which are occupied by "transients" at the time of interview should be classified as "other units."

7. YMCA's and YWCA's

YMCA's and YWCA's are establishments which offer, at moderate cost, lodging for both transient and non-transient guests. The rules given above for hotels apply to the living quarters in these places, except that all units in the place are listed or sampled, whether the place is transient or non-transient.

8. Motels, tourist camps or courts, etc.

Motels, tourist camps or courts, etc., are essentially the same as hotels, except that guests can drive to or close to their quarters. The rules given above for hotels apply to motels, tourist camps or courts, etc. except that all units in the place are listed or sampled whether the place is transient or non-transient.

9. Vacation cabins

For vacation cabins in resort areas, apply the following rules:

a. Five or more cabins under a single management

A group of five or more vacation cabins operated under a single management is to be treated like a motel, tourist camp or court, etc. A vacation cabin is "one of a group of five or more cabins under a single management" if the cabins are located next to each other and belong to the same owner but are rented or intended for rental to others, and the group is identified by a sign on the property on which they are located.

b. Cabin not in group of five under single management

A vacation cabin not in a group of five as defined above is classified as a housing unit. However, a vacation cabin used as overflow sleeping quarters for the main house is considered as part of the main house.

C. Rules for classifying living quarters in special dwelling places

In special dwelling places the rules for determining whether the living quarters constitute "housing units" or "other units" depend upon the type of special dwelling place and for whom the living quarters are intended. The rules for classifying living quarters in transient hotels, YMCA's and YWCA's, motels, tourist camps or courts, and vacation cabins were discussed in paragraph B above. The following are the rules for classifying living quarters in the remaining types of special dwelling places.

1. Armed Forces installations (excluding Armed Forces hospitals)	In Armed Forces installations (excluding Armed Forces hospitals) classify as an "Other unit" each unit for civilians (including families of military personnel), if: (1) the unit is in transient quarters such as a guest house, (2) it is in a barracks or bachelor-officers quarters, or (3) it is in quarters other than those described above <u>and</u> does <u>not</u> meet the housing unit definition.
2. Convents, Monasteries, and Sisters', Brothers' or Priests' residences	The procedure for classifying the living quarters, in convents, monasteries, and Sisters', Brothers' or Priests' residences depends upon the number of units in the place.
a. Five or more rooms for Sisters, Brothers or Priests	If there are five or more rooms for Sisters, Brothers or Priests, classify as "other unit" each unit for Sisters, Brothers or Priests, and each unit for resident lay employees which does <u>not</u> meet the housing unit definition.
b. Four or fewer rooms for Sisters, Brothers, or Priests	If there are four or fewer rooms for Sisters, Brothers or Priests <u>and</u> the residence is part of a school for resident students, hospital, orphanage, or similar establishment, classify the units according to the rules for that particular place. If the convent, monastery, etc., is <u>not</u> part of an establishment, treat the entire place as one housing unit.
3. Facilities for housing students-quarters in schools for resident students, dormitories, sorority or fraternity houses	In all facilities for housing students, classify as an "other unit," each unit for students and each unit for resident employees, such as janitors, housemothers, and resident faculty or administrative personnel, which does <u>not</u> meet the housing unit definition.
4. Facilities for housing workers-bunkhouses, labor or logging camps, migratory workers camps, etc.	The procedure for classifying the living quarters in facilities for housing workers depends upon the type of structure.

a. Bunkhouses and other barracks-type structures	The classification of living quarters in a bunkhouse or other barracks-type structure depends upon the number of workers the structure is intended to house. Note that living quarters occupied by a migrant family are considered as quarters for one worker regardless of the number of workers in the family.
(1) Quarters for five or more workers	If there are quarters for five or more workers, consider as an "other unit" each unit within the structure. A unit is the living space occupied by one person (or one family if migrant families are housed in the structure) such as bed, bunk, or room.
(2) Quarters for four or fewer workers	If the structure contains quarters for four or fewer workers, classify the entire structure as an "other unit."
b. Living quarters other than those in bunkhouses and barracks-type structures	If the living quarters are not in a bunkhouse or other barracks-type structure, classify as an "other unit" each unit which does <u>not</u> meet the housing unit definition.
5. Flophouses and missions	In flophouses and missions (e.g., Salvation Army shelters), classify as an "other unit" each unit for persons except resident managerial staff and their families and each unit for the resident managerial staff which does <u>not</u> meet the housing unit definition.
6. General hospitals including VA and Armed Forces hospitals, children's hospitals and maternity hospitals	In general hospitals including VA and Armed Forces hospitals, children's hospitals, and maternity hospitals, classify as an "other unit" each unit for resident employees, if the unit does <u>not</u> meet the housing unit definition. (Note that nurses' quarters are always "other units.") Also classify as "other unit" each unit for guests of patients.
7. Nurses' homes or quarters	In nurses' homes or nurses' quarters in hospitals, institutions, and similar places, each unit (room or suite of rooms) should be classified as an "other unit."

8. Recreational and religious camps

The classification of units in recreational and religious camps depends upon whether the camp is operated for adults or for children.

a. Adults' (or family) recreational and religious camps

In adults' (or family) recreational and religious camps, classify as "other unit" each unit for permanent guests or resident employees which does not meet the housing unit definition and each unit for transient guests (if such quarters were included because the management could not distinguish between quarters for transient and permanent guests).

b. Children's recreational and religious camps

In recreational and religious camps run for children, consider as an "other unit" each unit which is for resident employees and which does not meet the housing unit definition. Quarters for children in children's camps are excluded from the survey.

9. Private residential clubs and tourist homes

A private residential club or tourist home is to be classified as a special dwelling place only if it contains 5 or more rooms or groups of rooms to be rented out. If there are fewer than 5 rooms or groups of rooms for rent, combine these rooms or groups of rooms with the landlord's quarters (or with each other if the landlord does not live in the structure).

In private residential clubs and tourist homes that meet the special dwelling place definition, classify as "other unit" each unit for transient guests and each unit which is for permanent guests or resident employees and which does not meet the housing unit definition.

10. Nursing, convalescent and rest homes

In determining whether a place which offers nursing, convalescent or rest care is a special dwelling place, apply this rule: If the place is providing, or has accommodations to provide nursing care or domiciliary and personal care (as required) for 3 or more patients or paying guests, classify it as a special dwelling place, i.e., a nursing, convalescent or rest home. Examples of care provided in these places are nursing care, help in feeding, aid in getting around, tray service, etc.

In special dwelling places of these types, only the "staff" quarters are included in the Health Interview Survey, that is, quarters for the operator of the home and for resident employees and their families.

11. Specified institutions listed in Appendix A to Part A

In the specified institutions listed in Appendix A to Part A, classify as "other unit" each unit for resident employees that does not meet the housing unit definition. (Note that nurses' quarters are always "other units.") Also classify as an "other unit" each unit reserved for guests of patients, visitors to inmates, etc.

12. Special Note

For the purposes of this survey, living quarters in certain types of special dwelling places are divided into two kinds of units: "staff" and "nonstaff."

a. "Staff" units

Staff units are defined as the houses, apartments, rooms, suites of rooms, or beds in rooms having sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons occupied by <u>resident</u> employees and their families, if any. Note that quarters in nurses' homes are always considered "staff" units. Staff units are to be included in the Health Interview Survey.

b. "Non-staff" units

Non-staff units are the living quarters occupied by the persons for whom the special dwelling place is operated. Non-staff units are <u>not included</u> in this survey and should <u>not</u> be listed, sampled, or interviewed.

D. <u>How to apply the housing unit definition at the time of interview</u>

At the beginning of the interview, you are to enter in questions 1 and 2 of the questionnaire the names of all persons living in the sample unit and their relationship to the head of the household.

1. Typical family group

If the persons entered on the questionnaire represent a "typical family group," such as husband, wife and unmarried children, or a parent and child, two or more sisters, or some similar clear-cut arrangement, consider all the members as a single household.

2. Additional household members - ask about separate quarters

If in addition to the head and his family the listing of persons in questions 1 and 2 contains a roomer, a roomer and his family, a married son and his family, or relatives such as mother, uncle, cousin, etc., ask if they all live and eat together as one family.

If they do all live and eat together, treat them as a single household and interview the entire group on one questionnaire.

If any of the persons recorded in questions 1 and 2 say they live separately from the others, ask about the access to the quarters they occupy and their cooking arrangements. If they have <u>either</u> direct access <u>or</u> separate cooking equipment, consider them as separate living quarters. If these separate living quarters have not already been listed, apply the rules for "extra" units, according to the instructions in Part A, Chapter 2.

3. Five or more boarders or roomers

If you have recorded five or more boarders or roomers in questions 1 and 2 of the questionnaire, the sample address may be a boarding house or rooming house and you should apply the rules for these kinds of places. (See paragraphs B-3 through B-5).

4. Vacant living quarters

Living quarters are vacant if no persons are living in them at the time of your first visit. If the occupants are only temporarily absent, consider the unit as occupied. (See instructions in Part D, Chapter 1 on "Noninterviews.") Vacant living quarters constitute a housing unit if they have either:

a. Direct access

OR

b. A kitchen or cooking equipment for the exclusive use of the intended occupants.

Even though there may be no kitchen or cooking equipment in the space at the time of your visit, consider it as having cooking equipment if the last occupants had cooking equipment.

Vacant quarters which do not have direct access or a kitchen or cooking equipment should be considered as part of the housing unit through which access to the space is gained. Note, however, that in some kinds of living places, such as boarding houses, flophouses and missions, institutions, etc., (which were discussed in Sections B and C), certain types of units are specifically designated as "other units." These should always be considered as separate units regardless of whether occupied or vacant.

E. <u>Office assistance in difficult cases</u>

If you cannot clearly determine from these instructions how to proceed in special dwelling places or other problem cases, call your office for assistance.

Before calling your office, however, assemble all the information that you think would be useful to your office in advising you on how to proceed.

F. Whom to include in the survey

1. General rules

Two categories of persons in a household are to be considered as members of the household.

a. Persons, whether present or temporarily absent, whose usual place of residence at the time of the interview is this household.

b. Persons staying in the household who have no usual place of residence elsewhere.

A household was defined in the beginning of this chapter as the entire group of persons who live in one "housing unit" or "other unit."

2. Usual place of residence—defined

In most cases, usual place of residence means the place the person would name in reply to the question, "Where do you live?" More specifically, it is the place where the person usually sleeps. A usual place of residence must be specific living quarters held for the person to which he is free to return at any time. A mail address alone does not constitute a usual place of residence.

Living quarters which a person rents to or lends to someone else cannot be considered his usual place of residence during the time they are occupied by someone else. Likewise, vacant living quarters (sometimes furnished) which a person offers for rent or sale during his absence should not be considered his usual place of residence while he is away. (If the living quarters are furnished, be sure the household is not just temporarily absent—see below.)

Persons with no usual place of residence elsewhere include recent migrants, persons trying to find permanent living quarters, and other persons who are staying temporarily in the unit and do not have a home of their own.

3. Persons to be counted as household members

Count as members of the household the following:

a. Members of the household living at home at the time of the interview.

b. Members of the household temporarily absent at the time of the interview, on vacation, visiting, or on business. This includes bus drivers, railroadmen, traveling salesmen, etc., who usually do not stay long in one place, but who return home at intervals.

c. Members of the household who are in a general hospital where most patients remain for a short period of time only—regardless of how long these particular persons have been in the hospital.

d. New-born babies who have not yet left the hospital.

e. Students of any age (including student nurses) who live in the sample unit while attending school. If they are at home on summer vacation at the time of the interview, <u>count them at their own home</u>.

f. Domestic or other employees who live with the household and sleep in the same housing unit.

g. Boarders or roomers who regularly sleep in the housing unit.

h. Crew members of all canal or river vessels that travel on inland waterways, and crew members of vessels in coastwise, intercoastal or foreign trade (including the Great Lakes) that make trips of <u>less than 24 hours duration</u>, are considered household members at their homes.

i. Civilians who usually live in the unit but who are temporarily abroad on a vacation or in connection with their work.

j. Persons temporarily visiting with the household but who have no usual place of residence elsewhere.

4. Persons not to be counted as household members

Do not count as members of the household the following persons:

a. Persons temporarily visiting with the household who have a usual place of residence elsewhere.

b. Persons of any age who are living elsewhere attending school at the time of the interview. (If they are away from the school on summer vacation, do not count them at their school home.)

c. Persons who take their meals with the household but usually lodge or sleep elsewhere.

d. Domestic employees or other persons employed by the household who do not sleep in the same housing unit. (If, however, they occupy quarters on the same property as the main house and have no cooking equipment in those quarters, count them as part of the main house.)

e. Persons who were formerly members of the household but who, at the time of interview, are inmates of correctional or penal institutions, mental institutions, homes for the aged or needy, rest homes or convalescent homes, homes or hospitals for the chronically ill or handicapped, nurses' homes, convents or monasteries, or other places in which residents may remain for long periods of time, regardless of how long they are expected to remain there.

f. Crew members of vessels in coastwise, intercoastal or foreign trade (including the Great Lakes) are considered to reside on the vessel rather than at their homes, if the ship normally makes trips of more than 24 hours duration.

g. Persons working abroad if their regular place of duty is abroad.

h. Members of the Armed Forces. We are not covering military personnel in this survey. (For definition of Armed Forces, see Part D, Chapter 2.)

G. Rules for counting special classes of persons

Persons with two or more homes: Some persons (or families) have two or more homes and they may spend part of the time in each. For such cases, you must first determine which unit should be considered the person's usual place of residence. This is the home that the person occupies most of the time. Note that this is not necessarily the person's legal or voting residence.

If you are unable to determine the person's usual place of residence because he spends an equal amount of time at each home, consider him to be a resident of the sample unit if he is living there at the time of interview.

Persons who work away from home: Some persons sleep most of the week in one place to be near their work but may spend week-ends or other non-work periods in another place. Count such persons as members of the household in which they sleep most of the week.

Domestic employees in separate house or cabin: If domestic employees sleep in a separate house or cabin, count them as a separate household if they have separate cooking equipment. If they do not have separate cooking equipment, count them as part of the main household.

Persons who have just moved into the housing unit: You are to interview the household member living in the housing unit on the day of your contact regardless of when they moved into the unit. For example, suppose you make your first call to interview a household on Tuesday, and find no one at home. For some reason you are unavoidably prevented from calling back until Saturday, when you find that the family you would have interviewed on Tuesday has moved out and another family moved in on Thursday. You will interview the household occupying the unit at the time of your contact (i.e., Saturday).

Citizens of foreign countries: Citizens of foreign countries and other persons who are living on the premises of an Embassy, Ministry, Legation, Chancellory, or Consulate are never to be interviewed. Consider any such place not to be included in any segment.

Citizens of foreign countries, who are not living on the premises of an Embassy, etc., and have no usual place of residence elsewhere in the United States are to be considered residents of the sample unit and interviewed only under the following circumstances:

1. They are permanently living in the United States.

OR

2. They are temporarily living in the United States and are going to school here, or are employed here, or are members of the family of a person going to school or employed here.

Persons not included in paragraphs 1 and 2 above should be considered as having usual residence elsewhere.

Doubtful cases: If there is any instance in which you are not sure whether to include persons as members of the household, consider them as members of the household, and describe the circumstances in a footnote. Report the case to your office on an INTERCOMM.

APPENDIX A (PART A)

CODES FOR TYPES OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES

I. Specified Institutions

CODES

Correctional Institutions

11.....State and Federal penitentiaries, prisons, and reformatories
11.....State and Federal prison farms and camps
11.....County and city jails, workhouses, penitentiaries
11.....County and city prison farms and camps
11.....Federal detention headquarters
12.....State and Federal training or industrial schools
12.....County and municipal training or industrial schools
12.....Private schools for delinquents, such as "House of the Good Shepherd," "Boys Town," etc.

Mental Institutions

21.....Homes and training schools for mental defectives
21.....Homes, training schools, colonies, and villages for epileptics
21.....State, Federal, county and city hospitals for mental diseases
23.....Veterans Administration mental hospitals
21.....Private hospitals and sanitariums for mental disease
22.....Hospitals for the treatment of alcoholics and drug addicts

Homes for the Aged, Infirm and Needy

31.....Orphan asylums
31.....Children's homes
32.....County homes, almshouses, poor farms, etc.
38.....Soldiers' and sailors' homes
39.....Veterans Administration homes (domiciliary care)
33.....Fraternal or religious homes for the aged
34.....Commercial boarding house for the aged
35.....Homes and schools for the blind
36.....Homes and schools for the deaf
37.....Hospital or resident schools, orthopedic hospitals and homes for the crippled

40.....Nursing, Convalescent, and Rest Homes

CODES — Other Hospitals and Homes Providing Specialized Care

51.....Tuberculosis sanitariums
52.....Veterans Administration tuberculosis hospitals
53.....Homes for incurables
54.....Chronic and cancer hospitals
55.....Maternity homes for unmarried mothers
56.....Detention and receiving homes

CODES — II. Other Special Dwelling Places

61.....Veterans Administration General Medical, and Surgical Hospitals

62.....Facilities for the Treatment of the Physically Ill

This type of facility treats physical disorders and is one in which the patient stays for a relatively short period of time. Examples of this type of special dwelling place are:

1. General or emergency hospitals; children's hospital; maternity hospital

2. Infirmary

71.....Hotels, Transient-type

72.....YMCA, Transient-type
73.....YWCA, Transient-type
74.....YMHA, Transient-type
75.....Private residential clubs } Those that meet the special
76.....Tourist homes } dwelling place definition

77.....Motel, Transient-type
78.....Tourist camp or court, Transient-type
78.....Groups of 5 or more vacation cabins under single management, Transient-type
79.....Combination tourist-trailer court, Transient-type

Facilities for Housing Students

81.....School dormitory
82.....Fraternity
83.....Sorority
84.....Schools with resident students (other than for the needy or infirm and other than resident schools with separate codes 93 and 94 - see below)

93.....Schools with resident students and with predominantly non-salaried faculty such as nuns or priests
94.....Schools with resident students and operated primarily for religious training (other than those with predominantly non-salaried faculty) such as Bible Institutes

CODES II. Other Special Dwelling Places—Con.

Facilities for Housing Workers

85.....Dormitory for workers
86.....Bunkhouse (provided that it has or is expected to have quarters for 5 or more farm or ranch hands)
87.....Labor camp
88.....Logging camp
89.....Migratory workers' camp

Additional Other Places

91.....Convents
92.....Monasteries
93....
94....} See Facilities for Housing Students
00.....Nurses' Homes
01.....Flophouses
02.....Missions
03.....Recreational and Religious Camps (Adults or Family)
04.....Recreational and Religious Camps (Children's)
05.....Trailer Camps
06.....Tent Camps
07.....Armed Forces Installations
08.....Armed Forces Hospitals
09.....Non-transient Hotel (when instructed to treat as a special dwelling place)

APPENDIX B (PART A)

SAMPLING SAMPLE UNITS FROM A REGISTER IN A SPECIAL DWELLING PLACE

1. Purpose of Appendix B

This appendix gives instructions on how to select sample units from a register in a special dwelling place. You may need this information on your very first assignment, or you may have no occasion to use it for several months after you begin work. Therefore, you need not learn this material until you are required to interview in a special dwelling place.

If you cannot clearly determine how to proceed in a special dwelling place, from these instructions and from instructions in Part A, Chapter 2, call your office for assistance.

2. When the Special Dwelling Worksheet is used

If there is a usable register of units in a special dwelling place, this was noted in the heading of the one or two Special Dwelling Listing Sheets prepared for the special dwelling place at the time of listing, along with the name, the type of place, and the number and kind of units to be sampled. Your office will have prepared Special Dwelling Worksheets for use in places where a usable register is available. Use the Worksheets to select the sample units from the register. The Worksheet will indicate whether rooms or persons are to be sampled.

> CAUTION: Be sure to use that Section (I or II) of the Special Dwelling Worksheet which applies to the current sample. For example, if B26 is entered in the heading of Section I of the Worksheet and B30 in the heading of Section II, and you are interviewing for B30 you would use Section II to select the B30 units.

3. Staff and nonstaff units

Special dwelling place units are divided into "nonstaff units" and "staff units" in the following types of special dwelling places:

a. Specified institutions (those listed in Part I of Appendix A to Part A)
b. General hospitals
c. Armed Forces hospitals
d. Veterans' hospitals (general, medical, and surgical)

For each of these places, a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet has been prepared for "Staff units" only. "Non-staff" are not included in the survey. Where you are to sample from a register a corresponding Special Dwelling Worksheet has been prepared.

a. Nonstaff units defined

"Nonstaff units" are defined as (1) the persons for whom the special dwelling place is being operated (patients, prisoners, etc.) or (2) the units in which these persons live, such as rooms, suites of rooms, or beds in rooms having sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons. As mentioned above, these units will not be listed, sampled or interviewed.

b. Staff units defined

"Staff units" are defined as the housing units, rooms, suites of rooms, or beds in rooms having sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons, occupied by resident employees and their families, if any.

c. Special case: Units in Nurses' Homes-

Special case. Nurses' homes are to be treated as a special case. According to the above definitions, units in nurses' homes would be "nonstaff units," that is, the nurses are the persons for whom the home is being operated. On the other hand, nurses living in hospitals are employees and, therefore, would be listed and sampled as "staff units." To avoid this inconsistency we are specifying that in nurses' homes all units in the place, whether occupied by nurses or by other persons living in the homes, are to be regarded as "staff units."

d. Special dwelling places containing only one kind of unit—"Unclassified units"

In all other types of special dwelling places, it is not necessary to make a distinction and all units are referred to as "Unclassified units." These are the housing units, rooms, beds, etc., occupied or intended for occupancy by all persons in the special dwelling place.

e. How to sample staff units

If there are separate registers for staff and nonstaff units, use only the staff register in sampling on the Special Dwelling Worksheet. If there is only one register for the place, find out which units are staff and which are nonstaff and count and sample staff only.

For example, units numbered 1, 2, 4, 7, and 10 on a register might be the only staff units in a place. If your instructions for sampling staff units were to start with the first and take every second, you would take the units numbered 1, 4, and 10.

4. Identification of units to be selected

The units to be selected will be identified by an entry of encircled sample numbers in column 2 of the worksheet in the section of the worksheet for the current sample. You must select the special dwelling place units corresponding to these encircled numbers and identify them by room number, etc.

In the figure below there is shown an illustration of a worksheet (Column 3 will not be filled when you receive it). The encircled numbers in column 2 mean that you are to select from the register the second, fourth, sixth, eighth, tenth, etc., unit of the appropriate type until you have completely gone through the register.

Excerpt From Special Dwelling Worksheet

Line no. (1)	Sample numbers (2)	Number or location unit (3)	Serial numbers (4)
1	(2)	Room B	51
2	(4)	Room D	52
3	(6)	Room F	53
4	(8)	Room H	54
5	(10)		
6	(12)		
7	(14)		
8	(16)		
9	(18)		
10			
11			

5. Points to be noted in sampling from a register

In sampling from a register, note the following points:

a. Be sure register is current and identify units selected

Be sure that the register (whether a list, card index, floor diagram, etc.) is current. Also if you are sampling from a register, identify in some way the units selected so that you may quickly locate these units again in the register, if necessary. For example, if you are sampling from a card file, you might identify the selected units by turning cards up, inserting blank slips of paper, etc.

b. What to do if only one building of a special dwelling place is to be sampled

If the special dwelling place units in only one building of a special dwelling place are to be sampled, use either a register for the specific building or a register which indicates the particular building in which each unit is located. In the latter case, count only the units in the particular building in selecting the sample.

c. When to count a bed as a separate unit

Find out whether any of the rooms in the register contain sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons. If so, count <u>each bed</u> in such rooms as a separate unit in selecting your sample.

d. How to sample when a floor plan or diagram is used

If the register being used is a floor plan or similar diagram, begin your count at some definite starting point (usually the lowest numbered room or bed) and follow through the diagram in some systematic fashion.

e. Use of a register of persons

A register of persons is used <u>only</u> when there is no register of rooms, etc., and it would be extremely difficult or time-consuming to make a complete listing of these rooms on a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet.

If the Worksheet indicates that a register of persons is to be used, family groups who are living in the special dwelling place should be sampled rather than individuals within the family. For example, assume that in a summer hotel, there are no permanent guests and that

it would be very difficult to make a complete listing of the rooms occupied by employees, but that there is a list of employees' names from which you are to sample as follows:

(Henry Jones, headwaiter
(Mrs. Henry Jones, housekeeper

John Brown, baker

(Al Smith, gardener
(Mrs. Al Smith, maid

Josephine de Ritz, hostess

Guy Orlando, orchestra leader

You would regard the above as five separate units in sampling, since the Joneses and the Smiths are two separate family groups and should be sampled as such.

6. Identify adequately in col. 3 of the Special Dwelling Worksheet each unit to be interviewed in current sample

As you finally determine the units which are to be interviewed for the current sample, enter in column 3 of the section of the Worksheet designated for the current sample, the number, location, or other identification of each unit finally designated for interview so that later you will be able to locate it.

7. Actual number of sample units may be either larger or smaller than entry in item e in heading of the Special Dwelling Worksheet

The encircled sample numbers <u>above the red line</u> in column 2 of the appropriate section of the Worksheet represent the units that would be selected for interview if the total number of units entered in item e were correct. When you visit the special dwelling place, you may find that the number of special dwelling place units is actually different from the number entered for the current sample in item e. Note that more than one sample may be designated in the heading of the Worksheet; for example, the first column in the heading may be for B26 and the second column for B30. Be sure to refer to the column for the proper sample.

a. If actual number is larger

If the actual number is larger than the number entered in item e for the current sample, you may find that, in order to go through the listing or register completely, you may have to select some units corresponding to sample numbers entered in column 2 below the red line. Enter the number or location of these units in column 3 in the same manner as for units above the red line.

Example:

Suppose in the following example the number entered in item e of the Special Dwelling Worksheet is 9, but that your visit to the special dwelling place discloses that there are actually 11 special dwelling place units. The unit corresponding to sample number 10 would, therefore, be selected.

Excerpt From Special Dwelling Worksheet

Line no. (1)	Sample numbers (2)	Number or location of unit (3)	Serial numbers (4)
1	(2)	Room 102	51
2	(4)	Room 104	52
3	(6)	Room 106	53
4	(8)	Room 108	54
5	(10)	Room 110	
6	(12)		
7	(14)		
8	(16)		
9	(18)		
10			
11			

b. If actual number is smaller

It may happen that the actual number of units is smaller than the number entered in item e. In such a case, some of the encircled sample numbers above the red line in column 2 may not have units corresponding to them in the register or listing. If so, enter "None" in column 3 of the Worksheet opposite those encircled sample numbers above the red line for which there are no corresponding special dwelling place units. For example, if

there were four sample numbers—2, 4, 6, and 8—above the red line on the Worksheet and you find that there are only 7 units in the special dwelling place, your entry in column 3 of the Worksheet on line 4 opposite sample number 8 would be "None."

c. Enter in Item e the actual number of units found

If you have found that the actual number of listed units differs from the original estimate entered in Item e for the current sample by your office, cross out (do not erase) the number previously entered in Item e and enter the correct number beside it.

d. Units added below red line on Worksheet

All units added below the red line on the Worksheet are to be included in the sample.

Do not assign serial numbers to such units. On the questionnaires for these units, follow the same instructions as for "extra" units—that is, enter in Item 8 the last name of the household head if the unit is occupied, or "Vacant" if it is unoccupied.

The Regional Office will assign and enter serial numbers on both the questionnaire and the Worksheet.

8. Use of partially fill questionnaires

For units in special dwelling places to be sampled from a register, you will receive questionnaires partly filled out, as for regular sample units. However, there will be no designation in Item 2 a on the questionnaire for the particular unit to be interviewed. After you have selected the unit from the register, describe it in Item 2 a on the questionnaire.

Prepare questionnaires for any units below the red line on the Worksheet.

Use a separate questionnaire or set of questionnaires for each sample unit selected.

Return partially filled questionnaires for which no corresponding unit was found as Type C non-interviews "In sample by mistake." Explain the circumstances in a footnote, e.g., "Converted to non-staff unit," or "No corresponding unit on register."

PART C

HOW TO LIST

IN AREA SEGMENTS

CHAPTER 1. LISTING -- ITS ROLE IN THE SURVEY

A. Listing to be done in Area Segments

Listing is one of the most important steps in the operation of the survey. It must be done in each Area Segment before any addresses can be selected for interviewing in these segments.

B. "Area Segments" defined

An "Area Segment" is usually a small area of land with well-defined boundaries such as streets or roads, rivers, railroad tracks, etc. Some Area Segments are called "TA Segments"; others are called "NTA Segments". The difference between these types will be explained in Chapter 9 of this part of your manual.

C. "Listing" defined

By "listing" we mean writing down on forms the addresses or other description of all places where people live or might live within the Area Segments selected for the survey.

D. Importance of accuracy in listing

In listing you must stay within the segment boundaries exactly as designated on the maps and you must be sure to list all living quarters within the Area Segment. In sample surveys, each unit (that is, living quarters) interviewed as a result of your listing represents many other units. If fewer units, or more units or the wrong units are interviewed as the result of an error in listing, the error is magnified many times in tabulating the results of the survey. It is important, therefore, that the listing be complete and that it be done carefully and accurately in accordance with the rules in this manual.

CHAPTER 2. USE OF MAPS TO LOCATE AND IDENTIFY AREA SEGMENTS

A. Type of maps

In listing Area Segments you will be using two types of maps -- a GRID MAP and a SEGMENT MAP.

1. Grid Map

The Grid Map is used to find the general location of the Area Segment and may be a county map or a city street or block map. Letters are entered at spaced intervals on the sides of the Grid Map and numbers at spaced intervals at the top and bottom of the map. The map is split up into areas called grid zones; each grid zone is identified by a grid reference. On county maps and on some block and street maps the grid zones are set off by grid symbols ⊕ . The area within a particular grid zone is identified by the letter opposite it on the sides of the map and by the number above and below it at the top and bottom of the map. In Fig. 1 below, the grid zone shown between the four grid symbols would be identified as B2. For the grid zone shown in the upper left corner of the map only one grid symbol is shown. It can be seen that, if shown, the other grid symbols would be located at points halfway between the letters A and B and halfway between the numbers 1 and 2 as well as in the northwest corner of the zone. This zone would be identified as A1. The identification of the grid zone will be called the <u>grid reference</u> hereafter.

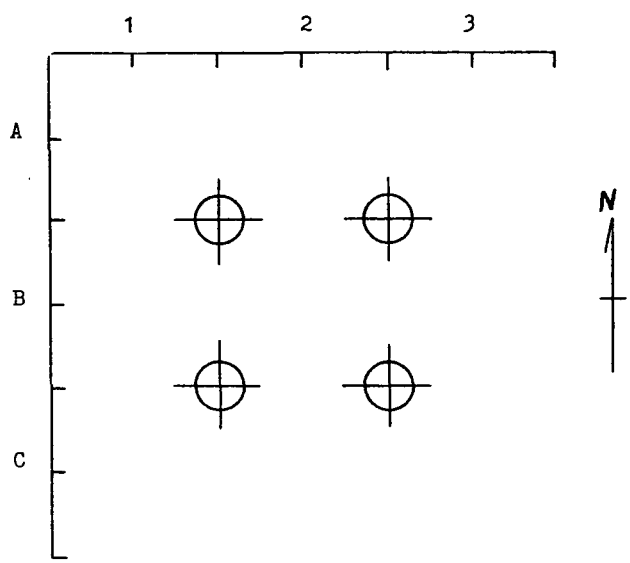


Fig. 1 EXAMPLE OF GRID ZONES IDENTIFIED BY GRID SYMBOLS

A. Type of maps--Con.

1.--Con.

On maps which do not have grid symbols but do have spaced intervals marked off on the sides by letters and on the top and botton by numbers, the general location of Area Segments should be determined by the grid reference in the same manner as described above.

2. Segment Map

The Segment Map shows the exact boundaries of the Area Segment and may show the exact or the general location of some structures within the segment depending on the kind of map available. In some cases no structures will be shown on the map at all. The different kinds of maps used are discussed in Section C on page C-7. The exact Area Segment boundaries are outlined in red on the Segment Map.

In a few cases the map attached to the Segment Folder will identify the location of the Area Segment but will not show exact boundaries. For these segments, a footnote on the map states the composition of the Area Segment.

B. How to use maps

1. Grid Map

Use the Grid Map to determine the general location of the segment and the shortest route of travel to it. The general location of the segment can be determined by using the grid map number and grid reference given in the space for "Grid Ref." on the tab of the Segment Folder for the segment.

There may be a number of Grid Maps for the PSU in which you are working. Each map will have a number the first three digits of which are the PSU code. The remaining digits identify the maps within the PSU and will be the only part of the map number shown on the tab of the Segment Folder.

For example, suppose the entry for "Grid Ref." in the tab of the Segment Folder were as follows:

GRID REF.	3 B2

You would use Grid Map 3 and find the grid zone identified by grid reference B2 (see Fig. 1). You would know that the segment was located in that particular grid zone.

2. Segment Map

Use the Segment Map to determine the exact location and boundaries of the Area Segment. After reaching what appears to be a segment boundary, refer to the Segment Map and check the boundaries shown on it against the actual features on the ground to be sure you have properly identified the segment.

B. How to use maps--Con.

Example

For example, a segment might appear as shown on the map below. Notice that the southern boundary is an unnamed street. If there are several unnamed streets on the ground, find the exact southern boundary of the segment by determining the exact distance and position of the unnamed street shown on the map in relation to named streets such as Hillcrest Ave. Use the map scale and pace off the distance from the named street as instructed on page C-12.

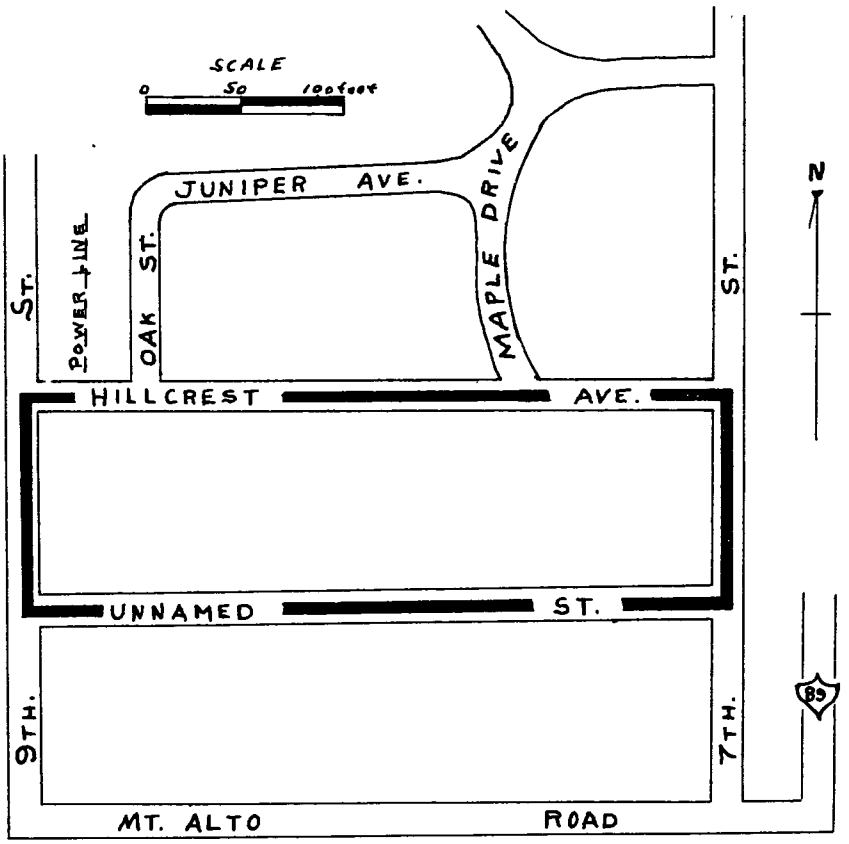


Fig. 2 ILLUSTRATION OF SEGMENT MAP

The position of the boundaries should be used exactly as shown on the map even though the corresponding features on the ground are now in a different location. For example, a road may have been rebuilt and its route changed; yet the boundary on the map coincides with the old

B. How to use maps--Con.

2.--Con.

location of the road. You must consider the old location as the boundary to be used in this case.

If your Segment Map shows structures, changes may have taken place since the map was prepared -- new structures may have been built, old ones converted or demolished, etc.

List all existing living quarters within boundaries

You must list all existing living quarters within the segment boundaries even though not shown on the map. Do <u>not</u> list living quarters which no longer exist even though symbols of such quarters are shown on the map.

EXCEPTION: If a note on the map specifies that the Area Segment consists of only certain addresses within the area outlined in red on the Segment Map, list <u>only</u> the indicated addresses.

C. Kinds of Segment Maps

There are four kinds of maps on which the boundaries of segments may be outlined. These are described below.

1. Sanborn detail maps

Wherever possible, segments are outlined on maps which show the location and addresses of individual structures. (See Fig. 3.) These are called Sanborn detail maps because they are made by the Sanborn Map Company. Such maps may not show construction or demolition which has taken place during the past few years. Be sure to list living quarters in all structures within the segment boundaries as the structures exist on the ground regardless of whether they are shown on the map. Use the boundaries exactly as outlined on the map even though streets or other landmarks have changed since the map was made.

C. Kinds of Segment Maps--Con.

1.--Con.

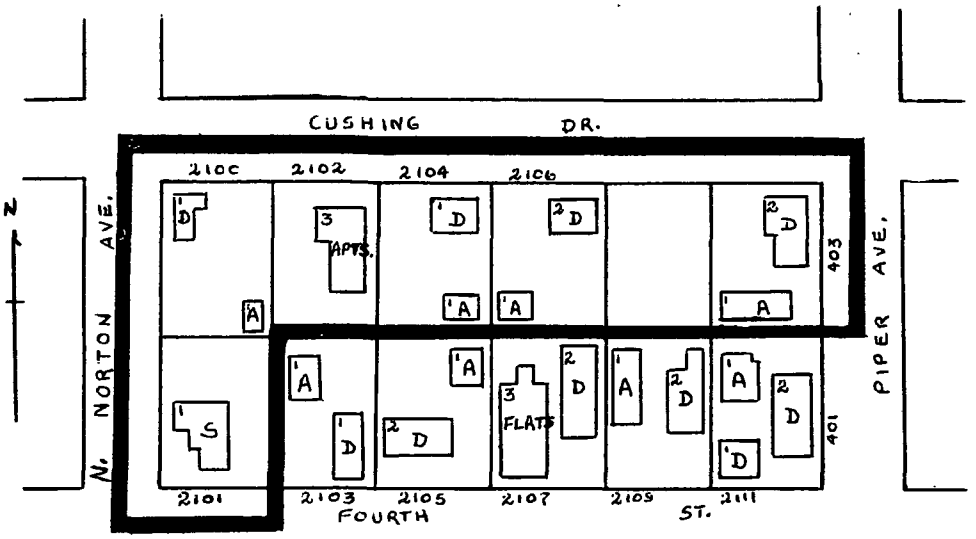


Fig. 3 SANBORN DETAIL MAP

(The letter "D" indicates dwelling; "F" flat; "S" store; "Apts." apartments; and "A" garage. The numbers inside the structure outline indicate the number of floors in the structure and the numbers along the margin are street numbers.)

Notice that in the segment in Fig. 3 the eastern boundary extends from the middle of Cushing Drive to the property line between 403 and 401 Piper Ave. The southern boundary extends from Piper Ave. along the back property lines of 2103-2111 Fourth Street, the property line between 2101 and 2103 Fourth Street, and then along Fourth Street to N. Norton Ave. The other boundaries are the middle of N. Norton Ave. and Cushing Drive.

2. Block or Street Maps

Some segments are outlined on Block or Street maps which show only the location of blocks or streets and no structure detail. (See Fig. 4.)

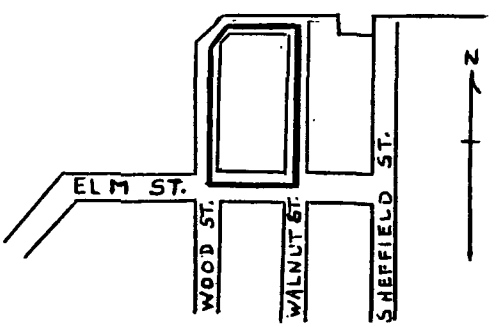


Fig. 4 BLOCK MAP

C. Kinds of Segment Maps—Con.

3. Reproductions of large-scale hand-drawn maps

Other segments will be outlined on reproductions of large-scale hand-drawn maps which were prepared in the field by Census personnel. Usually the words "Final Copy" appear on these maps and there is little or no detail shown outside the segment boundaries. Only the boundaries outlined in red are to be followed in determining the extent of the segment. While these hand-drawn maps show the general location of houses and other dwelling places, they may not show the exact location of these structures. An example of a reproduction of a large-scale hand-drawn map is given in Fig. 5.

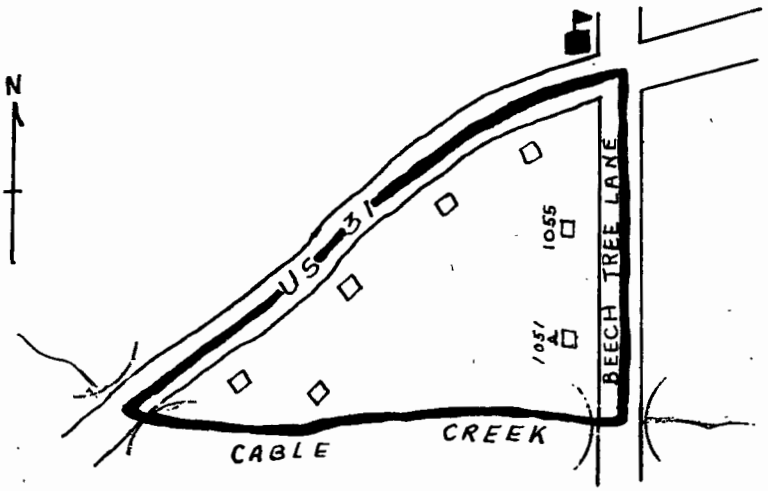


Fig. 5. REPRODUCTION OF LARGE-SCALE HAND-DRAWN MAP

The following symbols are used on reproductions of Large-Scale Hand-Drawn Maps:

□ = one housing unit [1]

△S = special dwelling place [1]

□T = trailer or tent

2 □ = two housing units

4 □ = four housing units

---

[1] See Part B for definitions of "housing unit" and "special dwelling place".

C. Kinds of Segment Maps--Con.

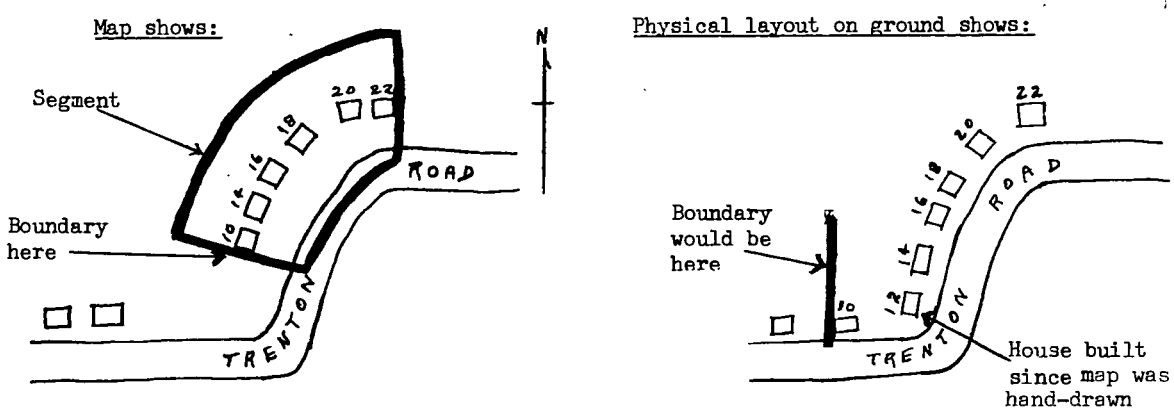
3.--Con.

Note that a square with a number (other than the house number) over it indicates that there is more than one housing unit in the structure. (See the structure located at 1051 Beech Tree Lane in Fig. 5.) The figure indicates the number of housing units the structure contained at the time the map was prepared.

Other symbols used on reproduced hand-drawn maps are the same as those on county highway maps. (See paragraph 4.)

Discrepancies in boundary locations

It may happen that housing unit symbols were placed in the wrong location on the map when it was prepared in the field and as a result the location of a segment boundary on the map may differ from the location of the boundary as it exists on the ground. For example,



In this particular case you should use the boundary as you find it on the ground; that is, you should use as the boundary the side property line of 10 Trenton Road as it is located on the ground.

CAUTION: Note that this rule (which is an exception to the general rule) is to be followed ONLY when the segment is outlined on a reproduced hand-drawn map and when the boundary in question is a property line beside a numbered housing unit. In all other cases, you are to use the location of the boundary as shown on the map.

C. Kinds of Segment Maps--Con.

4. County highway maps

Some segments will be outlined on a reproduction of a portion of a county highway map of the kind illustrated in Fig. 6.

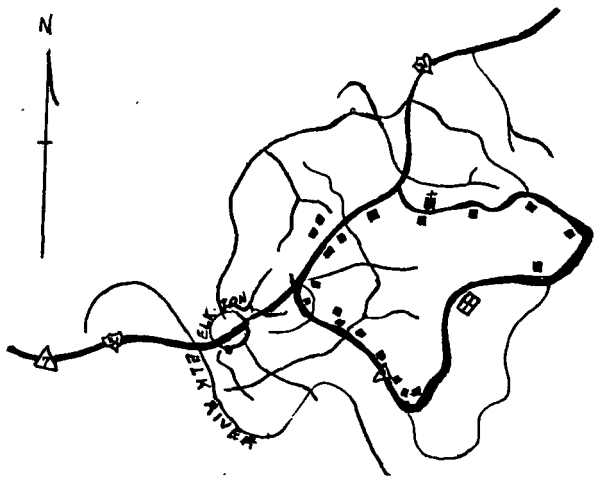


Fig. 6 ILLUSTRATION OF SEGMENT OUTLINED ON COUNTY HIGHWAY MAP

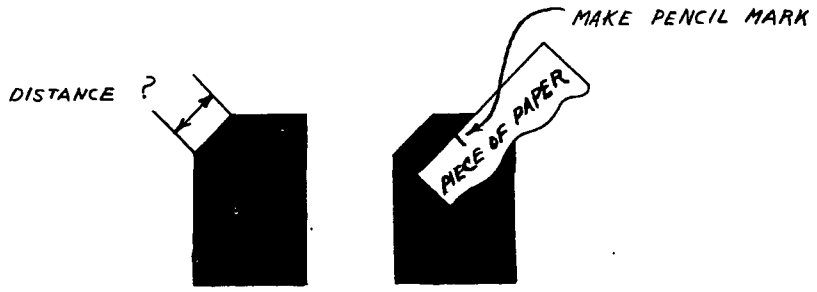
Symbols on a county highway map are explained in the Key on the map and will help you locate and identify the boundaries of the segment. The highway markers will identify the roads; for example, U.S. highway numbers are indicated by a shield (31) and State highway numbers by a triangle (7), rectangle [7] or similar symbol. Symbols for schools ■, churches ■, etc., will help identify the segment boundaries.

D. How to locate boundaries difficult to find on the ground

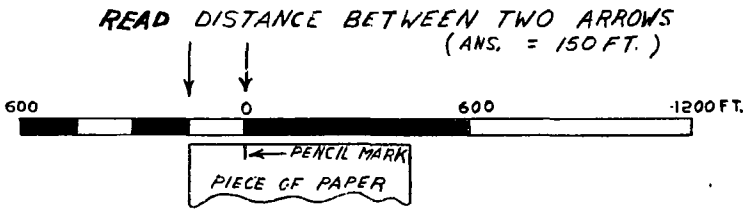
If a boundary is unnamed or is difficult to locate on the ground, use the scale at the bottom of the map to determine the extent of the boundary and its location in relation to well-defined and easily locatable boundaries or landmarks.

To find the distance between two points, where one is easily determined on the map and on the ground, and the other is questionable or cannot be located on the ground, place a piece of paper on the map so that the edge of the paper touches one point. Place a pencil mark on the paper opposite the other point as shown on the next page.

D. How to locate boundaries difficult to find on the ground—Con.



Then place the paper next to the scale and read the distance as follows:



After determining the distance according to the scale, pace off this distance in the proper direction on the ground to find the location of the undetermined point on the ground.

Determining length of pace

To determine the length of your pace, proceed as follows:

1. Using the map scale, measure the distance between two identifiable points on the map.
2. Walk between these two points on the ground, counting each step that you take between the two points.
3. Divide the number of steps into the number of feet measured by the scale. The result is your pace which should be used in determining distances from easily locatable boundaries or landmarks to boundaries which are difficult to find on the ground.
4. Example: In Fig. 2 the distance from the power line to Oak Street is 1/4 inch which equals 25 feet according to the scale for Fig. 2. Suppose you walked $12\frac{1}{2}$ steps from the power line to Oak Street. You would know that in pacing off other distances, you would count one step (that is one pace) as two feet.

D. How to locate boundaries difficult to find on the ground--Con.

Example

As pointed out on page C-6, the southern boundary of the segment shown in Fig. 2 is an unnamed street. To determine the exact location of the segment boundary which is shown on the map as an unnamed street use the map scale and measure on the map the distance from Hillcrest Ave. to the unnamed boundary street. Then pace this distance off on the ground. If the distance is 150 feet and your pace is 2 feet you would walk 75 paces. The street should be located at this point; if not, check your measurements and if correct inquire as to whether the street was ever cut through. Once you are sure you have determined the exact location of the southern boundary as shown on the map, use that location as the boundary on the ground.

Use of mileage indicator (speedometer)

Whenever the distance can be traversed by car and can be measured accurately on the mileage indicator (speedometer) of your car use this method of measurement. You will find the mileage indicator (together with information from local sources if necessary) useful in locating boundaries which are township, county or other minor civil division lines that are not indicated by a road, marker or other visible evidence on the ground. If the distance is too short to be measured accurately on the mileage indicator it should be paced off as instructed on page C-12.

E. Special problems in identifying segment boundaries

1. Boundaries consisting of streets which do not exist

Occasionally, you may find that one of the streets or other landmarks which forms part of the segment boundary does not exist. In such a case, estimate where the street (or other landmark) was or would have been located, carry out the listing using the estimated boundary, and report the situation on an INTER-COMM.

2. Street name on map different from actual street name

If the street name on the map is different from the actual street name consult available local maps or local officials to determine whether the name of the street has been changed from that shown on the Segment Map. If you find that the street has been renamed, change the street name on the map and in the heading of the Segment List; then explain the situation on an INTER-COMM. If the name of a boundary street has changed, BE SURE that you follow the location of the boundary exactly as indicated on the map.

3. Other boundary problems

If you encounter other boundary problems which you are unable to resolve, report them on an INTER-COMM.

F. Bringing reproduced large-scale hand-drawn maps up to date at time of original listing

Reproduced large-scale hand-drawn maps are prepared from sketches on which housing units and potential boundaries are entered by field personnel prior to listing. New construction, conversions and demolitions may have taken place since these maps were prepared. Be sure to list every residential unit (house, apartment, flat, etc.) and fill a P-2255 for every special dwelling place in the segment even though these are not shown on the map. Do <u>not</u> list units and special dwelling places which no longer exist even though shown on the map. Show the location of new units and special dwelling places by entering the appropriate symbol (see page C-9) on the map. Draw a large X on the map through structures which no longer exist. For multi-unit structures which change in size, correct the figure on the map showing the number of units the structure contains.

CHAPTER 3. WHAT TO LIST AND GENERAL PROCEDURE FOR LISTING

A. What to list

Within each Area Segment, you are to list separately (1) each housing unit and (2) in specified types of places each living arrangement which does not meet the housing unit definition such as a room in a boarding house.

1. Units which are housing units

Most of the units you are to list are housing units such as houses, apartments, or flats. List these in accordance with the basic rules given in Chapter C-5.

2. Units which are not housing units

Units consisting of living arrangements which do not meet the housing unit definition are located in places such as boarding and rooming houses and special dwelling places. List units in these places according to the special rules given in Chapter C-11, Rules for Handling Unusual Situations and Chapter C-14, How to List Special Dwelling Places.

3. Structures which contain no living quarters

In addition to listing housing units (and each living arrangement in places such as boarding and rooming houses and special dwelling places) you are also to list "structures which contain no living quarters" as instructed in Chapter C-8. The purpose of listing such structures is to make sure that every place in which people live or might live is covered and thus that all living quarters in the segment are listed.

B. General procedure for listing

In general you are to list by observation. This means that you will list separately each house which appears to contain only one housing unit and each apartment, flat, trailer, etc. If a structure or part of a structure appears to contain more than one housing unit but there is little indication from the outside as to the number of units to be listed, you are to inquire to determine the number of units the place contains as instructed in Chapter C-4.

In places such as boarding or rooming houses, nontransient hotels and special dwelling places, you must always inquire to determine the number of units the place contains. In apartment houses and in structures containing numbered flats, you will, of course, list by observation each apartment or flat.

If an Area Segment is in a permit area, you may need to inquire to determine "year built" at the time of listing and will always be inquiring about "year built" for structures added in updating. See Chapter 16 of Part C for instructions about "year built" at the time of listing and updating; see Chapter 12 of Part C for "year built" instructions in segments which appear to contain more than 100 units.

A. When to inquire

You will only need to make inquiries in the situations described in Section B on page C-15. Always talk to a responsible person in making inquiries. In inquiring about "year built" follow the instructions in Chapter 16 of Part C (and in Chapter 12 if the segment to be listed appears to contain more than 100 units).

B. How to inquire in residential structures other than large multi-unit structures

When necessary to inquire to determine the number of units in residential structures other than apartment houses, rooming and boarding houses, nontransient hotels and special dwelling places, use an approach similar to the following:

1. Approach to use

"I am _____ with the U.S. Bureau of the Census. (Show your identification card.) The Bureau is conducting a sample survey and in connection with this survey we are making a listing of the separate living quarters of all persons in this area. Are there living quarters--either occupied or vacant -- for more than one family or for boarders or roomers in this house?"

2. Questions to ask

If there are rooms for boarders or roomers, follow the instructions in section 1 on page C-53.

If the respondent indicates that more than one family lives in the house, ask additional questions to determine whether the living quarters of each family is a housing unit.

For example, if the respondent says another family occupies the second floor of her two-story house, ask whether both families live and eat together as one group. If the answer is yes, list the house occupied by the two families on one line of the listing sheet.

If the respondent indicates that the families live separately, ask whether the upstairs family has an entrance directly from the outside of the structure or from a hall which is not a part of the downstairs living quarters. If no direct access, ask whether the upstairs family has a kitchen or cooking equipment for their exclusive use. If the upstairs family has <u>either</u> direct access or cooking equipment for exclusive use, list the two apartments on separate lines of the listing sheet. If the upstairs family has <u>neither</u> direct access nor cooking equipment for exclusive use, list the structure on one line of the listing sheet.

B. How to inquire in residential structures other than large multi-unit structures --Con.

2. --Con. Also ask whether there are any living quarters, including those which may be vacant, in other structures on the property. If there are such quarters, determine whether they are located inside the segment boundaries and if so whether they meet the housing unit definition; then list accordingly. Do not list other structures on the property which are located outside segment boundaries.

3. How to close inquiry After you have completed your inquiry thank your respondent and tell her "A sample of households is to be selected for the survey. If yours is selected we will be back for more information".

4. How to show you have inquired Enter a check mark in the left margin of the listing sheet opposite the description of each residential unit at which you have inquired.

C. How to inquire in apartment houses If not satisfied by observation when listing an apartment house, identify yourself, explain the survey and ask the following questions of a responsible employee, or tenant if no employee is available.

Questions to ask

"How many apartments are in this building?"

"What are their numbers?"

"Are there any other quarters in the basement or attic used by the janitor or any other employee?"

"Are there any vacant or occupied living quarters in any other building on this property?"

D. How to inquire in boarding and rooming houses, nontransient hotels and special dwelling places In boarding and rooming houses, nontransient hotels, and special dwelling places, you must always inquire to determine the number of units to be listed or sampled, using the procedures given in Chapters C-11 and C-14.

E. How to inquire in nonresidential structures To determine whether there are any living quarters in nonresidential structures, ask of a responsible person connected with the building any questions you may think necessary, such as:

"Does the president or general manager of the company have a penthouse suite, or perhaps living quarters adjoining his office?"

"Are there any janitors who live in the building?"

"Are there any maintenance personnel who are on call at all hours of the day or night who therefore have living quarters in the building?"

A. Summary of basic rules

There are five basic rules which must be followed in listing.

1. Every housing unit and in certain types of places every living arrangement must be listed if occupied or intended for occupancy.
2. Every special dwelling place must be recorded on a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet.
3. Every structure with no living quarters must be listed.
4. Every part of the segment must be covered.
5. The "main entrance" rule must be applied to structures which cross segment boundaries.

B. Discussion of basic rules

The basic rules are discussed in detail below.

1. List on Segment List every housing unit and in certain types of places every living arrangement

List on a form called the Segment List (see Chapter C-6) all housing units (except those in special dwelling places) within the segment boundaries. In addition, list on this form all living arrangements in boarding and rooming houses regardless of whether they are housing units. List all of these living quarters whether occupied or vacant or under construction. Watch for basement, side and rear entrances, as they may lead to separate living quarters. Look for two or more doorbells, mailboxes, electric meters, etc., which usually show that the structure contains several living quarters. Some structures have more than one address which generally indicates there is more than one residential unit in the structure. If in doubt about the number of living quarters a structure contains, be sure to ask. List each separate living quarters only once.

Exception

Exception: Occasionally you may be given special instructions in the heading of the Segment List and on the Segment Folder or map to list only a certain part (or only certain addresses) of the area outlined in red. BEFORE starting your listing be sure to look for and read carefully any special instructions that may appear in the heading of the Segment List and any notations on the Segment Folder or Map.

Manufacturers of pre-cut houses, of prefab houses, etc., frequently construct a number of houses on a small display lot (or on the factory grounds) to advertise these types of houses and the different styles available. Houses of this type which are vacant and not intended for occupancy are not to be listed on the Segment List. On the other hand, a "model home" in a new housing development temporarily used for advertising purposes should be listed.

B. Discussion of basic rules--Con.

2. Record name, type and address of each special dwelling place

Record the name, type and address of each special dwelling place in the segment in the heading of a separate Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. Do not record special dwelling places on the Segment List. (See Chapter C-6 for illustration of form and Chapter C-14 for detailed instructions on listing of special dwelling places.)

3. List every "structure with no living quarters" in the segment

List every "structure with no living quarters" either

a. by checking the proper box on the Segment List

or

b. by entering the structure on a special form called the "List of Structures With No Living Quarters". (See page C-24 for explanation of title of form.)

Consider as "structures with no living quarters" houses built on display lots for advertising purposes only and not intended for occupancy. This type of house is to be distinguished from a "model home" in a housing development which is only temporarily not intended for occupancy. The latter type should be listed on the Segment List.

(Chapter C-8 contains detailed instructions on listing structures with no living quarters.)

4. Cover every part of the segment

Make sure that you cover every part of the segment.

a. How to insure complete coverage in built-up areas

a. To insure complete coverage in built-up areas:

(1) Start in the northwest corner of the segment and go completely around it in clockwise fashion.

(2) Then walk through all alleyways, passageways, courts, and any streets within the segment.

(3) Look for "concealed" units such as basement apartments; living quarters over or in the back of stores, in the rear of other houses, in garages, etc.

(4) For segments shown on reproduced large-scale hand-drawn maps, draw an X through units which no longer exist and which are located within the segment boundaries. Show the location of new units and special dwelling places by entering the appropriate symbol (see page C-9) on the map. Also show the location of roads, if any, within the segment which are not already drawn on the map and indicate their names and/or numbers.

B. Discussion of basic rules--Con.

b. How to insure complete coverage in rural areas and make entries on Segment map.

b. To insure complete coverage in rural areas:

(1) Begin at some convenient corner and make sure to cover every road and road section within the segment. Indicate by an "X" and the notation "START HERE" the point where you enter the segment to begin listing.

(2) Begin at one end of each road and follow the road to where it intersects the segment boundary or to the other end of the road within the segment.

Often you will need to interrupt your listing of a main road within (or bounding) the segment in order to list a side road. In such a case your order of travel on entering the main road would be (1) the first part of the main road, (2) the side road and (3) the remainder of the main road. (See Mill Lane Road in the illustrated Segment on page C-21.) The portion of the main road on either side of a side road (or between two side roads) is called a "road section".

(3) For segments being listed for the first time, assign consecutive letters beginning with A to the roads or road sections in the order traveled (Road A, Road B, etc.) and enter these letters on the map.

(4) List all living quarters on both sides of roads within the segment.

(5) If the road forms part of the segment boundary, list only those units on the side within the segment.

(6) List each unit once and only once, from the most accessible road.

(7) Look for side paths, breaks in the trees, telephone wires, etc., which may indicate the presence of living quarters.

(8) Walk up paths and lanes to see whether these lead to living quarters.

(9) Check by inquiry to see whether there are living quarters along boundaries and in areas that cannot be traversed such as along railroad tracks.

(10) Enter successive arrows on map to show route of travel.

(11) Indicate on the map the location of each housing unit and each special dwelling place now in existence or under construction. Include occupied units and vacant units, if habitable. Use the following symbols to designate location: ☐ housing unit; ☐ T for trailers that are housing units; and △S special dwelling places.

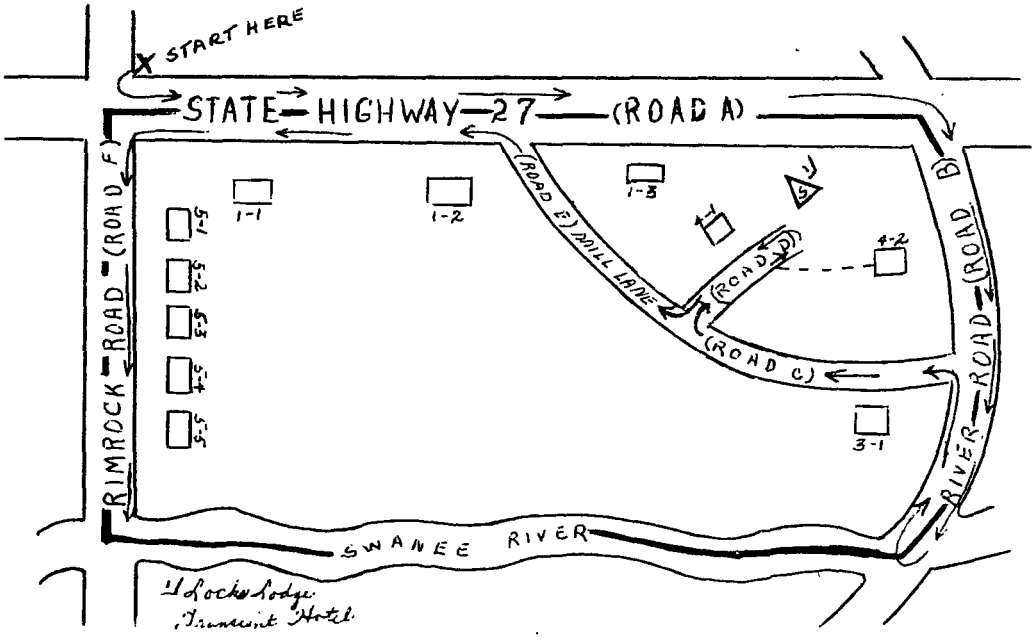
B. Discussion of basic rules--Con.

4. Con.

Also indicate on the map (beside the unit) the sheet and line number of the Segment List on which each housing unit is listed. Housing units located on each road or road section should be listed consecutively on the Segment List for the road or road section in the order of travel.

For special dwelling places enter the name and type in a footnote on the map.

See the following sketch which illustrates how these entries are to be made on the map.



(12) For segments shown on reproduced large-scale hand-drawn maps, follow the procedure given on page C-19 in paragraph 4a(4).

5. Apply "Main Entrance Rule" to structures which cross segment boundaries

"Main entrance" defined

If a structure crosses a segment boundary consider it to be inside the segment if its main entrance is within the boundary outlines. By "main entrance" we mean the entrance for which the address of the building is given. If the building has no address, consider the main entrance to be the one most frequently used by visitors and persons other than tradesmen, servants, etc.

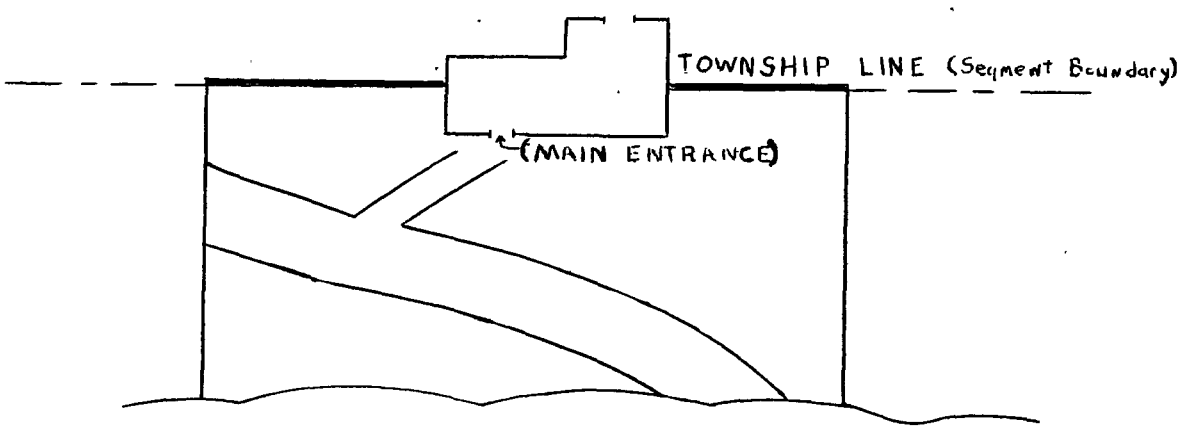
Exception to rule

NOTE: The only <u>exception</u> to this rule is in the case of segments for which you are instructed in the heading of the Segment List to list only certain addresses which may consist of part of a building. For such segments the "main entrance" rule given above does not apply; instead you are to list the specified part of the building.

B. Discussion of basic rules--Con.

5.--Con.

Example



Use of main entrance rule in special dwelling places

The use of the "main entrance" rule in buildings of special dwelling places which cross segment boundaries is given in Chapter C-14.

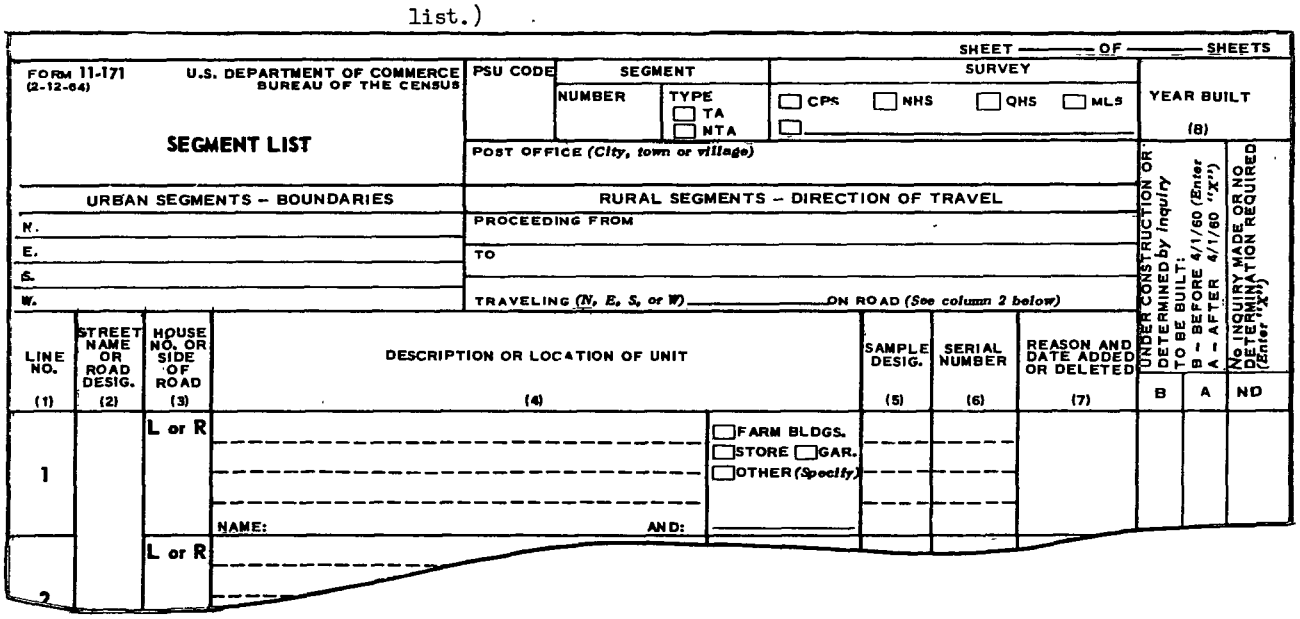
A. Types of listing forms

1. Segment List

In listing Area Segments you will use four types of listing forms. These are:

1. Segment List--Used to:
   a. list housing units (and in certain types of places living arrangements that are not housing units).
   b. indicate the existence of structures containing no living quarters such as garages, stores, barns, etc. which are located on the same property as the residential unit being listed and
   c. when specifically instructed to do so, to record information on year structures were built. (See Fig. 7.)

   (Note that special dwelling places are not to be entered on this list.)


SHEET ____ OF ____ SHEETS

FORM 11-171 (2-12-64) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

SEGMENT LIST

PSU CODE | SEGMENT NUMBER | TYPE ☐ TA ☐ NTA | SURVEY ☐ CPS ☐ NHS ☐ QHS ☐ MLS ☐ ____ | YEAR BUILT (8)

POST OFFICE (City, town or village)

URBAN SEGMENTS – BOUNDARIES: N. E. S. W.

RURAL SEGMENTS – DIRECTION OF TRAVEL: PROCEEDING FROM ____ TO ____ TRAVELING (N, E, S, or W) ____ ON ROAD (See column 2 below)

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF UNIT (4)	SAMPLE DESIG. (5)	SERIAL NUMBER (6)	REASON AND DATE ADDED OR DELETED (7)	UNDER CONSTRUCTION OR DETERMINED by inquiry TO BE BUILT: B – BEFORE 4/1/60 (Enter "X")	A – AFTER 4/1/60 "X")	No INQUIRY MADE OR NO DETERMINATION REQUIRED (Enter "X")
							B	A	ND
1		L or R	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)						
			NAME: AND:						
2		L or R							

Fig. 7 EXCERPT FROM SEGMENT LIST USED TO LIST AREA SEGMENTS IN CURRENT HOUSEHOLD SURVEYS

2. Supplemental Segment List

2. Supplemental Segment List--Form used in bringing lists up to date in NTA Segments. Units missed in previous listing and new and converted units are to be entered on this list. (See Fig. 8 on page C-24.)

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

A. Types of listing forms--Con.

SHEET ____ OF ____ SHEETS

FORM 11-172 (2-12-64) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

SUPPLEMENTAL SEGMENT LIST FOR NTA SEGMENTS

PSU CODE	SEGMENT NUMBER	SEGMENT TYPE ☐ TA ☐ NTA	SURVEY ☐ CPS ☐ NHS ☐ QHS ☐ MLS ☐ ____	YEAR BUILT (8)

POST OFFICE *(City, town or village)*

URBAN SEGMENTS – BOUNDARIES	RURAL SEGMENTS – DIRECTION OF TRAVEL
N.	PROCEEDING FROM
E.	TO
S.	
W.	TRAVELING *(N, E, S, or W)* ____ ON ROAD *(See column 2 below)*

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF UNIT (4)	SAMPLE DESIG. (5)	SERIAL NUMBER (6)	REASON AND DATE ADDED OR DELETED (7)	UNDER CONSTRUCTION OR DETERMINED by Inquiry TO BE BUILT: B – BEFORE 4/1/60 (Enter "X")	A – AFTER 4/1/60 (Enter "X")	No INQUIRY MADE OR NO DETERMINATION REQUIRED (Enter "X")
1		L or R	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER *(Specify)* NAME: AND:				B	A	ND
2		L or R	☐ FARM BLDGS.						

Fig. 8 EXCERPT FROM SUPPLEMENTAL SEGMENT LIST

3. List of Structures with no living quarters

3. List of Structures With No Living Quarters (appears on right inside page of Segment Folder) with separate continuation sheets provided as needed. -- Used to list structures which contain no living quarters (such as church, store, filling station, etc.) and which are not located on the same property as structures containing residential units. (See Fig. 9.)

FORM 11-170 (10-16-63) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

LIST OF STRUCTURES WITH NO LIVING QUARTERS FOR TA AND NTA SEGMENTS

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIGNATION (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF STRUCTURE WITH NO LIVING QUARTERS (4)	SEGMENT LIST SHEET AND LINE REFERENCE (5)	PERSON SUPPLYING INFORMATION (6)
1		L OR R	☐ STORE ☐ CHURCH ☐ SCHOOL ☐ FILLING STATION ☐ FACTORY ☐ RESTAURANT ☐ ABANDONED STRUCTURE ☐ OTHER *(Specify)* ____	ON SHEET ____ BETWEEN LINES ____ AND ____	
		L OR R	☐ ST		

Fig. 9 EXCERPT FROM LIST OF STRUCTURES WITH NO LIVING QUARTERS

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

A. Types of Listing forms--Con.

Occasionally you may have more structures to list than lines provided on page 3 of the Segment Folder. In this case use form 11-170A which is a continuation sheet for page 3. (See Fig. 9A.)

SHEET_____OF_____SHEETS

FORM 11-170A (10-21-68) — U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

LIST OF STRUCTURES WITH NO LIVING QUARTERS FOR TA AND NTA SEGMENTS
(Continuation sheet)

SURVEY: ☐ CPS ☐ NHS ☐ QHS ☐ MLS ☐ _____

PSU CODE

SEGMENT NO.

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIGNATION (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF STRUCTURE WITH NO LIVING QUARTERS (4)	SEGMENT LIST SHEET AND LINE REFERENCE (5)	PERSON SUPPLYING INFORMATION (6)
1		L or R	☐ STORE ☐ CHURCH ☐ SCHOOL ☐ FILLING STATION ☐ FACTORY ☐ RESTAURANT ☐ ABANDONED STRUCTURE ☐ OTHER (Specify)_____	ON SHEET_____ BETWEEN LINES _____ AND _____	
		L or R	☐ [illegible] ☐ [illegible] ☐ [illegible] ☐ FILLING STATION		

Fig. 9A EXCERPT FROM CONTINUATION SHEET OF LIST OF STRUCTURES WITH NO LIVING QUARTERS

4. Special Dwelling Listing Sheet

4. Special Dwelling Listing Sheet.--Used to record the name, type and address of each special dwelling place in the segment and also to list units within special dwelling places. (See Fig. 10)

SHEET_____OF_____SHEETS

FORM P-2255 (9-11-61) — U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

SPECIAL DWELLING LISTING SHEET

FORM APPROVED BUDGET BUREAU NO. 41-R1206.6

NOTE: For special dwelling places in TAKE ALL SEGMENTS, skip items a, b, and c and list units in Column (2).

a. REGISTER AVAILABLE?
Yes ☐ If "Yes," complete heading items b and c only.
No ☐ If "No," skip items b and c and list units in Column (2).

b. REGISTER IS RECORD OF:
☐ Living quarters (Rooms, HUS, etc.) ☐ Persons

SAMPLE AREA (PSU): CODE | NAME

BLOCK OR RURAL SAMPLE AREA (PLACE): IDEN. CODE | NAME

SEGMENT: SEGMENT NO. | TYPE

c. DATE	NUMBER OF UNITS: NONSTAFF	STAFF	UNCLASSIFIED

NAME OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACE

ADDRESS

TYPE

LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	SAMPLE DESIGNATION (3)	SERIAL NUMBER (4)	LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	SAMPLE DESIGNATION (3)	SERIAL NUMBER (4)
1				21			

Fig. 10 EXCERPT FROM SPECIAL DWELLING LISTING SHEET

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

A. Types of Listing Forms--Con.

4. --Con.

You may find that some of the listing forms in your assignment are not identical to those illustrated above. The reason for this is that listing forms are revised from time to time - titles may change as new concepts are developed or columns may be added in order to incorporate new procedures effective with new segments coming into sample. Revisions are usually such that the originally prepared listing forms for segments continuing in sample over a period of time can be retained for the life of the segment unless you are instructed otherwise.

B. Sheet for recording problems and questions

You will also use an INTER-COMM, on which you will record any problems encountered or questions you have concerning listing. (See Fig. 11.)

FORM 11-36
(3-7-63)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

INTERviewer
COMMunication

(Referral Sheet)

See instructions on reverse side of "Field Office" or "Originator's" copies

a. Regional office (*Check:* ☐ TO ☐ FROM)

b. Survey (*Check which*) ☐ CPS ☐ NHS ☐ QHS ☐ CBR ☐ SOC ☐ ____

c. Interviewer's name

d. Date

IF REFERENCE TO SPECIFIC UNIT, SHOW WHERE APPLICABLE

e. PSU Code

f. Segment number

g. Type segment ☐ B ☐ TA ☐ PC ☐ NP ☐ X or NTA ☐ Sub-segment ☐ CBR ☐ ____

h. Sample ☐ CPS ____ ☐ NHS ____ ☐ QHS ____ ☐ OT ____

i. Form No.

j. Sheet No.

k. Line No.

l. Serial number or other identification

Section I – STATEMENT (Answer required: ☐ Yes ☐ No)

Section II – ANSWER

Fig. 11 EXCERPT FROM INTER-COMM

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

C. Segment Folder — You will be furnished with a separate Segment Folder for each segment you are to list. This folder is used (1) to indicate your specific listing assignment and (2) to hold the maps and forms used in listing. (See Figs. 12 and 13.)

FORM NHS-202 (4-24-62)

NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEY

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

I. INSTRUCTIONS TO INTERVIEWERS		SAMPLE B	B	B	B
AREA SEGMENTS	LIST ONLY: TO BE COMPLETED BY →				
	NTA SEGMENT: BRING LISTING UP TO DATE ONLY: TO BE COMPLETED BY →				
	TA SEGMENT: BRING LISTING UP TO DATE AND INTERVIEW SAMPLE UNITS DURING WEEK OF →				
	NTA SEGMENT: INTERVIEW SAMPLE UNITS DURING WEEK OF →				
"B" SEGMENTS	INTERVIEW SAMPLE UNITS ~~AND CONDUCT P-S CHECK FOR REFERENCE UNITS DESIGNATED ON "B" SEGMENT ADDRESS LIST~~ DURING WEEK OF →				
	CONTINUE P-S CHECK FOR SECONDARY REFERENCE UNITS DURING WEEK OF →				
II. SAMPLING INSTRUCTIONS		START WITH	START WITH	START WITH	START WITH
		TAKE EVERY	TAKE EVERY	TAKE EVERY	TAKE EVERY

III. RECORD OF TRANSMITTAL *(Return this folder with last shipment for this segment)*

SERIAL NUMBER	DATE OF SHIPMENT	SERIAL NUMBER	DATE OF SHIPMENT	SERIAL NUMBER	DATE OF SHIPMENT

IV. SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS AND OTHER NOTES

A. Supervisor: ENTER BELOW ANY NECESSARY, SPECIFIC INSTRUCTIONS FOR SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES, SEGMENT BOUNDRIES, SUB-SAMPLING, ETC.

B. Interviewer: ENTER BELOW NOTES SUCH AS DIRECTIONS TO SEGMENT FROM HOME, BEST DAY OR TIME OF DAY TO VISIT SEGMENT, ETC.

V. SPECIAL DWELLING PLACE IN SEGMENT? ☐ YES ☐ NO

NAME OF PLACE *(If yes)* 1. _____ 2. _____

PSU CODE | PSU NAME | GRID REF. | IDEN. CODE | PLACE | SEGMENT NO. | TYPE | SAMPLE

Fig. 12 SEGMENT FOLDER USED IN NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEY

C. Segment Folder--Con.

For CPS, form number is CPS-210 or 1-210; for MLS. form number is MLS-210.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

SEGMENT FOLDER

INSTRUCTIONS TO INTERVIEWER

Items X'd under column showing current month indicates action to be taken and status of sample units.

			FIRST PERIOD					SECOND PERIOD				
		YEAR →										
		MONTH →										
PART I - INSTRUCTIONS	A. TA AND NTA SEGMENTS	1. LIST ONLY - NEW SEGMENT *(Enumeration starts next month)*										
		2. BRING UP TO DATE										
		3. BRING UP TO DATE AND ENUMERATE ALL UNITS IN THIS SEGMENT										
	B. ALL SEGMENTS	1. ENUMERATE UNITS AT ADDRESSES SHOWN ON CONTROL CARDS										
		2. ENUMERATE BY CALLING THE TELEPHONE NUMBERS SHOWN ON CONTROL CARDS										
PART II - SAMPLE UNIT STATUS	A. FIRST PERIOD	1. FIRST MONTH - FILL CONTROL CARDS *(Will return next month)*										
		2. SECOND AND THIRD MONTHS *(Will return next month)*										
		3. FOURTH MONTH *(Will return in 8 months)*										
	B. SECOND PERIOD	1. FIRST, SECOND, THIRD MONTHS *(Will return next month)*										
		2. FOURTH MONTH *(Will be dropped after this month)*										

NOTE: 1. Prepare a control card for each "extra" unit found in this segment.
2. Keep control cards of callbacks in this folder.
3. Return this folder with the last shipment from this segment.

SAMPLING INSTRUCTIONS	
START WITH	TAKE EVERY

PART III - RECORD OF TRANSMITTAL

SERIAL NUMBER	YR. / MO.		SERIAL NUMBER	YR. / MO.	

NOTE: If a unit is noninterview, enter code A, B, or C for type of noninterview in appropriate box.

PART IV - SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS AND OTHER NOTES

A. SUPERVISOR *(Enter below any necessary, specific instructions for special dwelling places, segment boundries, etc.)*

(Stamp)

B. INTERVIEWER *(Enter below notes such as directions to segment from home, best day or time to visit segment, etc.)*

PART V - SPECIAL DWELLING PLACE IN SEGMENT? ☐ YES ☐ NO

IF "YES," ENTER NAME OF PLACE

1.

2.

PSU CODE | PSU NAME | GRID REF. | IDEN. CODE | PLACE | SEG. NO. | TYPE | ROT. NO. | SAMPLE

Fig. 13. EXCERPT FROM SEGMENT FOLDER USED IN CURRENT POPULATION SURVEY AND IN MONTHLY LABOR SURVEY

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

A. Heading

You will receive a Segment Folder for each Area Segment assigned to you and a supply of blank listing sheets. One sheet of the Segment List will be attached inside the folder. (Occasionally you may receive a folder containing an Area Segment which consists entirely of a special dwelling place. Such a place is to be listed on a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet as instructed in Chapter 14.) The heading items (except, in most cases, for Post Office and boundaries of urban segments or direction of travel for rural segments) will have been filled on the Segment List in the folder. If you need more than one sheet for the segment, copy the heading information to each sheet that you use.

1. Post Office

In order to send out "Dear Friend" letters to sample households in Area Segments in advance of interview, your supervisor must have a Post Office address for these households. He does not have this information for households located in rural or in some built-up areas. For this reason we are asking you to find out by limited inquiry the Post Office which services the households in segments located in these areas.

Specifically you are to fill the Post Office item on the first sheet prepared for an Area Segment in the following situations:

a. When it is obvious that the place indicated on the tab of the Segment Folder is not the name of a Post Office. The following are examples: Kingston twp., Luzerne County; Clinton town, Dutchess County; East San Gabriel div., Los Angeles County; Ward 5, Ascension County; and Salem dist., Roanoke County.

b. When the segment is located in a "named place" but households in the segment are serviced by a Post Office that does not bear the name indicated on the folder.

Example 1 - A segment is located in a community that has been annexed to a city but the Post Office which services the community still retains the community name. An illustration of this situation would be a segment with "Los Angeles, city" entered in the tab of the Segment Folder but the Post Office address of households within the segment is "North Hollywood". In this case, you should enter "North Hollywood" in the space for Post Office.

Example 2 - A segment is located in a village or unincorporated place where there is no Post Office, therefore, the households in the segment are serviced by a Post Office located elsewhere.

If some of the units in the segment receive their mail through one Post Office and some through another, enter in a footnote in the Remarks Section the line numbers of the units serviced by each Post Office.

A. Heading--Con.

1.--Con. Do not fill this item for segments where the Post Office name is the same as the "Place" name appearing on the tab of the Segment Folder.

CAUTION: Determine the Post Office servicing the units from one source -- preferably the Post Office itself or from someone with a general knowledge of the area. Do NOT inquire at every housing unit to determine its Post Office address. <u>This is essential in order to keep within the costs allocated for the listing operation</u>.

2. Urban Area Segments -- Boundaries

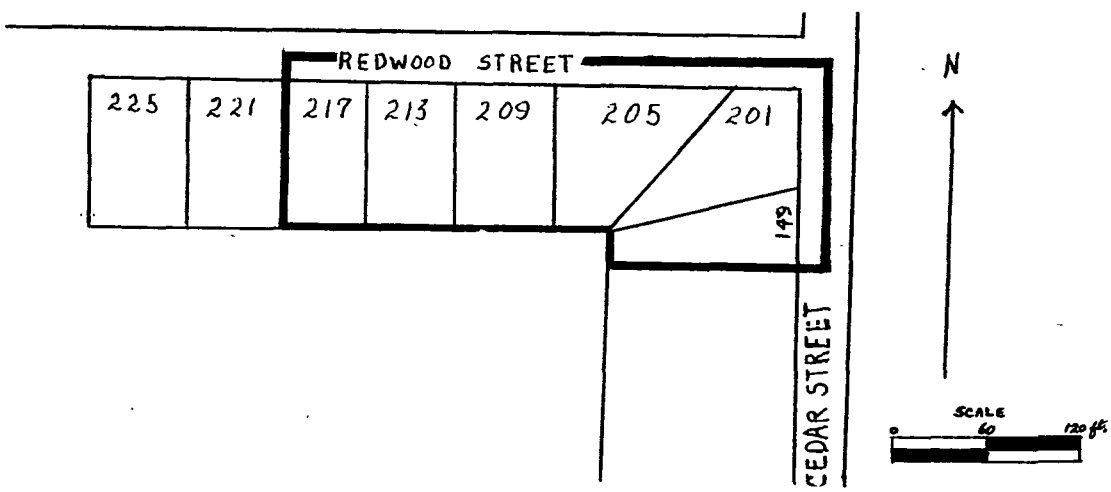
If the Area Segment consists of a block or part of a block, enter the segment boundaries in the space provided in the heading. For example:

URBAN SEGMENTS -- BOUNDARIES	
N.	Twin Lakes Drive
E.	Portage Path
S.	Blaine Ave.
W.	West Market Street

For some urban Area Segments you may find that the description of a north, east, south or west boundary is too long to be written in the indicated space. In such a case, you may continue the description of this boundary in the space for "Rural Segments" or continue it in the Remarks space. Be sure, however, to "key" (footnote, arrow, etc.) this description to the indicated space for the boundary you are describing.

The following is a sketch of an urban Area Segment for which the space in the heading of the Segment List is inadequate for the south boundary. On page C-31 is an illustration of how the description of the south boundary may be entered on the Segment List.

Sketch



A. Heading--Con.

2. --Con.

Illustration of description of segment boundaries

URBAN SEGMENTS -- BOUNDARIES	RURAL SEGMENTS -- DIRECTION OF TRAVEL
N. Redwood Street	~~PROCEEDING FROM:~~
E. Redwood Street	FROM: Lines of 149 Redwood St., south property lines
S. South and west property	TO: of 205-217 Redwood St.
W. West property line of 217 Redwood St.	TRAVELING (N, E, S, or W) _____ ON ROAD (See Column 2 below)
STREET HOUSE	SAMPLE

3. Rural Area Segments -- Direction of Travel — If the Area Segment is located in a rural area, use a separate Segment List for each road or road section. Enter the direction and limits of travel in the space provided in the heading. For example:

RURAL SEGMENTS -- DIRECTION OF TRAVEL
PROCEEDING FROM: Road A
TO: Swanee River
TRAVELING (N, E, S, or W) S ON ROAD (See Column 2 below)

4. Special Instructions — In some cases the Segment Map on the left inside cover of the Segment Folder will indicate that you are to list specific addresses for the segment. Your supervisor will have entered the addresses in the space for segment boundaries on the Segment List and instructions for listing these addresses in Section IV A of the Segment Folder. Be sure to follow these instructions.

B. Rules for filling body of Segment List — Observe the following rules in filling the body of the Segment List:

1. Cols. 2-4 — Fill only columns 2-4. Be sure to give a complete and detailed description of each unit in columns 2-4 as shown in the examples on pages C-34 and C-35.

2. Cols. 5-7 — Make no entries in columns 5-7.

3. Col. 8 — See Chapter 16 for instructions regarding filling column 8 at the time of listing.

4. One line per unit — List each unit on a separate line of the Segment List. Do not skip any lines.

5. Indicating inquiry — When in doubt as to the number of living quarters in a structure, inquire. Enter a check mark in the left margin of the Segment List opposite each unit at which you have inquired.

6. Indicating structures with no living quarters — In column 4, specify by checking the proper box, the type of any structure such as a garage or store which is on the same property as the unit

B. Rules for filling body of Segment List—Con.

6.—Con. being listed, but which is not at present occupied or intended for occupancy as living quarters. (This structure is to be considered at the time of interviewing as part of the unit entered on the same line of the Segment List — for NHS, see Chapter 2 of Part A; for CPS and MLS see Chapter 11 of Part D; for SORAR, see Chapter 5 of Part D.)

If there is more than one unit on the same property as a structure with no living quarters, check the appropriate box on the line for only one of the units.

7. Streets and segments with no living quarters

If in a built-up area, a street or alley contains no living quarters, enter the name of the street or alley on the back of the Segment List with the notation "No Living Quarters". If in a rural area there are no living quarters on a particular road or road section enter "No Living Quarters" on the front of the Segment List for that road or road section. If the entire segment contains no living quarters, write "No Living Quarters" on the front of the Segment List. Make the above entry even though there is a special dwelling place on the street or road or in the segment provided there are no other living quarters in the segment.

8. Order of listing in multi-unit structures

In structures containing more than one unit, use the following rules in determining the order of listing:

a. If there is a numbering or lettering system

If there is a regular numbering or lettering system:

(1) Begin with the lowest number or letter and proceed numerically or alphabetically to the highest number or letter.

(2) If basement units in a structure are not included in the numbering or lettering system (for example a basement apartment for a janitor) list the basement unit before the numbered or lettered apartments on the upper floors.

b. If <u>no</u> system

If there is no regular numbering or lettering system:

(1) Always list units on a lower floor before listing those on a higher floor. Begin with the basement, then the first floor, second floor, etc.

(2) Always proceed to the right as you list units on each floor of either a multi-story or a one-story structure. This means that you are to turn to the right from the main <u>entrance to the floor</u> and keep to the right as you list each unit in sequence.

B. Rules for filling body of Segment List—Con.

8.—Con.

b.—Con.

(3) In structures which have living quarters in front and rear, list front before rear.

(4) In structures which have right and left units, list right before left. As you enter a structure or floor within a structure from its main entrance, you must turn to the right from that entrance, then keep to the right as you cover the hall, making sure to list all units on it.

NOTE: In some situations it may be advisable to draw a rough sketch of the structure showing the location of each unit and the sheet and line number of the Segment List on which the unit is listed. Do this only when you feel that another person would have difficulty in determining the location of a unit you have listed in a structure which has no regular numbering or lettering system.

9. Special rules for rural areas

When listing in rural areas where there are no street and house numbers:

a. Side of road

Always show on which side of the road the unit is located in relation to your direction of travel by encircling L (for left) or R (for right) in column 3.

b. Name of household head

If you can see it on a mailbox or sign, enter the name of the household head in column 4 as part of the description of each unit. Do not make any special effort to get the name if it is not readily available. Since many households in the same vicinity may have the same family name, be sure to enter in addition to the last name, the first name or initials if given on the mailbox or sign.

C. Examples of partially filled Segment Lists

Fig. 14 shows how columns 1-4 of the Segment List would be filled for an urban segment; Fig. 15 for a rural segment. Be sure to read the marginal notes which contain specific instructions. Instructions regarding filling column 8 of the Segment List are given in Chapter 16 at the end of this part (Part C) of your manual.

D. Your name and the date

At the bottom of page 3 of the Segment Folder, below the List of Structures With No Living Quarters, enter your name and the date (month and year) the listing was completed.

SHEET 1 OF 3 SHEETS

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF UNIT (4)	
✓ 1	Johnson Street	L or R 137	First floor front NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
2		L or R 137	First floor rear NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
3		L or R 139	— NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☑ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
4	North-South alley closed to Johnson St.	L or R	East side, first house near Bidwell St, separated one-story NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
5		L or R	West side first house near Bidwell St. red brick, green trim, one-story NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
6		L or R	Rooms above red brick garage, west side of alley NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)

Total number of sheets used for listing segments.

Enter a check mark in the left margin opposite each unit at which you inquire.

Enter street name.

Enter house number.

If there is only one unit at an address enter a dash.

Draw line when all units on street have been listed.

If alley, street or road has no name, give it some designation which will aid in location.

If there are several units at address, identify each one completely. If there is no number or letter, enter location. List units in consecutive order.

Specify type of any structure which is on same property but which is not at present intended for occupancy as living quarters.

If there is no house number, identify the unit completely.

Fig. 14 EXAMPLE OF A PARTIALLY FILLED SEGMENT LIST FOR AN URBAN AREA SEGMENT

(See Chapter 16 of this part (Part C) of your manual for instructions regarding Column 8 of the Segment List.)

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

Encircle side of road considering direction you are traveling.

Use permanent landmarks in description.

Try to indicate some guidemark such as: RD route no. and Box No., telephone pole no., etc.

Enter a check mark next to each unit at which you inquire.

Enter road letter designation (Road A, B, C etc.) and name, if any.

Indicate house number, if any.

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF UNIT (4)	
1	U.S. Highway 21 Road C	(L) or R R.D. Route 4 Box 10	Brown frame one-story house with screened porch and anchor fence NAME: John T. Johnson AND:	☑ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
2		(L) or R 10 yds. beyond telephone pole #62	Unpainted shack with flat roof opposite railroad water tank, poplar trees NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
3		L or (R) Exactly opposite electric pole #72	Large stone mansion with driveway going completely around it. NAME: P. R. Allen AND:	☑ FARM BLDGS ☐ STORE ☑ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
✓ 4		L or (R)	Two-story white house 1.2 miles north of intersection of roads A and B NAME: F. P. Bolger AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
5		L or (R) House Number 22	— NAME: George L. Price AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☑ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)
		L or R	AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR.

LINE NO.	REMARKS (Use reverse side, if necessary)
2, col. 4	along barbed wire fence in front.

Do not enter color alone; houses are repainted.

Determine name from mail box or sign if possible. If a common name, enter first name or initials.

If not enough space, use Remarks Section to give complete description.

Specify any separate structures on the property which are at present not intended for occupancy as living quarters.

Sometimes it is necessary to give exact mileage from a relatively permanent landmark or road intersection.

Use to enter additional description of unit, etc.

Fig. 15 EXAMPLE OF A PARTIALLY FILLED SEGMENT LIST FOR A RURAL AREA SEGMENT

(See Chapter 16 of this part (Part C) of your manual for instructions regarding column 8 of the Segment List.)

A. Where to list structures with no living quarters

To make sure that every structure in an Area Segment is covered and all living quarters listed, each structure which contains no living quarters must be entered on either the Segment List, 11-171, or the List of Structures With No Living Quarters printed on the right inside cover of the Segment Folder. You will be furnished with a supply of separate continuation sheets of the List of Structures With No Living Quarters to use if more lines are needed than provided for on the Segment Folder.

1. Structures located on same property with living quarters

If a structure with no living quarters is located on property on which there are living quarters (except in special dwelling places), the structure should be listed on the Segment List. The listing is to be done by checking the appropriate box on the line for the living quarters on the same property as instructed on page C-31, paragraph B6.

2. Structures located on property with no living quarters

If the structure is located on property on which there are no living quarters, the structure should be entered on the "List of Structures With No Living Quarters" printed on the Segment Folder (or on the continuation sheet of this list if more space is required).

B. Farm buildings not used as living quarters in rural areas

In rural areas farm buildings not used as living quarters are usually located on the same property as a structure containing living quarters and should be accounted for by checking the box on the Segment List on the line for the living quarters. In some cases, however, a farmer may own property on which there may be a barn or other farm buildings but no living quarters. In the latter case, the farm building with no living quarters should be entered on the List of Structures With No Living Quarters.

C. Rules for filling "List of Structures With No Living Quarters"

The rules for filling the List of Structures With No Living Quarters are as follows:

1. Heading

If you are filling the form which is printed on page 3 of the Segment Folder, there are no heading items to be filled.

If you are filling one of the separate sheets of the "List of Structures With No Living Quarters," Form 11-170A, check the appropriate survey box and enter the PSU code and Segment Number in the heading. (If you are using an earlier version of the continuation sheet, indicate only the Survey, PSU code and Segment Number in the heading; leave the other heading items blank.)

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

C. Rules for filling "List of Structures With No Living Quarters" — con.

2. Avoid duplicate listing

The same "structure with no living quarters" should not appear on both the Segment List and List of Structures With No Living Quarters. For example, do not check the box for "store" on the Segment List and then enter the same store on the List of Structures With No Living Quarters.

3. Check before listing

Before recording a structure on the "List of Structures With No Living Quarters", make sure that the structure contains no living quarters by either (a) asking a responsible person or (b) personal inspection. Enter in column 6 the title of the person you asked such as neighbor, janitor, etc., or your initials if by personal inspection.

4. Do not enter special dwelling places on the List of Structures With no Living Quarters

Do not enter on the List of Structures With No Living Quarters any building which is part of a special dwelling place.

5. If NO structures with no living quarters in segment

If there are no "structures with no living quarters" to be listed for the segment write "NONE" across the form on the right inside page of the Segment Folder.

6. Groups of structures with no living quarters

Use one line on the List of Structures With No Living Quarters to list groups of structures with no living quarters located on the same property and operated by the same company or person. Examples: (a) a research company may consist of a group of buildings; check the box for "Other" and specify, for example, "Atlas Research Company - all buildings"; (b) a plot of land without any living quarters may contain a barn and several shacks. In this case check the box for "Other" and specify "Barn and shacks".

7. Example

Fig. 16 shows how the List of Structures With No Living Quarters would be filled. Read the marginal notes which contain specific instructions for filling the form.

Describe type of structure here by checking appropriate box.

If you check the box marked "other" specify type of structure.

Enter house number or side of road or any other number which will aid in locating structure.

Draw a line before entering "structure with no living quarters" found on a different road.

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD NO. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF STRUCTURE WITH NO LIVING QUARTERS (4)	SEGMENT LIST SHEET AND LINE REFERENCE (5)	PERSON SUPPLYING INFORMATION (6)
1	Lee Blvd	L or R 6108	☑ STORE ☐ CHURCH ☐ SCHOOL ☐ FILLING STATION ☐ FACTORY ☐ RESTAURANT ☐ ABANDONED STRUCTURE ☐ OTHER (Specify) Brown's Hardware	ON SHEET 3 BETWEEN LINES 4 AND 5	Owner
2		L or R 6110	☑ STORE ☐ CHURCH ☐ SCHOOL ☐ FILLING STATION ☐ FACTORY ☐ RESTAURANT ☐ ABANDONED STRUCTURE ☐ OTHER (Specify) Boulevard Delicatessen	ON SHEET 3 BETWEEN LINES 4 AND 5	Salesman
3		L or R 6112	☐ STORE ☐ CHURCH ☐ SCHOOL ☐ FILLING STATION ☐ FACTORY ☐ RESTAURANT ☐ ABANDONED STRUCTURE ☑ OTHER (Specify) U. S. Postoffice	ON SHEET 3 BETWEEN LINES 4 AND 5	Clerk
4		L or R 6114	☐ STORE ☐ CHURCH ☐ SCHOOL ☐ FILLING STATION ☐ FACTORY ☐ RESTAURANT ☐ ABANDONED STRUCTURE ☑ OTHER (Specify) Frozen Custard Stand	ON SHEET 3 BETWEEN LINES 4 AND 5	Saleslady
5	Langley Road	L or R 501	☐ STORE ☐ CHURCH ☐ SCHOOL ☑ FILLING STATION ☐ FACTORY ☐ RESTAURANT ☐ ABANDONED STRUCTURE ☐ OTHER (Specify) Green's Service Station	ON SHEET 4 BETWEEN LINES 6 AND 7	E. H.

Give the name or other distinguishing features of the structure here.

Specify sheet and line numbers of Segment List where this structure fits in sequence of address.

Enter the title of the person who supplied you with the information about this structure.

If no responsible person was available, enter your own initials.

Fig. 16--EXAMPLE OF A PARTIALLY FILLED LIST OF STRUCTURES WITH NO LIVING QUARTERS (HOUSING UNITS)

A. Types of segments to be listed

Segments identified as TA or NTA in the tab of the Segment Folder and in the heading of the Segment List are called Area Segments. These are to be listed in accordance with instructions in this part (Part C) of your manual.

1. TA Segments described

TA Segments contain a relatively small number of units. Because of good maps and available boundaries it was possible to devise a segment small enough in size to permit us to take all (interview all) units in the segment.

2. NTA Segments described

NTA Segments contain more households than should be interviewed for any one sample. The lack of available boundaries made it impossible to set up a segment of the proper size to permit all units to be interviewed and since we cannot take all units in the segment we call it a "Non-Take-All" or NTA Segment.

3. Difference between TA and NTA Segments

For both TA and NTA Segments, the original listing is done in advance of interview. Units within special dwelling places are listed in TA Segments but they may or may not be listed in NTA Segments depending on the kind of records maintained by the place.

TA Segments are updated each time the segment is interviewed for CPS, MLS and NHS (see exception in Chapter 10 for CPS and MLS "all-telephone" segments) and during the month specified on the front of the Segment Folder for SORAR. NTA Segments are <u>not</u> updated each time the segment is interviewed for any survey but only during the months specified on the front of the Segment Folder.

B. B Segments are <u>NOT</u> to be listed

In addition to Area Segments, there is another main category of segments called "B Segments". A B Segment consists of a group of addresses (or occasionally a single address) taken from Census records. No listing or updating visit is made to these segments in advance of interview. Procedures for B Segments are contained in Part F of this manual.

A. Meaning and reason for "bringing lists up to date"

By "bringing lists up to date", we mean adding new units to the list and crossing off the lists units which no longer exist (except for mergers — see page C-41). The reason for bringing lists up to date is to give every unit in the segment a chance to be selected for interviewing.

B. When to bring lists up to date

Update lists at the times specified below for the survey on which you are working.

CPS and MLS

(1) Update the lists for TA Segments each month at the time of interviewing and also during the month preceding the fifth month of enumeration.

Exception: TA Segments to be enumerated entirely by telephone during a particular month are not to be updated that month unless it is necessary to make a personal visit to complete one or more interviews. In the latter case, update the segment during your interviewing visit.

(2) Update the lists for NTA Segments ONLY when specifically instructed to do so on the front of the Segment Folder and not every month at the time of interviewing as in TA Segments.

NHS Update the lists for TA Segments, but not for NTA Segments, at the time of interviewing.

SORAR Update the lists for TA Segments ONLY during the month specified on the front of the Segment Folder and not each month at the time of interviewing. Update the lists for NTA Segments only during the months specified on the front of the Segment Folder.

C. Rules to follow in bringing lists up to date

Observe the rules given below in updating lists. Be just as careful in carrying out each step as in the original listing; never assume the original listing is correct - there may be errors, omissions or changes which require modification of the listing sheets.

1. Materials to use

Take with you the Segment Folder containing the original Segment Lists, Special Dwelling Listing Sheets, if any, and Segment Map for the segment.

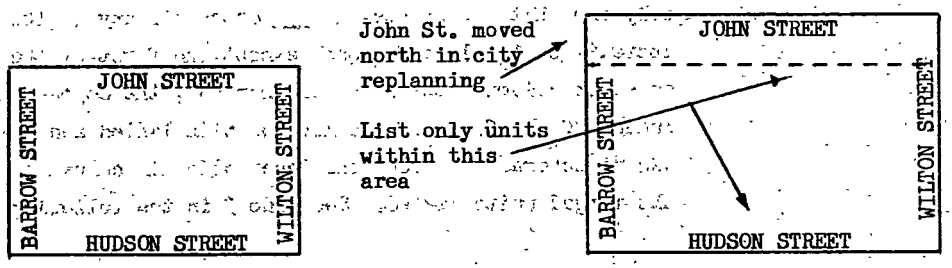
C. Rules to follow in bringing lists up to date—Con.

1. —Con.

Also take with you a supply of blank Segment Lists (Supplemental Lists for NTA Segments) and Special Dwelling Listing Sheets. BE SURE TO USE THE SEGMENT MAP on the left inside cover of the Segment Folder to locate and identify the boundaries of the segment and to locate roads within the segment.

2. Boundaries to use

Always use the original segment boundaries as shown on the map, even though the boundaries are streets or roads which have been altered. See following example:



3. Route of travel

Begin at the place where the original listing started and follow the route of the original listing. Be sure to go in and out of all courts, alleys, and passageways and cover every street and road within the segment.

4. When to inquire

In structures which appear to contain more than one unit but there is little indication from the outside as to the number of units to be listed, inquire to determine how many units there actually are in the structure.

5. Units no longer in existence or listed in error

Cross out all entries from the line number through the serial number column for units which have been listed in error, demolished, and converted to commercial use. Give the reason and date deleted in column 7 of the Segment List. See following example.

6	23rd Road	L or R 1605 Rear	Small unpainted two-story, porch on front, tarpaper roof	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			Dem. 4/64
			NAME: AND:				

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

C. Rules to follow in bringing lists up to date—Con.

5. --Con. If the unit is shown on a reproduced large-scale hand-drawn map or if in a rural area and shown on another type map, draw a large X through the unit on the map like this ☒ ; if located in a multi-unit structure, correct the figure showing the number of units the structure contains thus: 1 ~~2~~ ☐

Do not cross off units which now appear to be uninhabitable.

6. Merged units Where two or more units on the Segment List have been merged so that only one unit now exists, do not cross off any of the merged units listed. Instead, on the line for each except the first of the merged units listed enter in column 7 the notation "Merged", the Segment List sheet and line number of the first of the merged units listed and the date the merger was discovered. Correct the description in column 4, for the first of the merged units listed. See line 3 in the following figure.

C. Rules to follow in bringing lists up to date--Con.

6. --Con.

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF UNIT (4)		SAMPLE DESIG. (5)	SERIAL NUMBER (6)	REASON AND DATE ADDED OR DELETED (7)
1	Carpet Ave.	L or R 3416	1st floor AND Basement Added in updating to correct description of merger. NAME: AND:	☐FARM BLDGS. ☐STORE ☐GAR. ☐OTHER (Specify)			
2		L or R 3416	2nd floor NAME: AND:	☐FARM BLDGS. ☐STORE ☐GAR. ☐OTHER (Specify)			
3		L or R 3416	Basement Apt. NAME: AND:	☐FARM BLDGS ☐STORE ☐GAR. ☐OTHER (Specify)			Merged with unit on S/1, L/1 4/64

If the structure is shown on a reproduced large-scale hand-drawn map or if in a rural area and shown on another type map, correct the figure which shows the number of units the structure contains.

If you are updating an NTA Segment and find that two or more units which were found to be merged during a previous updating are now unmerged, do not add any of the present unmerged units at the end of the Supplemental List. Instead, consider the lines on which appears the first of the previously merged units as representing all units.

7. Units newly constructed, converted to residential use or omitted in error

Units resulting from new construction or conversions and units omitted in error in the previous listing are to be entered on the Segment List as instructed below. For treatment of such units in special dwelling places see Chapter C-14. Be sure to look for and add any housing units located in newly constructed commercial establishments.

If the segment is outlined on a reproduced hand-drawn map or if in a rural area and outlined on another type map, the location of each new unit and special dwelling place should be shown on the map by entering the appropriate symbol.

a. Change in structures with no living quarters

If a structure with no living quarters (indicated by a checked box on the Segment List) is converted into a housing unit, draw a line through the box (see example on page C-48, line 5).

b. Where to enter new units

The lists on which new units are to be entered are different for TA and NTA Segments as explained below.

C. Rules to follow in bringing lists up to date--Con.

7. --Con.

b. --Con

(1) For TA Segments

For both urban and rural TA Segments, add new units to the end of the last Segment List for the segment, starting on the first line on which there are no entries in columns 2-4. (See Fig. 19 on page C-48)

(2) For NTA Segments

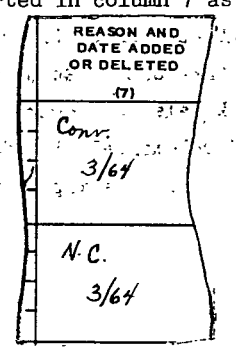
For NTA Segments, enter new units on a separate sheet of the Supplemental Segment List for NTA Segments.

If a Supplemental List was prepared for the segment for a previous sample, add new units to that list. If no Supplemental List has previously been prepared for the segment, prepare one at this time for your entries. If you have no supply of Supplemental Lists, label a Segment List "Supplemental" and use it. Transcribe the appropriate heading information from the regular Segment List. (Leave blank "Direction of travel" if this item appears in the heading of the version of the Supplemental List you are using.) Number the Supplemental List in the Roman numeral series; that is, Sheet I, II, etc.

NOTE: If you have prepared a separate Supplemental List for each road or road section in updating an NTA Segment for previous samples, retain these Supplemental Lists but in updating for the current and succeeding samples do not continue to prepare such separate lists. Instead, for these segments, prepare a new Supplemental List for the current sample and add new units, identified by road numbers in column 2, to it. Number this Supplemental List in numerical sequence following the last Supplemental List prepared for previous updating.

c. Reason and date added

Enter in column 7 of the Segment or Supplemental List the reason and date the unit is added. For example, a unit resulting from a conversion and a newly constructed unit discovered in bringing lists up to date in March 1964 would be reported in column 7 as follows:



d. Order of listing

Enter between those line numbers on the Segment List where the added unit would have appeared if listed in order of travel, the sheet and line number of the Supplemental List (Segment List if in a TA Segment) on which the unit is actually listed. See following examples.

C. Rules to follow in bringing lists up to date--Con.

7.--Con.

d.--Con.

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)
1	Road B	L or (R) RD3 Box 41
~~Shut I, line 1~~		
2		L or (R) RD3 Box 43

FOR NTA SEGMENT

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)
5	Elm Strut	L or R 124
~~Shut 2, line 3~~		
6		L or R 126

FOR TA SEGMENT

Do not change the order of any units previously listed on the Segment List.

8. New Roads

a. How to indicate

Trace in on the map the location of new roads or streets, if any, that have been constructed since original listing. If located in a rural area, assign the new road a letter.

b. Units more accessible from new road

Do not transfer previously listed units to the list for the new road even though some of these units may be more accessible from the new road. The only units to be entered on the list for the new road are those resulting from new construction or conversion and those accessible to the new road but missed in a previous listing.

9. Change in names on mail boxes

In rural areas, check the names on mail boxes against the names on the Segment List. If the name has changed, cross out the old name and enter the new name above it. If the complete name is given on the mail box but not on the Segment List, enter the complete name on the Segment List. If a name is entered on the Segment List but is not shown on a mail box, consider the name on the Segment List to be correct without inquiring about it since the previous lister apparently inquired.

10. Changes in structures previously checked on Segment List

If a box has been checked for garage, store, etc., on the Segment List and you find that such a structure now contains living quarters, cross out the check mark (also the entry after "Other specify", if any) and add the unit to the Supplemental List for NTA Segments or to the Segment List for TA Segments (and to the map if the segment is outlined on reproduced

C. Rules to follow in bringing lists up to date--Con.

10. Con. large-scale hand-drawn map or, if in a rural area, is outlined on another type map). If you find that there is a structure with no living quarters on the property on which a residential unit has been listed but no box has been checked for the structure, enter a check mark in the proper box. If there is more than one residential unit on the same property as the structure with no living quarters, check the appropriate box on the line for only one of the units.

11. List of Structures With No Living Quarters. Do not update the "List of Structures With No Living Quarters".

12. Special Dwelling Places. See Chapter C-14 for instructions on how to handle special dwelling places in bringing lists up to date.

13. Places which must be identified as transient or nontransient. The following instructions apply only to the updating which is done before the time an NTA Segment is interviewed for a new sample (and, for CPS and MLS, to the updating which is done before the return of a TA or NTA Segment for the second period of enumeration). They do not apply to the updating of TA Segments during interview week.

If there is listed on the Segment List which you are to update, a hotel, motel, Y, or tourist camp or court, you must determine at the time of updating (see exception in last sentence of above paragraph) whether the place is still nontransient or whether it has become transient (or vice versa). Enter a footnote symbol in column 4 in front of the first of the series of listed units in the place and indicate either in the Remarks space at the bottom of the Segment List or on the back of the form the present status of the place ("T" for Transient or "NT" for Nontransient) for the new sample (and for CPS and MLS, the status for the second period of enumeration). Also enter the sheet number and the lines on which the units are listed, the designation of the sample you are updating and the date. For example, your entry on the back of a Segment List for CPS might be as follows: "1/ T-- Sheet 1, lines 2-10, A17, 4/21/64"; for MLS "1/ T-- Sheet 1, lines 5-10, C2, 4/22/65"; or for NHS "1/ T-- Sheet 1, lines 3-8, B29, 4/24/64". If, in bringing lists up to date for NTA Segments, some units in the place have been entered on the Supplemental Lists, be sure to enter a footnote on the back of each sheet on which units in the place are listed.

C. Rules to follow in bringing lists up to date--Con.

13. Con. Retain on the Segment List all such places found to be transient. Do <u>not</u> transfer them to Special Dwelling Listing Sheets merely because they are no longer nontransient.

D. Your name and the date At the bottom of page 3 of the Segment Folder, below the List of Structures With No Living Quarters, enter your initials and the date (month and year) the list was updated. The following illustration shows how these entries should be made for a TA Segment in CPS or MLS which has been in sample for four months:

BROUGHT UP TO DATE BY (Initials)	RC	DJ	JJ	JJ				
MONTH AND YEAR	4/64	5/64	6/64	7/64				

Fig. 17 EXCERPT OF PAGE 3 OF SEGMENT FOLDER

E. Examples of Segments brought up to date

Examples of TA and NTA Segments being brought up to date are given in Figs. 18 - 22. Assume that Segment Folders for these two segments were stamped "Do not Determine year built--(NPA)".

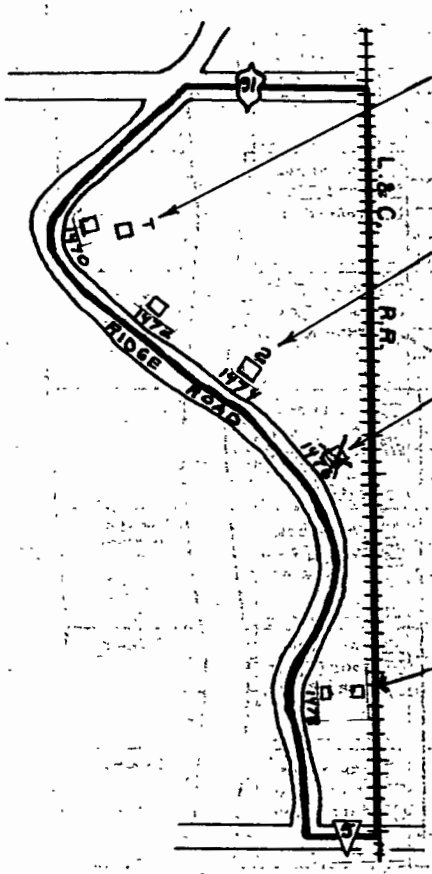


Fig. 18. TA Segment being Updated at Time of Interview. (This segment is outlined on reproduced large-scale hand-drawn map; therefore map as well as Segment List is updated.) See Segment List in Fig. 19.

Note: For CPS, MLS and NHS, update TA Segments each time the segment is assigned for interviewing. For SORAR, do <u>not</u> update TA Segments each month of interview but only when instructed to do so on the front of the Segment Folder.

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF UNIT (4)		REASON AND DATE ADDED OR DELETED (7)
1	Ridge Road	L or R 1470	NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☑ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)	
Sheet 1 line 6					
2		L or R 1472	NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)	
3		L or R 1474	First floor NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)	
Sheet 1, line 7					
4		L or R 1476	NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)	Dem. 4/64
5		L or R 1478	NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☑ OTHER (Specify) Shack	
Sheet 1, line 8					
6		L or R 1470 Rear	Aluminum Trailer NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)	Trailer moved in 4/64
7		L or R 1474	Second floor NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)	Conv. 4/64
8		L or R 1478 Rear	Tarpaper shack NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)	Conv. 4/64

Fig. 19. SEGMENT LIST FOR TA SEGMENT SHOWN IN FIG. 18 AFTER LIST IS UPDATED

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

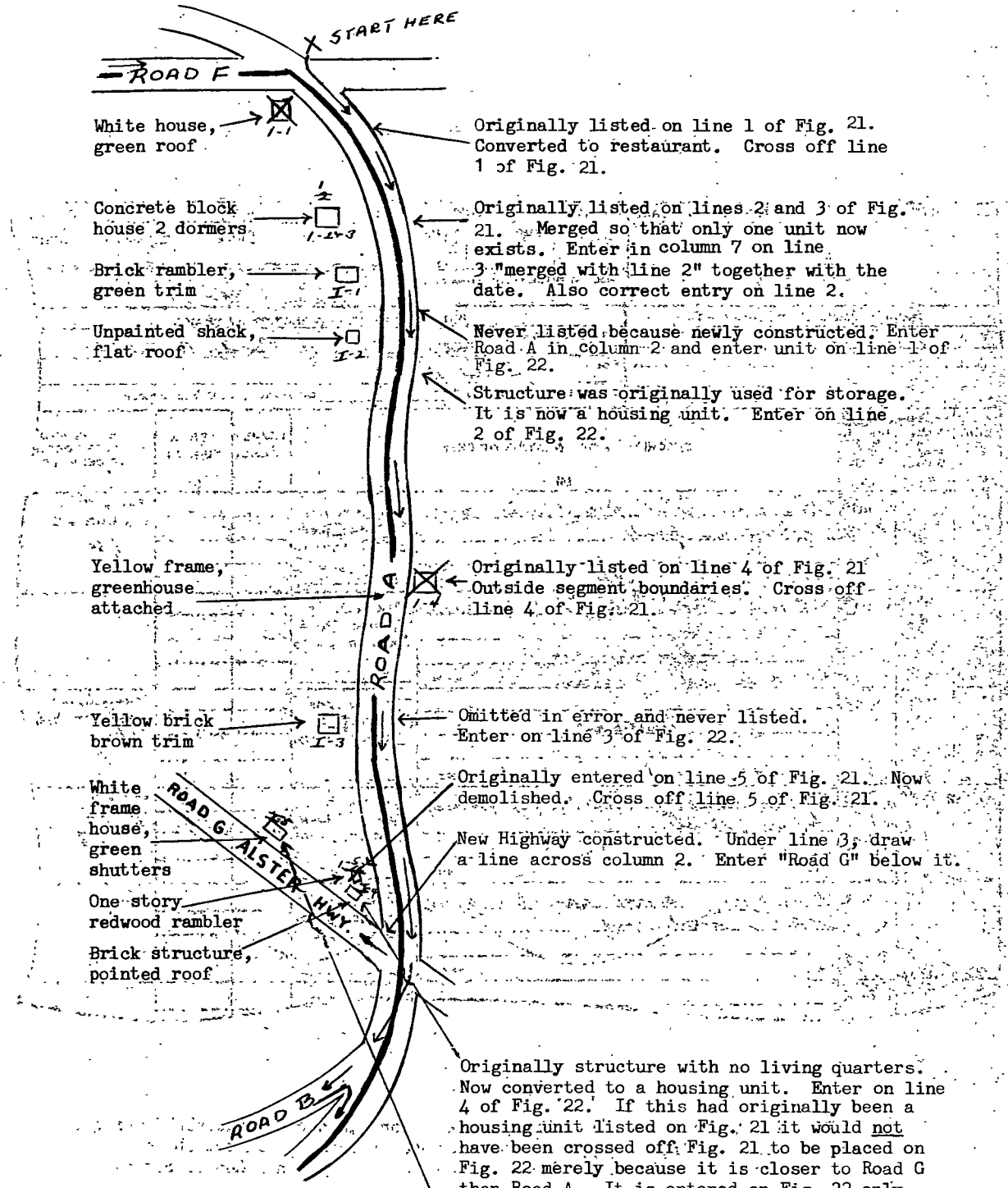


Fig. 20. PORTION OF A RURAL NTA SEGMENT BEING UPDATED

FORM 11-171 (9-5-63) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

SEGMENT LIST

PSU CODE	SEGMENT NUMBER	SEGMENT TYPE	SURVEY	SHEET OF SHEETS
999	1251	☐ TA ☑ NTA	☐ CPS ☑ NHS ☐ QHS ☐	1 OF 1

POST OFFICE (City, Town or Village): Huron Village

URBAN SEGMENTS -- BOUNDARIES	RURAL SEGMENTS -- DIRECTION OF TRAVEL
N.	PROCEEDING FROM: Intersection of Roads A and F
E.	TO: Road B
S.	TRAVELING (N, E, S, or W) S ON ROAD (See Column 2 below)
W.	

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF UNIT (4)		SAMPLE DESIG. (5)	SERIAL NUMBER (6)	REASON AND DATE ADDED OR DELETED (7)
✓ 1	Road A	L or (R) R.D 3 Box 21	One story white house, green roof, glassed in porch NAME: Charles White AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			Conv. to restaurant 4/64
✓ 2		L or (R)	Concrete block house, two dormers, anchor fence ~~downtown~~ NAME: Richard Carlson AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			
3		L or (R)	" siding NAME: George Diane AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			merged with unit on S/1, L/2 4/64
Shet I, line 1, Shet I, line 2 4 Shet I, line 3		L or R new telephone pole 4/18	~~Yellow frame, white trim, green house attached~~ NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			outside segment boundary 4/64
5 Shet I, line 4 Shet I, line 5		L or (R) RD 3 Box 28	One story, redwood ranch, green trim, inverted roof NAME: AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			demo. 4/64
		L or R		☐ FARM BLDGS.			

Fig. 21

NOTE: The Segment List is filled the same for all current household surveys except for checking the appropriate box under "Survey". In the above illustration the NHS box has been checked for the National Health Survey.

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

FORM 11-172 (9-5-63) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

SUPPLEMENTAL SEGMENT LIST FOR NTA SEGMENTS

PSU CODE	SEGMENT NUMBER	SEGMENT TYPE	SURVEY	SHEET
999	1251	☐ TA ☑ NTA	☐ CPS ☑ NHS ☐ QHS ☐	I OF I SHEETS

POST OFFICE (City, Town or Village)

URBAN SEGMENTS -- BOUNDARIES	RURAL SEGMENTS -- DIRECTION OF TRAVEL
N.	PROCEEDING FROM:
E.	TO:
S.	TRAVELING (N, E, S, or W) _____ ON ROAD (See Column 2 below)
W.	

LINE NO. (1)	STREET NAME OR ROAD DESIG. (2)	HOUSE NO. OR SIDE OF ROAD (3)	DESCRIPTION OR LOCATION OF UNIT (4)		SAMPLE DESIG. (5)	SERIAL NUMBER (6)	REASON AND DATE ADDED OR DELETED (7)
1	Road A	L or (R) RD 5 Box 45	Brick cobbler, green trim; twin maples in front yard. NAME: A. R. Hurley AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			New Construction 4/64
2		L or (R) RD 5	Unpainted shack, flat roof; crude at left of entrance (formerly used for storage) NAME: B. B. Acorn AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			Cond. to h.u. 4/64
3		L or (R) RD 3 Box 26	One story yellow brick, brown trim, chert NAME: G. M. Michael AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			omitted in error 4/64
4	Road B	L or (R)	Brick structure with painted corr. (formerly used as warehouse) NAME: H. L. Fisher AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			Cond. to h.u. 4/64
5		L or (R)	Two-story white frame house; side porch; green shuttered; stone chimney NAME: John Bluseman AND:	☐ FARM BLDGS. ☐ STORE ☐ GAR. ☐ OTHER (Specify)			New Construction 4/64
		L or R		☐ FARM BLDGS.			

Fig. 22

NOTE: The above is an excerpt of a Supplemental Segment List. It is possible that a Supplemental List may have been prepared for a segment by labeling a Segment List "Supplemental". Both types of lists are to be treated in the same way.

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

NOTE: Chapter 10 ends on page C-51.

A. Special rules to be applied in listing

In most of your listing you will merely be recording house and apartment numbers or describing the location of houses in rural areas.

Occasionally, however, you may find unusual situations which must be handled somewhat differently according to special rules we have established. These rules are contained in this chapter. The situations covered are listed in alphabetical order.

1. Boarding houses, rooming houses and combination boarding and rooming houses

Insofar as listing is concerned, treat places which appear to be boarding houses, rooming houses and combination boarding and rooming houses alike and list according to the following procedures:

a. Determine the number of rooms occupied, or intended for occupancy, by boarders or roomers (or both).

b. If there are 4 or fewer rooms for boarders or roomers (or a combination of both), combine these rooms with the landlord's quarters (or with each other if the landlord does not live in the structure) and list on one line of the Segment List.

c. If there are 5 or more rooms for boarders or roomers (or a combination of both), list the landlord's quarters on a separate line and list the rooms for rent one to a line of the Segment List.

Indicate in column 3 opposite the first of the listed units the type of place (i.e., "Bd. house", "Rm. house", etc.).

The housing unit definition will be applied to the sample units in these places at the time of interview as instructed in Part D of the manual.

2. Boats

Each houseboat, yacht, cabin cruiser, etc. occupied or intended for occupancy as separate living quarters on the site where it is located, and anchored on a river, stream, etc., within a sample segment is to be listed on a separate line of the Segment List. Do not list boats which are used only for vacations or extra sleeping space.

3. Farm buildings

The rules for listing farm buildings depend on whether the building is intended for living quarters and by whom it is to be occupied.

A. Special rules to be applied in listing--Con.

3.--Con.

a. Farm buildings used as living quarters

List each of the following farm structures on a separate line of the Segment List:

the farmhouse

each cabin for a migratory worker's family (unless such cabins are part of a migratory workers' camp)

each tenant house

each other structure (except bunkhouses with quarters for 5 or more hired hands) occupied or intended for occupancy as living quarters.

b. Bunkhouses

Bunkhouses with quarters for 5 or more hired hands are special dwelling places. List such places as instructed in Chapter C-14. (Some bunkhouses are for migratory workers and must be considered as migratory workers' camps -- see below.)

c. Camp for migratory workers'

A camp for migratory workers is a special dwelling place. List the camp according to instructions in Chapter C-14.

4. Guest Quarters

a. Listing by observation

In most cases a structure for guests which is separate from the main house would probably be listed by observation as a separate housing unit. If, however, you happen to ask about such a structure at the time of listing because it appears to contain more than one housing unit, or because you are inquiring at the main house for some other reason, apply the following rule in determining whether the structure is a housing unit.

b. Rule to follow if inquiring

Quarters occupied or intended for occupancy by guests of a private home (and which if vacant are not for rent), should be combined with and considered as part of the main house. Such a combination is one housing unit. The guest house is not "separate living quarters occupied by a group of persons living or eating together" because the guests are considered a part of the group of people they are visiting.

c. How to record on Segment List

Record the main house and the guests' quarters on a single line in column 4 of the Segment List, for example:

(4)
Main house and guest house
as one
NAME: AND:

A. Special rules to be applied in listing--Con.

5. Hotels, Motels, Y's, and Tourist Camps or Courts and groups of vacation cabins

The procedure for listing the following types of places depends on whether they are nontransient or transient type:

Hotels

Motels

Y's

Tourist camps or courts (See also paragraph 9.)

Groups of 5 or more vacation cabins operated under a single management (that is, those which are identifiable by a sign on the property). (See also paragraph 14.)

Determine whether the place is nontransient or transient by applying the following rules:

a. If the place is one where 75 percent or more of the rooms, suites or cabins are occupied or intended for occupancy by nontransient (permanent) guests, it is nontransient.

b. If the place is one where more than 25 percent of the rooms, suites, or cabins are occupied or intended for occupancy by transient guests, it is transient.

Permanent guests usually stay a month or more at reduced monthly rates. Transient guests usually stay less than a month and pay at daily rates.

Procedure for listing

In the nontransient-type places indicated above, each room, suite of rooms or cabin should be listed on a separate line of the Segment List.

Transient-type hotels, motels, etc. are special dwelling places and are to be listed in accordance with instructions in Chapter C-14.

6. Non-housing unit living quarters in structures other than boarding or rooming houses and special dwelling places

In structures other than boarding or rooming houses and special dwelling places, combine quarters which do not meet the housing unit definition with the landlord's quarters (or with each other if the landlord does not live in the structure) and list on one line of the Segment List PROVIDING there are 4 or fewer such quarters. If there are 5 or more such quarters list each of the quarters on a separate line.

For example, suppose that you are inquiring about the number of housing units in a large rambling structure which appears to contain more than one unit. The respondent tells you that she and her husband occupy the entire structure except for a studio-bedroom and private bath on the

A. Special rules to be applied in listing--Con.

6.--Con. third floor which they have rented out. She doesn't know very much about the occupants on the third floor since they rarely stop by except to pay the rent. The studio-bedroom is reached by a stairway which is used by the respondent to get from one part of her quarters to another. There is no cooking equipment on the third floor. The quarters rented out are not a housing unit and should be combined with the landlord's quarters. (Although the occupants of the studio bedroom do not live or eat with the respondent's family their quarters are not a housing unit because they have neither direct access nor separate cooking equipment.)

7. Servants' quarters

a. Listing by observation — In most cases a structure for servants which is separate from the main house would probably be listed by observation as a separate housing unit. If, however, you happen to ask about such a structure at the time of listing because it appears to contain more than one housing unit, or because you are inquiring at the main house for some other reason, apply the following rules in determining whether the structure is a housing unit. (The following rules also apply to servants' quarters located within the main house.)

b. Rules to follow if inquiring

(1) Quarters for servants — Living quarters, occupied or intended for occupancy by servants, are to be considered as a separate housing unit <u>only</u> if they have separate cooking equipment which the servants use for the regular preparation of meals. If the quarters do not have separate cooking equipment which the servants use for the regular preparation of meals, combine them with the employer's quarters and list on one line of the Segment List, for example

(4)
Main house and servant's quarters over garage
NAME: AND:

(2) Quarters for farm and ranch hands — Living quarters for farm or ranch hands are <u>not</u> to be considered as servants' quarters. If they have accommodations for <u>less than 5 hands</u>, the quarters are either to be listed separately or combined with the employer's quarters depending upon whether the farm or ranch hands' quarters meet the housing unit definition. If the quarters have accommodations for <u>5 or more</u> farm or ranch hands, they constitute a special dwelling place (see page C-89, paragraph 9).

A. Special rules to be applied in listing--Con.

8. Tents — In listing tents, tent sites, and tent camps, follow the procedure for listing trailers, trailer sites, and trailer camps given in paragraph 10 below.

9. Tourist cabins — The procedure for listing tourist cabins depends on whether they are in a tourist camp. The latter is defined as a group of 5 or more tourist cabins operated under a single management. Detailed instructions for listing tourist cabins and units in other permanent residential structures in tourist camps are given in Table C on page C-64.

10. Trailers — The procedure for listing trailers depends on whether the trailer is located in a trailer camp (or migratory workers' camp).

a. Trailer camp defined — A trailer camp consists of

(1) 5 or more trailer sites or

(2) a group of trailers parked on the same lot provided that

(a) there are present at the time of listing five or more trailers which are occupied or for rent as separate living quarters on the site where the trailers are located;

or

(b) you would expect that at some time during the year five or more such trailers will be present on the parking grounds.

b. Trailers for migratory workers — A group of trailers with quarters for 5 or more migratory workers is to be considered as a migratory workers' camp and treated as a special dwelling place. (Count a trailer occupied or intended for occupancy by a migrant family as one unit regardless of the number of workers in the family.)

c. How to list trailer camps — Trailers and trailer sites in trailer camps are not to be listed on the Segment List because these camps are special dwelling places. Prepare a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for each trailer camp as instructed in Chapter C-14. 1/

1/ If located in a TA Segment, or if in an NTA Segment and no register from which to sample, list units within camp. If in an NTA Segment and register is available prepare heading of Special Dwelling Listing Sheet but do not list units within camp.

A. Special rules to be applied in listing -Con.

10.—Con.

c.—Con.

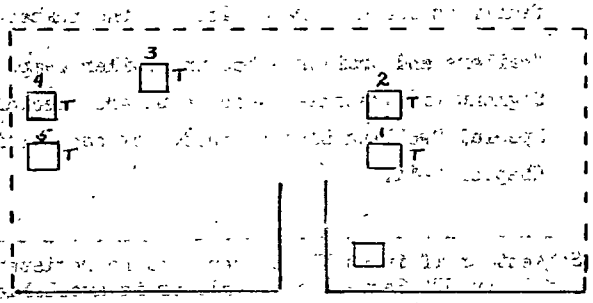
(1) List sites if possible

If the trailer camp is laid out in sites which are identified by electric meter number, parking lot number or in some other manner, list on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet each site even though no trailer is located on it at the time. Also list sites which are under construction. If you are making a complete listing of the camp, enter the identification of the site on the listing sheet as follows:

LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)
1	Meter No. 1
2	Meter No. 2
3	Meter No. 3
4	Meter No. 4

(2) How to list if sites not identified

If sites are not identified, prepare a sketch of the camp, indicating the location of each trailer site by the symbol ☐ T. Also indicate the location of any permanent structures in the camp by the symbol ☐. Assign a number to each trailer site on the map and describe it by this number on the listing sheet. Attach the sketch to the listing sheet for the camp so that you can refer to it to locate the unit at the time of interviewing. For example, your sketch might appear as follows:



U.S. 19

A. Special rules to be applied in listing--Con.

10.--Con.
c.--Con.

(3) Permanent residential structures (other than tourist cabins) in trailer camps

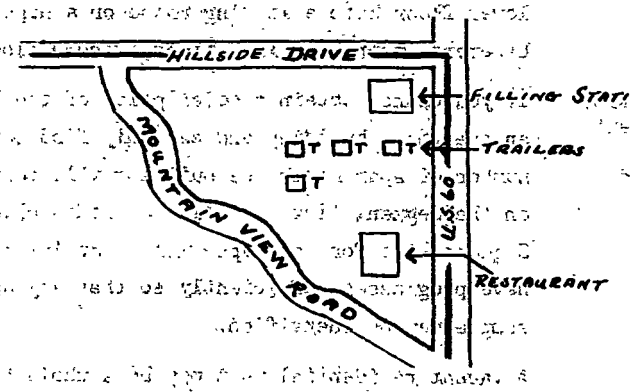
See Table C for procedures to follow for units in permanent residential structures (other than tourist cabins) in trailer camps.

(d) How to list trailers not in camps

If a trailer is not in a trailer camp or migratory worker's camp, list it on a separate line of the Segment List, provided that it is occupied or for rent as separate living quarters on the site where it is now located. Do not list trailers parked in yard beside owner's house and used only for vacations or as extra sleeping space for household members. Vacation trailers left by owners at lakes or recreational areas the year round and used only for vacations or weekends should be listed in the same manner as vacation cabins.

Use of sketches

Where 3 or 4 trailers are grouped together but are not in a camp, you should draw a sketch showing the location of each trailer by the symbol ☐T. Also assign consecutive numbers to the trailers on the map and list them by their number. (See following example.) Such a sketch should be attached to the Segment List on which you have listed the trailers.



11. Trailers and Tourist Cabins (or Motel Units) on same property

Whenever you encounter trailers or trailer sites and tourist cabins (or motel units) located on the same property, refer to Table C on page C-64 for procedures on listing.

A. Special rules to be applied in listing --Con.

12. Unfinished residential structures

List on the Segment List unfinished residential structures on which any construction work is in progress such as excavation, laying the foundation, etc. Also consider the structure under construction if the foundation is laid out and building materials are on the property.

a. Multi-unit structures under construction

In the case of multi-unit structures under construction use a line for each apartment, flat, etc. the structure will contain when completed if the number can be determined at the time of listing. If the number cannot be determined, use the best estimate obtainable. If there is no one available at the building site, try to get the necessary information from neighbors, or some other local source.

b. Apartment houses

Enter the description of the location of units in apartment houses under construction as follows:

(1) When location of apartments is known

Generally, the description or location of each apartment can be determined from the architect's plan for the building. If you are able to determine what the numbering scheme will be, list the apartments in numerical (or alphabetical) order. If basement units in the structure are not included in the numbering or lettering system (for example a basement apartment for a janitor), list the basement unit before the numbered on lettered apartments on the upper floors. If you cannot determine what the numbering scheme will be but know the floor plan, list apartments on a lower floor before listing those on a higher floor. Begin with the basement, then the first floor, second floor, etc.

(2) When location of apartments cannot be determined

If you cannot obtain a description of the location of the units within an apartment building and can only find out the total number or estimated number of apartments the building will contain, leave enough blank lines on the Segment List for all apartments allowing a separate line of the Segment List for each apartment. By interview week, construction may have progressed sufficiently so that any apartments selected for the sample may be identified.

13. Vacant residential units

A vacant residential unit may be a whole house or an apartment or it may be a separate living arrangement in a house containing other residential units. When you are inquiring about living quarters, ask about any quarters which are vacant. People often forget to report them. Some units may be vacant because the structure in which they are located is being altered, to be torn down, etc. Rules to follow in listing such places are given below.

A. Special rules to be applied in listing—Con.

13.—Con.

a. Being converted or merged

If work has progressed far enough to identify the units as they will exist (or if a responsible person can indicate to you the expected living arrangements when completed), list units being converted, or merged, as they will be when alteration is completed. If work has not progressed far enough to identify the changed units and you cannot obtain information regarding the expected alterations, list the units as they were before alteration was begun.

b. Being used for nonresidential purposes

List on the Segment List units being used temporarily for commercial or business purposes. Also list on the Segment List, units being used temporarily for the storage of hay, machinery, business supplies and the like. Do not list as living quarters units permanently converted to nonresidential use EXCEPT those units being used for the storage of excess household furniture.

c. Dilapidated

List each vacant residential unit even though dilapidated if there is even a slight possibility that the unit may be occupied again. (In special dwelling places sampled from a register, count such units.)

d. Unfit for human habitation

Vacant residential structures which are unfit for human habitation and beyond repair are to be entered on the List of Structures With No Living Quarters (inside right cover of Segment Folder) unless they are located on property which contains habitable living quarters. In the latter case, check the box for "Other - specify" on the Segment List and enter "Unfit for human habitation". If there is more than one habitable residential unit on the property in addition to the "unfit for human habitation" unit, check the box for "Other - specify" on the line for only one of the habitable units. Units are to be considered as unfit for human habitation if most of the doors and windows are missing and floors are unsafe.

CAUTION: If windows or doors have been boarded up to keep them from being destroyed, they are not to be considered as missing. In a few rural sections of the country where doors and windows are not used, do not consider them as missing.

e. Being demolished

Do not list on the Segment List or Special Dwelling Listing Sheet units in a structure being demolished. Instead, treat such structures in the same manner as indicated above for "structures unfit for human habitation".

A. Special rules to be applied in listing--Con.

13.--Con.

f. To be demolished or condemned — List on the Segment List or Special Dwelling Listing Sheet living quarters in structures to be demolished or condemned as they exist at the time of listing unless the structures are "unfit for human habitation". In the latter event, follow the rules in paragraph 13d above.

g. Abandoned — List on the Segment List or Special Dwelling Listing Sheet living quarters in abandoned structures unless the structures are unfit for human habitation. In the latter case, follow the instructions in paragraph 13d above.

14. Vacation cabins — The procedure for listing a vacation cabin in a resort area depends on whether the cabin is one of a "group of 5 or more vacation cabins operated under a single management".

A vacation cabin is to be considered as one of a "group of 5 or more vacation cabins operated under a single management" if it is one of 5 or more such cabins located next to each other and belonging to the same owner but rented or intended for rental to others and the group of cabins is identifiable by a sign on the property on which located.

For example, if in a resort or recreational area you observe a sign advertising "Hodges Cabins" on property on which are located 5 or more cabins either rented or for rent, you would consider the cabins to be a "group of 5 or more vacation cabins operated under a single management".

Such vacation cabins are to be listed according to the rules given in paragraph 9 above for listing tourist cabins in tourist camps.

List on a separate line of the Segment List, each vacation cabin which is not one of a "group of 5 or more vacation cabins operated under a single management".

B. Situations not covered — In listing you may find unusual types of living quarters which are not covered by the special rules given above and which may present a listing problem. In such a case describe the quarters and their location on an INTER-COMM and send it to your Supervisor.

TABLE C

(See pages C-64 and C-65.)

TABLE C. SUMMARY OF LISTING PROCEDURES FOR TRAILERS AND TRAILER SITES, TOURIST CABINS, MOTEL UNITS, AND OTHER PERMANENT STRUCTURES LOCATED ON SAME PROPERTY

CASE NO.	KINDS AND NUMBER OF LIVING QUARTERS ON PROPERTY			PROCEDURE	CASE NO.	LIST TO USE	
	TRAILERS OR IDENTIFIABLE SITES	TOURIST CABINS 5/ AND MOTEL UNITS	PERMANENT RESIDENTIAL STRUCTURES OTHER THAN TOURIST CABINS AND MOTEL UNITS			SEGMENT LIST	SPECIAL DWELLING LISTING SHEET
1.	0 - 4	0 - 4	None or 1 or more	1. List as regular unit 1/ each trailer or identifiable site, each tourist cabin and motel unit and each unit in other permanent residential structure, if any.	1.	X	
2.	0 - 4	5 or more	None or 1 or more	2. Apply transiency 2/ rule to the group of tourist cabins and/or motel units:			
				a. if transient, consider all units (trailers or identifiable sites, tourist cabins and motel units, and units in other permanent residential structures) as one special dwelling place. If no trailers or sites, classify as "tourist camp" 3/ or "motel" whichever appropriate; if both trailers or sites and tourist cabins and motel units, classify as "combination trailer-tourist camp" or "combination motel-trailer camp".	2a.		X
				b. if nontransient, consider as regular units all units (trailers or identifiable sites, tourist cabins and motel units, and units in other permanent residential structures).	2b.	X	
3.	5 or more	0 - 4	None or 1 or more	3. Consider all units (trailers or identifiable sites, tourist cabins and motel units and units in other permanent residential structures) as one special dwelling place. If no tourist cabins, classify as a trailer camp 4/; if both trailers or sites and tourist cabins and/or motel units, classify as "combination tourist-trailer camp" or "combination motel-trailer camp" whichever appropriate.	3.		X

CPS-230
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

4.	5 or more	5 or more	None or 1 or more	4. Apply transiency rules 2/ to group of tourist cabins and/or motel units:			
				a. if transient, combine the tourist cabins and motel units with the trailers or identifiable sites and with units in permanent residential structures and consider as a combination tourist-trailer camp (or motel-trailer camp) and one special dwelling place.	4a.		X
				b. if nontransient, (1) treat each tourist cabin and motel unit and unit in other permanent residential structures as a regular unit and list on Segment List;	4b(1)	X	
				(2) treat trailers and identifiable trailer sites as a trailer camp and special dwelling place.	4b(2)		X

1/ A regular unit is a unit not in a special dwelling place and which is to be listed, on the Segment List.

2/ See page C-55 for transiency rule.

3/ See page C-57 for definition of tourist camp.

4/ See page C-57 for definition of trailer camp.

5/ Treat Vacation Cabins (as defined on page C-62) like tourist cabins.

Area Segments containing more than 100 housing units are to be treated as follows:

A. Area Segments to be newly listed

If you are assigned an Area Segment to be newly listed and can see before you start listing that the segment contains more than 100 housing units, proceed as follows:

1. If Segment in Non-Permit Area

If the segment is in a Non-Permit Area ("Do not Determine Year Built" is stamped on front of the Segment Folder) do not list the segment. Instead, subdivide the segment into smaller parts as specified in paragraph C below.

2. If Segment in Permit Area

If the segment is in a Permit Area (the letters "PA" included in the "year built" stamp on front of the Segment Folder) list the segment and inquire about "year built" for each unit you list as instructed in Sections D-F of Chapter 16 of Part C.

If, after listing and inquiring about "year built", you find that the segment contains more than 100 housing units built before April 1, 1960, subdivide the segment into smaller parts as specified in paragraph C below. Otherwise, do not subdivide the Segment.

B. Segments to be brought up to date

If you are assigned a segment to be brought up to date, and you find that it has increased in size to over 100 housing units, do not subdivide the segment. Instead, bring the lists up to date. Inquire about "year built" for each added unit if the segment is in a Permit Area.

C. Procedure for Area Segments to be subdivided before listing

Proceed as follows when your assignment is to newly list an Area Segment in a folder stamped "DO NOT Determine Year Built—(NPA)" and you find upon your arrival at the segment that it obviously contains more than 100 housing units.

1. Obtain map or prepare sketch

Try to obtain a map of the area covered by the segment. If located in a housing development try to get a map from the contractor; otherwise consult local officials.

2. If map covers entire segment

If you can obtain a map showing the entire segment, use this map for subdividing the segment in accordance with paragraphs C4 and C5 on pages C-67 and C-68.

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

3. If no map or if map covers only part of segment

If no map is available or if you can get a map showing only part of the segment, draw a sketch of the segment using black pencil. If possible, draw the sketch on the inside of a manila folder. Indicate on the sketch all potential boundaries that might be used to subdivide the segment. Potential boundaries to be drawn on the sketch include all natural boundaries such as streets, roads, rivers, creeks, etc. In heavily built-up areas, draw in property lines. Make sure to indicate on the sketch what kind of boundaries they are. Show enough detail on your sketch to make it easily comparable to the Segment Map. Be sure that you have not left out any part of the segment in perparing your sketch.

If you were able to obtain a map of only part of the segment, be careful to enter on the sketch the streets bounding the part of the segment covered by the map. Enter "See Map" on the sketch in a footnote to the area covered by the map.

4. Indicate location and house number of housing unit

Indicate on the map or sketch by an open square □ the location of each housing unit in the segment. Also indicate by the symbol □ T trailers occupied or intended for occupancy as separate living quarters on the site where located. If there is a house number for a structure, <u>be sure</u> to enter this number on the map above the square showing the location of the structure. Do <u>not</u> enter the house number between the parallel lines which denote the street on which the structure is located.

Structures which are close together

If you have a row of structures (containing living quarters) too close together to be shown separately, make an enlargement to show the location of <u>each</u> structure. Number the enlargement and cross-reference it on the sketch. For each structure which can be shown separately on the map but which contains more than one housing unit, indicate the location of the structure by an open square and enter above it and as close to it as possible, the number of housing units the structure contains; for example

4
□

If a multi-unit structure has a house number enter the house number above the figure showing the number of housing units; for example, if the house number of a 4-unit structure were 1710 you would enter 1710

4
□

Structures with more than 6 units

For each multi-unit structure containing <u>more than six</u> housing units indicate the location of the structure and the number of units it contains as instructed above.

In addition, on a separate sheet of paper list on consecutive lines each major subdivision within the structure (such as basement, first floor, etc.) and the total number of units in the particular part of the structure.

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

C. Procedure for Area Segments to be subdivided before listing —Con.

5. Indicate location of special dwelling place

Show the location of each special dwelling place by the symbol △S. Enter in a footnote on the sketch the name and type of the special dwelling place and the total number of units it contains (unclassified or staff and nonstaff). Use U to indicate unclassified, S for staff, and N for nonstaff. (See Chapter 14 for definitions of unclassified, staff and nonstaff.)

6. Where and when to mail material

Mail the materials on which you did your subdividing (map, sketch and enlargements) to your supervisor not later than the following day.

7. Example of sketch

Example: See Fig. 23.

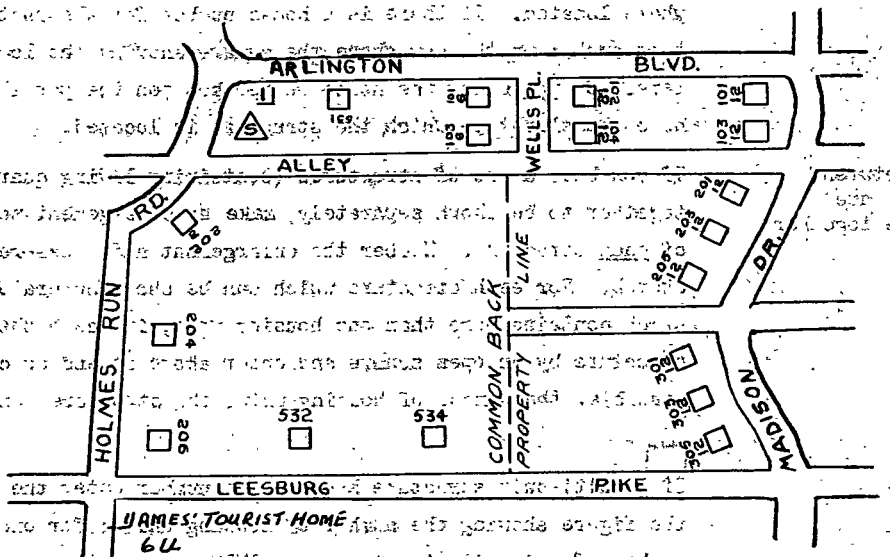


Fig. 23

A. List units according to information obtained from local sources

If an Area Segment to be newly listed is inaccessible because of impassable roads, make every effort to determine the number of units in the segment and whether or not these units are occupied. To obtain this information, inquire at the office of the county tax assessor, county recorder of deeds, county agricultural agent, forest service, or other local official. Postal officials may also be able to help.

The segment may be one in which "year built" is to be determined at the time of listing (indicated by the "year built" stamp on the front of the Segment Folder). In this case do not try to make any year built determination, but check "NOT MORE" in the "year built" stamp on front of the Folder and inquire about "year built" during interview.

List (in the order in which you will canvass the segment) the units on the Segment List using the information obtained from local sources. Enter in the top margin of the Segment List the date and source of information and in column 7 the notation "occ" (if occupied) or "unocc" (if unoccupied). Report the situation on an Inter-Comm.

B. Procedure at time of interview if segment accessible

If the Area Segment is accessible at the time the segment is assigned for interviewing, proceed as follows:

1. Verify the listing and enter in column 4 any additional information which will help describe the unit more adequately.

2. Delete any units which are listed in error. Enter the reason for the deletion in column 7 of the Segment List. For NHS, return questionnaires for the deleted units as Type C Noninterviews marked "In sample by mistake" and explain the circumstances in the space "FOOTNOTES AND COMMENTS". Fill the "Other (Specify)" non-interview oval on the CPS and MLS schedules prepared for such units and enter "listed in error" in the space provided.

3. If the segment is TA, enter at the end of the Segment List any units which should have been listed and were not. Interview all units unless the segment is large and has to be subsampled (more than 20 units for NHS, more than 40 for SORAR or more than 30 for CPS and MLS). For subsampling instructions refer to Chapter 2 of Part A for NHS and to Chapter 12 of Part D for CPS and MLS; for SORAR, consult your supervisor.

B. Procedures at time of interview if segment accessible --Con.

3. --Con.

If the segment is NTA, enter any units which should have been listed and were not on a Supplemental Segment List for NTA Segments. Extend the sampling pattern for the segment to the units entered on the Supplemental List. If, as a result of extending the pattern there are more than 20 units to be interviewed in the segment for NHS, more than 40 for SORAR, or more than 30 for CPS and MLS, consult your supervisor.

C. Procedure at time of interview if segment is still inaccessible

If you are still unable to gain access to the segment, return the interview form for each sample unit as noninterview.

If the unit is occupied check, for NHS and SORAR, the "Other" box for Type A noninterview and specify "Occupied - impassable road". For CPS or MLS fill the "OT OCCUP" oval and specify "Impassable road".

If the unit is unoccupied check the box on the NHS questionnaire for "Vacant non-seasonal" or "Vacant-seasonal" as appropriate. For CPS fill the "Vacant-regular" oval and, as appropriate, the "Year round" or "Seasonal" oval. For MLS fill the "Vacant regular" oval. For SORAR, check "vacant". Note that since the Washington Office cannot determine whether a unit is occupied or unoccupied, it is essential that you obtain this information as best you can.

If the unit is for migratory workers, return the schedule as "OT-(Occ or Unocc, whichever is appropriate) -- for Migratory Workers".

CHAPTER 14. HOW TO LIST SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES

A. Introduction

In addition to listing regular living quarters such as houses, apartments and flats, you are also to list special dwelling places such as hotels, hospitals and convents. A list of the different types of special dwelling places is given at the end of this chapter.

B. How special dwelling places are included in the survey

Special dwelling places are included in the survey in the following ways:

1. You may be assigned a TA or NTA Segment with boundaries outlined on a Segment Map and find a special dwelling place within the boundary outlines.

2. You may be assigned a B Segment which contains a special dwelling place. (See Part F of this manual for instructions on these.)

3. You may be assigned a special dwelling place which is not located in a TA, NTA, or B Segment. These are called "large" special dwelling places and for NHS are identified on the tab of the Segment Folder by the notation "Large Sp. D" in the space for "Type of Segment". (Segment Folders are not provided by Washington at the present time for "large" special dwelling places in CPS or MLS - though your office may provide a folder.) No Segment Lists or B Segment Address Lists are provided in folders for "large" special dwelling places.

The area covered by the "large" special dwelling place is outlined on a map, whenever available. When no map is available, the address or description of location of the place is given and, where applicable, an indication that the "large" special dwelling place comprises only a specified part of an armed force installation, a college with resident students, a general hospital, etc.

If a "large" special dwelling place selected for the sample has changed to another type of special dwelling place (or part of a special dwelling place) and

(1) occupies the same area outlined on the map or

(2) has the same address or description as the original "large" special dwelling place, if no map

the new type of place currently occupying the area or address should be considered as the sample large special dwelling place. If other use is presently being made of the land area or structure (if no land area) comprising the large special dwelling place, report the situation on an INTER-COMM.

C. Listing of units within special dwelling places

In some cases you may list units within a special dwelling place; in other cases you may merely record the total number of the kind of unit to be included in the survey and then at the time of interviewing select a sample of these units from records maintained by the place.

1. Special dwelling place units defined

In special dwelling places the units to be listed or sampled are called "special dwelling place units". A special dwelling place unit may be a room or suite of rooms occupied or intended for occupancy as separate living quarters. These quarters may but do not have to be housing units. A special dwelling place unit may also be a bed in a room which has sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons, a trailer or tent or site in a trailer or tent camp and in some cases it may be a person.

2. Kinds of special dwelling place units

For listing and sampling purposes, in some types of special dwelling places we must divide special dwelling place units into two kinds — called "staff units" and "nonstaff units". In other types of special dwelling places it is not necessary to make this distinction and all units are referred to as "unclassified" units. Table D on pages C-73 and C-74 shows the kinds of special dwelling place units each type of special dwelling place contains.

a. Nonstaff units defined

"Nonstaff units" are defined as (1) the persons for whom the special dwelling place is being operated or (2) the units in which these persons live, such as rooms, suites of rooms, or beds in rooms having sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons.

b. Staff units defined

"Staff units" are defined as the houses, apartments, rooms, suites of rooms, or beds in rooms having sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons occupied by <u>resident</u> employees and their families, if any.

Special case: units in nurses' homes

Nurses' homes are to be treated as a special case. According to the above definitions, nurses living in hospitals are resident employees and their quarters would be listed and sampled as "staff units". On the other hand, quarters for nurses would be considered as "unclassified" units in Nurses Homes which are special dwelling places in their own right. To avoid this inconsistency, we are specifying that in <u>nurses' homes</u> all rooms, suites of rooms, etc., whether occupied by nurses or by other persons living in the home are to be regarded as "staff units".

c. Unclassified units defined

"Unclassified units" are the houses, apartments, rooms, etc., occupied or intended for occupancy by <u>all</u> persons in certain types of special dwelling places. (See Table D on pages C-73 and C-74.)

C. Listing of units within special dwelling places--Con.

3. Special rules in some types of places

There are special rules regarding the units to be included in certain types of special dwelling places. For example, in armed force installations and hospitals, only units for civilians are to be included. In transient hotels and in adult or family recreational and religious camps, only units for permanent guests and resident-employees are to be included (unless the quarters for transient guests cannot be separated from the quarters for permanent guests). The special rules are given in column 5 of Table D.

TABLE D. Kinds of Special Dwelling Place Units in Each Type of Special Dwelling Place (An X indicates kind of units) 1/

Type of Special Dwelling Place	Kind of Units the Special Dwelling Place Contains			Special Instructions for Certain Types of Special Dwelling Places
	Non-Staff1/	Staff	Unclassified	Units are houses, apartments, rooms, etc., occupied or intended for occupancy by:
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
Armed force hospitals	X	X		Civilians, including civilian patients. 1/
Armed force installations (excluding armed force hospitals)			X	Civilians, including members of families of military personnel.
Chronic and cancer hospitals	X	X		
Convents			X	
Correctional institutions	X	X		
Facilities for housing students (A trailer camp may be a facility for housing students.)			X	Students and resident employees as well as the families of each, if any.
Facilities for housing workers (A migratory workers' camp may be a trailer or tent camp.)			X	Workers and by resident employees who run the facility
Flophouses			X	
General Hospitals	X	X		
Homes for the aged, infirm or needy	X	X		
Homes for incurables	X	X		
Hospitals and homes providing specialized care	X	X		

1/ Nonstaff units are to be excluded from the current household surveys unless you are instructed otherwise by your Regional Office.

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

TABLE D (cont'd)

Type of Special Dwelling Place	Kind of Units the Special Dwelling Place Contains			Special Instructions for Certain Types of Special Dwelling Places
	Non-Staff 1/	Staff	Unclassified	Units are houses, apartments, rooms, etc., occupied or intended for occupancy by:
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
Mental institutions	X	X		
Missions			X	
Monasteries			X	
Motels, transient type			X	
Nurses' homes		X		All persons. This is a special case in which the units of all persons living in the place are called "Staff units".
Nursing, convalescent, and rest homes	X	X		
Private residential clubs			X	
Recreational and Religious Camps:				
Adult (or family) camps			X	Employees and by guests who have stayed or made arrangements to stay in the camp for 30 days or more
Children's camps		X		Staff personnel and resident employees only; nonstaff units are to be excluded.
Sister's, Brother's or Priests' Residences (or Rectories) for 5 or more persons			X	
Tourist camps or courts and combination tourist-trailer camps, transient-type			X	
Tourist Homes			X	
Trailer and tent camps (In some cases, a trailer camp may be a migratory workers' camp or a facility for housing students; a tent camp may also be a migratory worker's camp.)			X	
Transient hotels (including seasonal--summer or winter--hotels			X	Permanent guests and by resident employees and their families, if any. 2/
T.B. sanatoriums	X	X		
Vacation cabins--groups of 5 or more transient-type vacation cabins operated under a single management			X	
Veterans' facilities (Mental and T.B. hospitals are "Specified Institutions"; general medical and surgical hospitals are "Other Special Dwelling Places".)	X	X		
YMCA's and YWCA's--transient type			X	

1/ See footnote on preceding page.

2/ If the management cannot distinguish between rooms for permanent guests and transient guests, the listing units in the place include the apartments, rooms, suites, etc. occupied or intended for occupancy by all guests and by resident employees. For such hotels, enter in a footnote to the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet "Includes units for transient guests".

D. Procedure for listing Special Dwelling Places

The procedure for listing special dwelling places depends on (1) the kind of segment (TA or NTA) in which the place is located (2) the kind of units in the place (staff and nonstaff or unclassified) and (3) the kind of records maintained by the place.

1. In TA Segments

When you find a special dwelling place in a TA Segment proceed as follows:

a. Determine kind of units in place

Refer to Table D on pages C-73 and C-74 to determine what kind of units the place contains.

(1) Procedure if unclassified units

If the place contains unclassified units:

(a) Fill the heading (except for items a, b and c) of a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place.

(b) List each special dwelling place unit (house, apartment, room, trailer site, etc.) in the place on a separate line of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. (See example in Fig. 24.) (Do not list units in special dwelling places on the Segment List.)

(2) Procedure if staff and nonstaff

If the place contains staff and nonstaff units proceed as follows:

(a) Fill the heading (except items a, b, and c) of a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place. Enter "STAFF" above the title of the form.

(b) List each unit occupied or intended for occupancy by staff or resident employees on a separate line in column 2 of the sheet labeled STAFF.

NOTE: Only when you are specifically instructed to do so by the Regional Office, prepare a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for nonstaff units in the place. Label this sheet NONSTAFF. In listing nonstaff units, proceed in the same manner as instructed above for staff units.

(3) Adapt terms "staff", "nonstaff" and "unclassified to type of place

In talking with the manager of the place, do not use the terms "staff", "nonstaff" and "unclassified". Instead adapt your terminology to the type of place being listed. For example, in a hospital, refer to patients instead of "nonstaff" and to resident doctors, nurses and other resident employees instead of "staff". In transient hotels, refer to rooms, suites, etc. for permanent guests and employees instead of "unclassified".

2. In NTA Segments

When you find a special dwelling place in an NTA Segment, proceed as follows:

a. Determine kind of units in place

Refer to Table D on pages C-73 and C-74 to determine what kind of units the place contains.

SHEET 1 OF 1 SHEETS

FORM P-2255 (9-11-61)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

FORM APPROVED
BUDGET BUREAU NO. 41-R1206.6

SPECIAL DWELLING LISTING SHEET

NOTE: For special dwelling places in TAKE ALL SEGMENTS, skip items a, b, and c and list units in Column (2).

a. REGISTER AVAILABLE?
Yes ☐ If "Yes," complete heading items b and c only.
No ☐ If "No," skip items b and c and list units in Column (2).

b. REGISTER IS RECORD OF:
☐ Living quarters (Rooms, BUS, etc.) ☐ Persons

SAMPLE AREA (PSU)

CODE	NAME
999	

BLOCK OR RURAL SAMPLE AREA (PLACE)

IDEN. CODE	NAME
84	

SEGMENT

SEGMENT NO.	TYPE
24	TA

c. DATE

NUMBER OF UNITS		
NONSTAFF	STAFF	UNCLASSIFIED

NAME OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACE: Bliss Hall

ADDRESS: Perfection University, Halcyon Road, Southeast Metropolis

TYPE: School dormitory

LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	SAMPLE DESIGNATION (3)	SERIAL NUMBER (4)	LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	SAMPLE DESIGNATION (3)	SERIAL NUMBER (4)
1	Suite A			21			
2	B			22			
3	C			23			
4	D			24			
5	E			25			
6	F			26			
7	Room 1			27			
8	2			28			
9	3			29			
10	4			30			
11	5			31			
12	6			32			
13	7			33			
14	8			34			
15				35			
16				36			
17				37			
18				38			
19				39			
20				40			

LISTED BY	CHECKED BY	BROUGHT UP TO DATE BY
EH		
MONTH, YEAR 3/64	MONTH, YEAR	MONTH, YEAR

(Form continued on reverse)

USCOMM-DC 21560 P-61

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

Fig. 24

D. Procedure for Listing Special Dwelling Places--Con.

2.--Con.

b. Determine if "usable register" available

For places containing unclassified units, determine whether a usable register is available from which a sample of all units in the place may be selected.

For places containing staff and nonstaff units, determine whether a usable register is available from which a sample of staff units may be selected. The register of staff units must not contain any nonstaff units.

NOTE: When you are specifically instructed to do so by your supervisor, also determine whether a register is available from which a sample of nonstaff units may be selected. The register of nonstaff units must not contain any staff units.

"Usable register" defined

By "usable register" we mean an up-to-date card index, list, diagram, or sketch of houses, apartments, trailers, rooms, beds, etc., occupied or intended for occupancy by the particular kind of unit to be sampled; that is, by unclassified or by staff (or by nonstaff, when you are instructed to include nonstaff).

When to use register of persons for unclassified or staff units

If for unclassified and staff units it would be extremely difficult to make a complete listing of living quarters such as houses, apartments, rooms, etc. and there is a register of the unclassified or staff persons, consider the register of persons to be a "usable register" and proceed as instructed in paragraph d below. Keep in mind, however, that for unclassified and staff units a register of persons is to be used only as a last resort.

When to use register of persons for nonstaff units

For nonstaff units, a register of persons is as acceptable as a register of living quarters.

c. Procedure if no "usable register"

If there is no usable register for the particular kind of unit:

(1) check "no" in item a on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for unclassified or staff (or nonstaff when you are specifically instructed to include nonstaff) whichever is appropriate.

(2) list each unit (house, apartment, room, bed in rooms with sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons) on a separate line of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. List staff units on the staff sheet (and when you are so instructed nonstaff units on a nonstaff sheet). (See Fig. 25.)

SHEET 1 OF 1 SHEETS

FORM P-2255
(9-11-61)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

FORM APPROVED
BUDGET BUREAU NO. 41-R1206.6

STAFF

SPECIAL DWELLING LISTING SHEET

NOTE: For special dwelling places in TAKE ALL SEGMENTS, skip items a, b, and c and list units in Column (2).

a. REGISTER AVAILABLE?
Yes ☐ If "Yes," complete heading items b and c only.
No ☑ If "No," skip items b and c and list units in Column (2).

b. REGISTER IS RECORD OF:
☐ Living quarters (Rooms, HUS, etc.) ☐ Persons

SAMPLE AREA (PSU)

CODE: 999 NAME:

BLOCK OR RURAL SAMPLE AREA (PLACE)

IDEN. CODE: 42 NAME:

SEGMENT

SEGMENT NO.: 34 TYPE: NTA

C. DATE	NUMBER OF UNITS		
	NONSTAFF	STAFF	UNCLASSIFIED

NAME OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACE: Green Valley Home

ADDRESS: Valleyview Drive and Green River Road, Utopia City

TYPE: Home for Aged

LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	SAMPLE DESIGNATION (3)	SERIAL NO. (4)	LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	SAMPLE DESIGNATION (3)	SERIAL NO. (4)
1	North Bldg, Suite A			21			
2	Suite B			22			
3	South Bldg, Suite A			23			
4	Suite B			24			
5	Center Hall Suite A			25			
6	Cottage 1			26			
7	2			27			
8	3			28			
9				29			
10				30			
11				31			
12				32			
13				33			
14				34			
15				35			
16				36			
17				37			
18				38			
19				39			
20				40			

LISTED BY	CHECKED BY	BROUGHT UP TO DATE BY
E.H.		
MONTH, YEAR 3/64	MONTH, YEAR	MONTH, YEAR

(Form continued on reverse)

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

Fig. 25

SHEET 1 OF 1 SHEETS

FORM P-2255 (9-121-61)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

Non Staff

SPECIAL DWELLING LISTING SHEET

FORM APPROVED
BUDGET BUREAU NO. 41-R1206.6

NOTE: For special dwelling places in TAKE ALL SEGMENTS, skip items a, b, and c and list units in Column (2).

a. REGISTER AVAILABLE?
Yes ☑ If "Yes," complete heading items b and c only.
No ☐ If "No," skip items b and c and list units in Column (2).

b. REGISTER IS RECORD OF:
☑ Living quarters (Rooms, HUS, etc.) ☐ Persons

SAMPLE AREA (PSU)

CODE 999 NAME

BLOCK OR RURAL SAMPLE AREA (PLACE)

IDENT. CODE 42 NAME

SEGMENT

SEGMENT NO. 34 TYPE NTA

C. DATE	NUMBER OF UNITS		
	NONSTAFF	STAFF	UNCLASSIFIED
2/64	105		

NAME OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACE
Green Valley Home

ADDRESS
Valleyview Drive and Green River Road, Utopia City

TYPE
Home for Aged

LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	SAMPLE DESIGNATION (3)	SERIAL NUMBER (4)	LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	SAMPLE DESIGNATION (3)	SERIAL NUMBER (4)
1				21			
2				22			
3				23			
4				24			
5				25			
6							
7							
8							
9				29			
10				30			
11				31			
12				32			
13				33			
14				34			
15				35			
16				36			
17				37			
18				38			
19				39			
20				40			

NOTE: Nonstaff units are to be included in the survey only when you are specifically instructed to do so by your Regional Office.

LISTED BY	CHECKED BY	BROUGHT UP TO DATE BY
LH		
MONTH, YEAR 2/64	MONTH, YEAR	MONTH, YEAR

(Form continued on reverse)

Fig. 26

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

D. Procedure for Listing Special Dwelling Places—Con.

2.—Con.

d. Procedure if "usable register" available

If there is a "usable register" for the particular kind of unit:

(1) Fill items a, b, and c in the heading of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet as follows:

Item a check "yes".

Item b check the box for "Living Quarters" if register is a record of rooms, apartments, houses, etc.; if register is record of persons check box for "Persons".

Item c enter the date and in the appropriate column headed unclassified or staff (or nonstaff when specifically instructed to do so) the total number of the particular kind of unit in the place. This figure should be the same as the number in the register. If a register of living quarters is available, record the total number of houses, apartments, rooms, etc. for the particular kind of unit in the place. If a register of persons must be used, record the total number of the particular kind of persons in the place. (See Fig. 26.)

In places containing staff and nonstaff persons, do not ask for a count of units occupied by nonstaff (or count of nonstaff persons) unless you are specifically instructed to do so by your supervisor.

(2) Do not list any of the kind of units for which a register is available since at the time of interviewing you will select the sample units directly from the register according to sampling instructions to be furnished by your supervisor.

3. In "Large" Special Dwelling Places

In listing "large" special dwelling places, follow the procedure outlined above for special dwelling places in NTA Segments.

E. Procedure for Special Dwelling Places which cross segment boundaries

1. When special dwelling place consists of one building only

If a special dwelling place consists of one building which crosses the segment boundary, fill a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for it only if the main entrance is within the segment boundaries.

E. Procedure for Special Dwelling Places which cross segment boundaries--Con.

2. When more than one building crosses or is outside segment boundary — If the special dwelling place consists of more than one building and some of the buildings cross or are completely outside the segment boundaries, include on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place only those buildings which have main entrances inside the segment boundaries. (In trailer camps, include only those trailers or trailer sites which are inside the segment boundaries.)

3. "Main entrance" defined — The "Main entrance" of a special dwelling place (and of each building in a special dwelling place) is the one considered as such by the management of the place.

F. How to fill Special Dwelling Listing Sheet — Fill the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet as follows:

1. Heading

a. What to copy from Segment Folder — For special dwelling places in TA or NTA Segments, copy the appropriate heading information (codes, segment number and type of segment) from the Segment Folder to the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet.

b. Enter name, address, and type of special dwelling place — Enter the name, address, and type of special dwelling place in the heading. If a special dwelling place consists of more than one building, enter the specific address (street and structure number) or other description of the location of each building of the special dwelling place in the space for address. If necessary, draw (and attach to the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place) a rough sketch showing the location of each of the buildings.

c. Filling items a, b, and c — Items a, b, and c. Only fill items a, b, and c for special dwelling places in NTA Segments and for "large" special dwelling places.

Item a. Check "yes" or "no" to indicate whether the place has a usable register from which to sample.

Item b. Check the box for "Living Quarters" if the register consists of a record of houses, apartments, rooms, etc.; if register is a record of persons, check the box for "Persons". If there is no usable register, leave item b blank.

Item c. Enter the date and number of units -- staff or unclassified (and nonstaff when required) on the first unused line in the space provided.

F. How to fill Special Dwelling Listing Sheet-Con.

2. Column 2

a. When to list units in column 2

Column 2 is to be used to list units within the special dwelling place. A complete listing of units must be made in column 2 when:

(1) the special dwelling place is located in a TA Segment (regardless of whether the place has a register from which to sample) or

(2) the special dwelling place is located in an NTA Segment or is a "large" special dwelling place and has no register from which to sample.

b. Rules to observe in listing units

In listing units on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet, observe the following rules:

(1) Don't skip lines

Do not skip any lines.

(2) Identify units adequately

Be sure that adequate identification such as room number, bed number, etc. is entered in column 2. (See Figs. 24 and 25.)

(3) List each bed in rooms for 5 or more persons

If you are listing rooms which have sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons, be sure to list each bed on a separate line of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet.

(4) How to list "unclassified" units

If you are listing "unclassified" units, list first all units for persons for whom the place is being operated (guests of hotels, etc.). Then, without skipping any lines list units for resident employees and their families.

(5) In listing persons give name and room number

If you are listing persons, enter in column 2 both the name of the person and his room number, bed number (if in a room with sleeping accommodations for 5 or more persons), or some other identification of his quarters. For example:

LINE NO. (1)	NUMBER OR LOCATION OF UNIT (2)	S D
1	John Henry, first floor right front	
2	Jack Jones, first floor right rear	
3	Jim Jackson, first floor left front	
4	Ezra Green, first floor left rear	

CPS-250
NHS-HUS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

F. How to fill Special Dwelling Listing Sheet--Con.

2.--Con.

b.--Con.

(6) List units on consecutive lines — When the units to be listed are located in more than one building of a special dwelling place, they are to be listed on consecutive lines of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. Do not prepare a separate Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for each building. Be sure, however, that each building is identified in the space for address.

3. Your name and the date — At the bottom of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet enter your name in the space for "Listed by" and the date below it.

G. How to bring special dwelling places up to date — Most special dwelling places are to be brought up to date in accordance with paragraphs 1 and 2 below. For certain types of special dwelling places, however, be sure to bring lists up to date in accordance with paragraph 3.

1. Special dwelling places in TA Segments — For special dwelling places located in TA Segments, inquire at the time of interviewing to determine whether the place contains any new units resulting from new construction, conversions, etc. Add these units to the end of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. Cross out any units which no longer exist (except for mergers -- see page C-41). Indicate in a footnote the date and reason for the change.

2. Special dwelling places in NTA Segments and "large" special dwelling places — Special dwelling places in NTA Segments and "large" special dwelling places may have been in previous samples or surveys. If a complete listing of units has been made for any of the kinds of units in the place, you are to bring this list up to date. If a register was previously used, you should find out whether a register is still available for this kind of unit and, if so, proceed as instructed in paragraph 2b(1) below.

a. When a complete listing has been made — When units have previously been listed in column 2 of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet, bring this listing up to date by adding new units to the end of the list and crossing out units which no longer exist (except for mergers--see page C-41). Enter the date and reason for the change using a footnote if necessary.

b. When a register was used — If a register was previously used and:

(1) is still available, enter on the first unused line in item c of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet the date and the number of the particular kind of unit the place now contains.

(2) is no longer available or usable, make a complete listing of all of the particular kinds of units in the special dwelling place following the procedure on page C-77, paragraph 2c.

G. How to bring Special Dwelling Places up to date--Con.

3. Special instructions for bringing up to date hotels, motels, Y's, tourist camps or courts or combination tourist-trailer camps

If a hotel, motel, Y, tourist camp or court, or combination tourist-trailer camp listed on the Segment List is now a transient-type, do not transfer the place to the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. Similarly if one of these types of places was originally transient and listed on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet but is now a nontransient type, do not transfer the place to the Segment List. For such places originally listed on the Segment List add any new units to the end of the Supplemental List (or Segment List if in a TA Segment). If such a place was originally completely listed on a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet, add new units to the end of that list. Cross out units which no longer exist (except mergers) on the appropriate form.

If the place is now nontransient but was originally listed as transient and a register was previously used (and is still available) enter on the first unused line in item c of Special Dwelling Listing Sheet the date and the number of unclassified units the place now contains.

H. New special dwelling places

If in bringing up to date a TA or NTA Segment, you come across any special dwelling place for which you have not been given a filled Special Dwelling Listing Sheet, prepare one from your supply of blank Special Dwelling Listing Sheets for the place. If it is located in a segment shown on a reproduced large-scale hand-drawn map or in a rural segment shown on another type map enter the special dwelling place symbol on the map. Treat the place just as you would if it were in a segment to be newly listed.

SPECIAL NOTE: If the special dwelling place is a transient hotel, motel, Y, tourist camp or court, or combination tourist-trailer camp, check to see whether units in the place are listed on the Segment List before preparing a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place. If you find the place listed on the Segment List, bring the listing up to date on that form and do not prepare a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for it.

I. Change in status of special dwelling places

1. From special dwelling place to housing unit

If a special dwelling place has been changed into a housing unit, add the housing unit to the Supplemental List (or Segment List for TA Segments) and enter the notation "Converted to Housing Unit" together with the date on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet.

I. Change in status of special dwelling places—Con.

2. From housing unit to special dwelling place

If you find in updating that a housing unit has changed into a special dwelling place since the segment was last interviewed, cross the housing unit off the Segment List, indicating the reason and date for the deletion, and prepare a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place.

3. From one type to another

If the special dwelling place has changed from one type to another, fill a new Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the place. Enter the notation "Converted to (type of special dwelling place)" together with the date on the original Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. Also fill a new Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for transient-type hotels, motels, Y's, tourist camps or courts listed on the Segment List which change to a different type (except as indicated below) of special dwelling place. In such a case, cross the units off the Segment List and enter in column 7 "Converted to another type sp. dpl." together with the date.

Do not transfer from the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet to the Segment List (or vice versa) hotels, motels, Y's, tourist camps or courts or combination tourist-trailer camps which have changed from transient to nontransient type (or from nontransient to transient type).

A list and description of special dwelling places is given on pages C87-C91.

LIST AND DESCRIPTION OF TYPES OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES

I. TYPES OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES

Following is a list of the different types of special dwelling places. In entering "type" on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet, enter the exact type shown in the following list; for example, enter "children's (or adult) recreation camp" and not just "recreation camp". Enter "state penitentiary" and not "correctional institution", etc.

A. SPECIFIED INSTITUTIONS

1. Correctional Institutions

a. State or Federal penitentiary, prison, or reformatory.
b. State or Federal prison farm or camp.
c. County or city jail, workhouse, or penitentiary.
d. County or city prison farm or camp.
e. Federal Detention headquarters.
f. State or Federal Training or industrial school.
g. County or municipal training, parental, or industrial school.
h. Private school for delinquents such as "House of Good Shepherd", "Boys Town", etc.

2. Mental Institutions

a. Home or training school for mental defectives.
b. Home, training school, colony, or village for epileptics.
c. State, Federal, county, or city hospital for mental diseases.
d. Veterans' Administration mental hospital.
e. Private Hospital or sanatorium for mental diseases.
f. Hospital for the treatment of alcoholics or drug addicts.

3. Homes for the Aged, Infirm, or Needy

a. Orphan asylum.
b. Children's home.
c. County home, almshouse, poor farm, etc.
d. Soldiers' or sailors' home.
e. Veterans' Administration home (domiciliary care).
f. Fraternal or religious home for the aged.
g. Commercial boarding house for the aged.
h. Home or resident school for the blind.
i. Home or resident school for the deaf.
j. Hospital or resident schools, orthopedic hospitals and homes for the crippled.

4. Nursing, Convalescent, and Rest Homes (Specify)

In determining whether a place which offers nursing, convalescent or rest care is a special dwelling place, apply this rule: If the place is providing, or has accommodations to provide nursing care or domiciliary and personal care (as required) for 3 or more patients or paying guests, classify it as a special dwelling place, i.e., a nursing, convalescent or rest home. Examples of care provided in these places are nursing care, help in feeding, aid in getting around, tray service, etc.

In special dwelling places of these types, only the "staff" quarters are included in the Health Interview Survey, that is, quarters for the operator of the home and for resident employees and their families.

5. Other Hospitals and Homes Providing Specialized Care

a. Tuberculosis sanatorium.
b. Veterans' Administration tuberculosis hospital.
c. Home for incurables.
d. Chronic or cancer hospital.
e. Maternity homes for unmarried mothers.
f. Detention or receiving home.

B. OTHER SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES

1. Veterans' Administration General Medical and Surgical hospitals.
2. Nurses' Home
3. Facilities for the Treatment of the Physically Ill.

a. General or emergency hospital
b. Children's hospital
c. Maternity hospital
d. Infirmary

} Patient usually stays for a relatively short period of time

4. Convents, Monasteries, etc.

a. If the convent or monastery operates an establishment in the same segment, consider the convent or monastery and the establishment it operates together as one special dwelling place. Classify such a special dwelling place by the type of establishment operated, that is, as hospital, orphanage, school, etc.

Exception: If the establishment mentioned above is a school for nonresident students only, classify the Special Dwelling Place as a convent or monastery.

b. If the convent or monastery does not operate an establishment in the same segment, classify the Special Dwelling Place as a convent or monastery.

c. A Sisters', Brothers', or Priests' Residence or Rectory with quarters for 4 or fewer sisters, brothers, or priests should be listed on one line of the Segment List unless it is part of a special dwelling place such as a hospital, orphanage or school for resident students. If there are quarters for 5 or more sisters, brothers or priests in the residence , list it as a special dwelling place.

5. Transient-type Hotels (including seasonal--summer or winter--hotels).

A transient hotel is one in which:

a. more than 25% of the rooms or suites are occupied or intended for occupancy by transient guests. (Transient guests are those who usually stay less than 30 days.)

OR

b. more than 25% of the rooms or suites are occupied or intended for occupancy by guests who pay at a daily rate.

6. Transient-type YMCA, YWCA, etc.

Apply the rules given above for transient hotels to determine whether a YMCA, YWCA, etc. is transient.

7. Private Residential Clubs and Tourist Homes

A private residential club or tourist home is to be classified as a special dwelling place only if it contains 5 or more rooms or groups of rooms to be rented out. If there are fewer than 5 rooms or groups of rooms for rent, combine these rooms or groups of rooms with the landlord's quarters (or with each other if the landlord does not live in the structure) and list on one line of the Segment List.

8. Facilities for Housing Students

a. School dormitory.

b. Fraternity or sorority.

c. Trailer camp only for students and their families. (See Section 13 below for definition of trailer camp.)

d. School with resident students (other than for the needy or infirm). Convents or monasteries operating this type of special dwelling place are to be classified as "Schools with resident students", even though nonresident students also attend the school.

9. Facilities for Housing Workers

a. Dormitory for workers.

b. Bunkhouse (provided that it has or is expected to have quarters for 5 or more farm or ranch hands).

c. Labor camp.

d. Logging camp.

e. Migratory workers' camp.

A migratory workers' camp consists of quarters, or sites for quarters, for 5 or more seasonal or temporary workers engaged in agricultural activities including related food processing. Such quarters may consist of one or more of the following:

Structures

Trailers (or trailer sites)

Tents (or tent sites)

Vehicles.

(Living quarters occupied by a migrant family is to be considered as one unit regardless of the number of workers in the family. For example, a cabin occupied by a migrant family consisting of a husband, his wife and 4 children all of whom are employed by a grower would be considered as quarters for one worker for purposes of applying the above definition.) Where definite land area is reserved for a migratory workers' camp consider such land area and all buildings located on it as comprising the camp.

A migratory workers' camp may be located on a farm or ranch or may be operated independently. A grower, rancher, association, cannery, etc., may operate several migratory workers' camps located some distance from each other--in such a case, consider each camp as a separate special dwelling place and list only those camps within the segment boundary.

Quarters on a farm or ranch which are intended for tenants or permanent hired hands such as tenant houses and bunkhouses are <u>not</u> part of a migratory workers camp. Also if the total quarters in the camp intended for migratory workers will not provide accommodations for 5 or more workers or their families they are not to be considered as a migratory workers camp but are to be listed on the Segment List.

10. <u>Flophouses and Missions</u> (Specify)

11. <u>Recreational and Religious Camps</u> (Specify)

a. For Adults (or family)

b. For Children

12. <u>Transient-type Tourist Camp or Motel</u>

A transient-type tourist camp or motel is one consisting of 5 or more units on the same property of which <u>more than 25%</u> are occupied or intended for occupancy by transient guests. Transient guests are those who usually stay less than 30 days or pay at a daily rate.

Transient-type tourist camps or motels are special dwelling places and a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet is to be filled for them. Nontransient tourist camps or motels (those not meeting the above transiency rules) are not special dwelling places and each unit in the camp or motel should therefore be listed on the Segment List. Also, each of a group of four or fewer units located on a single property should be listed on the Segment List without applying the transiency rules.

If a camp contains trailers and permanent residential structures in addition to tourist cabins refer to Table C on page C-64 for instructions on how to list units in the place.

13. Transient-Type Group of 5 or More Adjacent Vacation Cabins Under Single Management

A group of 5 or more adjacent vacation cabins under a single management and identifiable by a sign on the property on which located is to be considered as a special dwelling place if more than 25% of the cabins are occupied or intended for occupancy by transient guests as defined in paragraph 12 above. Include as part of the special dwelling place, all vacation cabins in the group and each other residential unit, if any, located on the property.

If 75% or more of the cabins in such a group are occupied or intended for occupancy by non-transient guests, each cabin in the group and each other residential unit, if any, should be listed on a separate line of the Segment List.

NOTE: If there are fewer than 5 adjacent cabins under a single management and identified by a sign on the property list each cabin in the group on a single line of the Segment List. Also list on a single line of the Segment List each separate vacation cabin not part of a group under single management.

14. Trailer Camps and Tent Camps

Trailer and tent camps (with the exception of migratory workers' camps consisting of trailers or tents) are to be classified as special dwelling places only if there are 5 or more trailers or tents present at the time of listing, or if you expect that at some time during the year 5 or more trailers or tents will be present on the grounds. Otherwise, list the trailers or tents as regular housing units.

If the trailer camp contains tourist cabins or other permanent structures containing living quarters, refer to Table C on page C-64 for procedures to be followed.

15. Armed Forces Installations

Army, Air Force, Navy, Marine or Coast Guard Stations, posts or any other establishments (except any establishment consisting of a hospital only) operated by the Armed Forces.

16. Armed Force Hospital

Establishments operated by a branch of the Armed Forces and consisting of a hospital only.

LIST AND DESCRIPTION OF TYPES OF SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES ends on page C-91.

CHAPTER 15. HOW TO REFER PROBLEMS AND QUESTIONS CONCERNING THE LISTING OPERATION

A. When to use INTER-COMM during listing

During the listing operation use the INTER-COMM to (1) record problems encountered in listing and (2) record any questions which you have concerning listing.

B. Preparation of INTER-COMM

When you have occasion to use an INTER-COMM, prepare it as follows:

1. Heading

Fill heading items a - k and enter in item l any other identification that will be helpful in resolving the problem or question. For example, enter in item l the serial number if a sample unit is concerned; if the problem concerns a CPS or MLS segment, enter the rotation number. For special dwelling place problems concerning sampling, enter "C" or "R" to indicate whether the place was completely listed or sampled from a register.

2. Section I

Enter your question or state the problem in Section I. Be sure to state all pertinent information in order that your supervisor may be able to furnish you with the correct answer or fully understand situations where you found it necessary to change a street name on your Segment Map, etc.

If a reply is required, check the "yes" box in the heading of Section I; check the "no" box if you are making an informative statement.

3. Illustration

An excerpt of the INTER-COMM is shown below to illustrate how this form should be filled in reporting that the actual name of a street differs from the name appearing on the map. (See section E2 on page C-13.)

FORM 11-36 (3-7-63)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

INTER viewer
COMM unication

(Referral Sheet)

See instructions on reverse side of "Field Office" or "Originator's" copies

a. Regional office (Check: ☑ TO ☐ FROM): Atlanta

b. Survey (Check which): ☑ CPS ☐ NHS ☐ OHS ☐ CBR ☐ SOC ☐

c. Interviewer's name: Dorothy Brown E1

d. Date: 1/19/64

IF REFERENCE TO SPECIFIC UNIT, SHOW WHERE APPLICABLE

e. PSU Code: 990

f. Segment number: 34

g. Type segment: ☐ B ☑ TA ☐ PC ☐ NP ☐ X or NTA ☐ Sub-segment ☐ CBR ☐

h. Sample: ☑ CPS A12 ☐ NHS ☐ OHS ☐ GT

i. Form No.: Segment Map

j. Sheet No.

k. Line No.

l. Serial number or other identification: Rotation 4

Section I - STATEMENT (Answer required: ☐ Yes ☒ No)

Name of North Boundary of segment changed from "Taylor Street" to "Highland Terrace". Change made by city in March 1963; Highland Terrace coincides exactly with boundary shown on map. Name corrected on map.

CPS-250
NHS-HIS-100
MLS-300
SORAR-725

USCOMM:DC

Chapter 15 ends
on page C-91

CHAPTER 16. INQUIRING ABOUT YEAR BUILT AT THE TIME OF LISTING AND UPDATING

A. Purpose of Inquiry

In some areas of the country, our survey includes a sample of building permits issued for new construction since April 1, 1960. In TA and NTA Segments in these areas, all units are to be listed as usual but those built after April 1, 1960 are to be excluded from the survey by the Regional Office because they have a chance to be selected as sample units in Permit B Segments.

In order that units built after April 1, 1960 may be identified, inquiry about "year built" must be made for each structure in a TA and NTA Segment located in a permit-issuing place (Permit Area). This inquiry is to be made at the time of listing in some segments and at the time of interview in others. In bringing lists up to date, "year built" inquiries are to be made for each structure added in these segments.

These instructions will tell you when and how to inquire about "year built" at the time of listing and updating.

B. "Year Built" Stamp on Segment Folder

A stamp appears on the front of each TA and NTA Segment Folder, usually in Part IV, showing whether "year built" is required.

1. Segments in Which "Year Built" Not Required

Some Segment Folders are stamped:

DO NOT Determine Year Built (NPA)

These segments are located in areas where we do not sample building permits (indicated in the stamp by NPA meaning Non-Permit Area). Make no "year built" inquiries in these segments at any time.

2. Segments In Which "Year Built" Is Required

Part IV of the Folders for segments in which "year built" is required will show a stamp containing the letters PA. These segments are located in areas in which building permits are issued (indicated in the stamp by PA meaning Permit Area).

C. When To Inquire About "Year Built"

Inquire about "year built" as follows:

1. Segments To Be Listed

The Folders for segments to be listed are stamped;

(PA) BEFORE LISTING, Estimate whether MORE THAN [ ] Units to be Listed.

Appears to be (Check a or b):

a. [ ] More (INQUIRE About Year Built for Each Structure You List)

b. [ ] Not More (Make NO Year Built Inquiries at Time of Listing)

For these segments, proceed as follows:

a. Before Listing

Before you begin listing the segment, estimate whether the number of units in the segment exceeds the number in the block in the stamp.

NOTE: The number in the block in the stamp is larger than the number of units we expect you will find. A segment containing more than this number is likely to consist of many units built after April 1, 1960.

b. How to Estimate

Make your estimate in the most efficient manner possible. In some cases, you can tell immediately whether the number of units is more than the number in the block. In other cases you may need to quickly canvass the segment to locate the boundaries and can make an estimate while doing so. Your estimate is not expected to be an exact count; there will be some cases where you over-estimate or under-estimate.

If it is obvious that the segment contains units in special dwelling places or public housing projects, do <u>not</u> include them in your estimate. "Year Built" is not required for these units even though they are located in Permit Areas.

c. If Your Estimate Is MORE

If you estimate that the number of units in a segment is MORE THAN the number recorded in the stamp on the Segment Folder:

C. When to Inquire About "Year Built"-Con.

(1) check box a in the stamp and inquire about "year built" for each structure you list, as specified in Section E below.

(2) enter an "X" under A or B in column 8 of the Segment List for each unit you list, according to the reply to your inquiry.

(3) enter an "X" under ND in column 8 if you list a unit for which "year built" is not required (special dwelling places, trailers, etc.).

d. If Your Estimate Is NOT MORE — If you estimate that the number of units in a segment is NOT MORE than the number recorded in the stamp on the Segment Folder:

(1) check box b in the stamp.

(2) make no "year built" inquiries at the time of listing.

(3) leave blank column 8 of the Segment List. (In these segments, "year built" inquiries are to be made at the time of interview as specified in Part D of your manual (Preface to Part D of the NHS-HIS Interviewer's Manual).

2. "Year Built" Inquiries At Time of Updating — In updating segments in which "year built" is required (those located in Permit Areas) always inquire about "year built" for each structure added.

Add units to a blue Segment List (for TA Segments) or buff Supplemental List (for NTA Segments). Enter an "X" under A or B in column 3 of the list, or in the "year built" stamp on the Control Card or questionnaire, according to the reply to your inquiry.

3. "Year Built" Inquiries At Time of Interview — See Part D of your manual (Preface to Part D of the NHS-HIS Interviewer's Manual) for instructions on inquiring about "year built" for current sample units at the time of the first interview.

D. Definition of "Year Built"

The definition of "year built" for structures already built refers to the date original construction was completed. It does not refer to:

(1) any later remodeling.

(2) additions to previously existing structures.

(3) conversions within structures.

(4) the date houses were moved to a particular site. If a house has been moved, "year built" refers to the date construction was completed for it on its original site.

E. How To Inquire About "Year Built"

In determining "year built" at the time of listing and updating, inquire about each unit you enter on the list and check A or B in column 8 of the list, according to the reply to your inquiry. Do not classify a structure as built before or after April 1, 1960 on the basis of observation. If a structure appears to be old, you should still inquire to confirm your observation. In such cases, ask when the structure was built rather than if it was built before or after April 1, 1960.

If an occupant does not know when the structure was built, is not at home, or if the structure is vacant, ask a neighbor. If the structure is an apartment building, ask the resident manager or janitor. In inquiring, explain that you are listing all structures in the area and need to identify those built after April 1, 1960.

1. How Often To Inquire

Inquire at each structure you list with the following exceptions.

a. When Segment Contains New Housing Development

If you are listing what appears to be a part of a new housing development and there is a developer's office in the area, list the new structures that are in the segment, then inquire about "year built" at the developer's office. If the developer cannot tell you about certain structures, go back to such structures and inquire as usual.

E. How To Inquire About "Year Built"—Con.

b. Structure Under Construction

If you list a structure which is entirely under construction, enter an "X" under A in column 8 of the Segment List without inquiring. (If the structure is being remodeled or converted, inquire about "year built" as usual.)

2. Inquiring At Multi-unit Structures

In multi-unit structures, inquire about "year built" only once, but enter an "X" under A or B in column 8 of the list for each unit in the multi-unit structure.

F. Units for Which "Year Built" Not Required

Make no "year built" inquiries for units in the following types of places even though the segment is in a permit area.

(1) special dwelling places.

(2) public housing projects, residential buildings constructed by Federal, State and local governments (Public Housing Authorities), state universities and Capehart housing for military personnel.

(3) factories, schools, public buildings, stores, churches and other predominately non-housing unit structures. (A predominately non-housing unit structure is one in which more than 50% of the floor space is non-residential.)

(4) living quarters not located in structures; for example, trailers, tents and boats.

Samples selected from new construction data to not include any of the above units; therefore such units must be listed and enumerated in TA and NTA Segments regardless of when they were built. Enter an "X" under ND in column 8 of the Segment List when listing or adding any such units.

G. Summary of Interviewer's Instructions on Inquiring About "Year Built"

1. Segment In Which "Year Built" Not Required Will Be Stamped → DO NOT Determine Year Built (NPA) → Make no "year built" inquiries in this segment at any time.

2. Segment To Be Listed In Permit Area Will Be Stamped →

(PA) BEFORE LISTING, Estimate Whether MORE THAN [ ] Units to be Listed.

Appears to be (Check a or b):

a. ☐ More (INQUIRE About Year Built for Each Structure You List)

b. ☐ Not More (Make NO Year Built Inquiries at Time of Listing)

→ BEFORE LISTING

Before you begin listing, estimate whether the number of units in the segment exceeds the number in the block in the stamp. (The number in the block is larger than the number of units we expect you will find; therefore, a segment containing more than this number is likely to consist of many units built after April 1, 1960.)

How To Estimate

Make your estimate in the most efficient manner possible. In some cases, you can tell immediately whether the number of units in the segment exceeds the number in the block. In other cases you may need to quickly canvass the segment to locate the boundaries and can make an estimate while doing so. Your estimate is not expected to be an exact count; sometimes you will over-estimate or under-estimate.

If it is obvious that the segment contains units in special dwelling places or public housing projects, do not include them in your count. "Year Built" is not required for these units even though they are located in Permit Areas.

a. If Estimate Is MORE

If you estimate that the number of units in the segment is more than the number in the block:

(1) check box a in the stamp and inquire about "year built" for each structure you list.
(2) enter an "X" under A or B in column 8 of the Segment List for each unit, according to the reply to your inquiry.
(3) enter an "X" under ND in column 8 if you list a unit for which "year built" is not required (special dwelling places, trailers, ...etc.).

b. If Estimate Is NOT MORE

If you estimate that the number of units in the segment is not more than the number in the block:

(1) check box b in the stamp.
(2) make no "year built" inquiries at the time of listing.
(3) leave blank column 8 of the Segment List.

3. Segments To Be Updated In Permit Areas → In updating segments in which "year built" is required (those located in Permit Areas) always inquire about "year built" for each sturcture added. Add units to the blue Segment List (for TA Segments) or buff Supplemental Segment List (for NTA Segments). Enter an "X" under A or B in column 8 of the list, or in the "year built" stamp on the Control Card or questionnaire, according to the reply to your inquiry.

4. "Year Built" Inquiries At Time of Interview → See Part D of your manual (Preface to Part D of NHS-HIS Interviewer's Manual) for instructions on inquiring about "year built" at the time of interview.

☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1964 O—749-416

NHS-HIS-100
FY 1965

PART D

THE HEALTH QUESTIONNAIRE

AND

HOW TO CONDUCT THE INTERVIEW

CHAPTER 1

IDENTIFICATION SHEET

(Front page of the Questionnaire)

A. Use of front page

The front page of the questionnaire shows the address of the sample unit and provides space for a record of interviewing and certain other information about the sample unit.

Always check the address of the unit against the address or description in Item 2a to be sure you are at the correct sample unit before proceeding with the interview.

For each prelisted sample unit in your assignment you will receive a questionnaire with the front page partially filled. Some of these will also have a "YEAR BUILT" stamp on them (see paragraph B-1). Use each partially filled questionnaire as the first questionnaire for its appropriate household.

In addition to the partially filled questionnaires, you will receive a supply of blank questionnaires. Use these for "extra" households, and for cases where more than one questionnaire is needed for a household. (For a definition of "extra" units, see Part A, Chapter 2.)

B. Determination of "YEAR BUILT" in area segments at time of interviewing

Units in structures built after April 1, 1960 are not to be interviewed in TA and NTA segments located in permit-issuing places (permit areas) because such units have a chance to be selected in a sample of permits issued for new construction. To identify these units, "YEAR BUILT" must be determined at the time of listing or interviewing. The instructions for making the determination of "YEAR BUILT" at the time of interviewing are given below.

1. Identification of units for which "YEAR BUILT" determination to be made

The sample units for which the "YEAR BUILT" determination is to be made at the time of interviewing will be identified by a stamp which has been put in the heading on the front page of the questionnaire for the unit by your Regional Office, as follows:

YEAR BUILT
☐ Before April 1, 1960 Interview
☐ After April 1, 1960 Do NOT interview

(These will be units in TA and NTA segments in permit areas. The Segment Folders for these segments will bear a stamp including the instruction "Determine year built." However, you need not concern yourself with the stamps on the Segment Folders at the time of interviewing. These were instructions for the Regional Office and the person doing the listing or updating.)

Do not determine "YEAR BUILT" if the above stamp is not on the questionnaire for the unit. Proceed to interview these sample units as usual. (These will be units in TA and NTA segments in non-permit areas and in B segments.)

2. Procedures for determining "YEAR BUILT"

Following are the procedures to be used in determining "YEAR BUILT" for sample units for which this information is required.

a. When and how to make the inquiry

At sample units for which the "YEAR BUILT" determination is to be made your first question will be, "When was this structure built?" since the answer to this question will determine whether or not the unit is to be interviewed.

If the occupant does not know, is not at home or if the unit is vacant, ask a neighbor, janitor, or apartment house manager, etc.

(1) Definition of "YEAR BUILT"	"YEAR BUILT" refers to the date the original construction was completed. It does not refer to any later remodeling, additions or conversions, or to the date houses were moved to a particular site. If a house has been moved, "YEAR BUILT" refers to the date its construction was completed on its original site.
(2) Meaning of "year built determination"	"Year built determination" means that you are to determine whether the structure was built before or after April 1, 1960, the 1960 Census Enumeration date. If the answer to your first question about when the structure was built is not specific enough to make the "YEAR BUILT" determination, you must ask additional questions to determine whether the structure was built before or after April 1, 1960. If the person from whom you are obtaining the information is not sure, try to obtain an estimate. If you are unable to obtain the information from anyone, make the "YEAR BUILT" determination by observing the condition of the structure. This is to be done only as a last resort.
(3) Structure built before April 1, 1960	If you make the determination (either by inquiry or observation) that the structure was built before April 1, 1960, check that box in the stamp on the questionnaire(s) and proceed to interview the sample unit(s). If you are unable to make the "YEAR BUILT" determination either by inquiry or observation--that is, you are uncertain--do not check either box in the stamp but enter the reason you have not in the footnote. Proceed to interview any such units.
(4) Structure built after April 1, 1960	If you determine that the structure was built after April 1, 1960, check that box in the stamp on the questionnaire(s) and return the questionnaire(s) for the unit(s) as noninterview--Type C, "Built after April 1, 1960."

b. When inquiry about "YEAR BUILT" not to be made

In the following cases inquiry about "YEAR BUILT" is not to be made even though the structure is in a segment for which "YEAR BUILT" determination is generally required.

(1) New construction

If the entire structure is under construction, check the "Built after April 1, 1960" box on the questionnaire and return the questionnaire as a Type C noninterview as instructred above. (If the structure is being remodeled or converted, inquire as instructed above.)

(2) Units in special kinds of structures

Do not determine "YEAR BUILT" for living quarters located in the following structures even though these appear to have been built after April 1, 1960:

(a) special dwelling places;
(b) public housing projects: residential buildings constructed by Federal, State and local governments (Public Housing Authorities), State universities, and Capehart housing for military personnel;
(c) factories, schools, public buildings, stores, churches, and other predominantly non-housing unit structures: a predominantly non-housing unit structure is one in which more than 50% of the floor space is non-residential.

Interview these in the usual manner.

(3) Units not in structures

Do not determine "YEAR BUILT" for living quarters not located in structures, such as trailers, tents, boats, etc. Interview these as usual.

(4) If "YEAR BUILT" not determined

If the office has put the "YEAR BUILT" stamp on a questionnaire for a sample unit in one of the places described above in (2) and (3), do not check either box but instead give the reason in a footnote, e.g., "Sample unit is a small apartment in rear of store," "Sample unit is an apartment in Federal Housing Project No. 1," "Sample unit is the residence of the warden at Folsom prison," etc.

(5) Units determined by lister to have been built before April 1, 1960

In some cases the lister will have determined at the time of listing that the unit was built before April 1, 1960. For these units your office will have checked the "Before April 1, 1960" box for year built on the questionnaire. Proceed to interview such units without making further inquiry about "YEAR BUILT."

c. "Extra" units

"YEAR BUILT" is to be determined for "extra" units you discover in area segments in permit areas, as for the regular sample units.

If the "extra" unit was built before April 1, 1960 enter "Built before April 1, 1960" in the heading on the front of the questionnaire for it, and proceed with the interview.

If the "extra" unit was built after April 1, 1960, prepare a questionnaire for it and send it in as a Type C noninterview, as outlined above.

Do not determine "YEAR BUILT" for "extra" units in segments in which the "YEAR BUILT" determination is not being made for the regular sample units. Interview these as usual.

C. Item 1 Number of questionnaires

If you use only one questionnaire for a household, fill this item to read, "Questionnaire 1 of 1 Questionnaires." If it is necessary to use two questionnaires, Item 1 on the first questionnaire should be filled to read "Questionnaire 1 of 2 Questionnaires," and on the second, "Questionnaire 2 of 2 Questionnaires." Corresponding entries should be made when three or more questionnaires are used. The entries in Item 1 are to be made after the interview is completed.

D. Items 2-8 Location and identification of unit

All these items, except for Item 2b, will be filled by your office for prelisted sample units. You will fill all of the Items 2-8 for "extra" units. Make these entries before you proceed with the interview.

1. Items 2a, 2b, and 2c Location of unit

These items provide the address or a description of the location of the unit to be interviewed, including the name and type code of a special dwelling place, if any.

a. Item 2a Address or description of location

If the address or description of the location on the questionnaire is inadequate, so that the unit can be found only with difficulty, add additional notes to clarify the address or description. For an "extra" unit, enter a complete address or description of location on the questionnaire.

b. Item 2b Mailing address

Item 2b is to be filled after question 25 (the income question) has been completed. Verify that the entry in Item 2a is the correct and complete mailing address for the household. If it is not or if the entry in Item 2a is only a description or location, determine the correct mailing address and enter this information in 2b. Be sure the name of the post office (city, town, village or branch) through which the household receives its mail, and the State are entered in 2a or 2b.

If the address shown in Item 2a is the correct and complete mailing address check the "Same as shown in 2a" box in Item 2b.

c. Item 2c Special dwelling place

For a prelisted sample unit in a special dwelling place, or for a unit expected to be selected from a register of a special dwelling place (See Appendix B of Part A), your office will have entered in Item 2c the name of the special dwelling place and a two-digit code for its type (see Appendix A of Part A).

For "extra" units in special dwelling places you are to fill this item. Copy the name and code from the heading of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet or Special Dwelling Worksheet, whichever you receive with your assignment.

2. Items 3-7 Identification

Items 3-5 are used for tabulation in Washington; Items 6-7 are used for control by Washington and by your supervisor. Item 7b, Segment type (TA, NTA or B) will serve as a ready reference for you in filling Item E and in asking Item 14 (see below). In case of an "extra" unit, fill all these items by copying the corresponding entries from any other questionnaire in the same segment.

3. Item 8 Serial number

Item 8 shows the serial number within a segment. For an "extra" unit, enter in this item the last name of the household head if the unit is occupied. If the unit is vacant, enter "Vacant" in Item 8. All serial numbers for "extra" units are to be assigned by the Regional Office.

4. "Extra" unit in NTA or B segment

If the questionnaire is for an "extra" unit in an NTA or B segment, fill Item E in accordance with instructions for "extra" units in Part A, Chapter 2.

5. Items 6-8 To be copied to additional questionnaires

Copy Items 6-8 to each additional questionnaire when more than one questionnaire is used for a household. These entries, together with an entry in Item 1, will be the only entries required for the front page of an additional questionnaire.

E. Items 9-15 When and how to fill

These items are to be filled after the health interview has been completed, and Item 2b has been filled. In every case, except as noted below, the question printed in the item must be asked as worded to obtain the correct entry for the item.

F. Land Usage

Since Items 9 and 10 on land usage are not filled for every household, this section of the questionnaire is set off by shaded lines.

1. Item L: To be filled by office

Item L is a check item to tell you when to proceed with Items 9 and 10. Your office will fill Item L in advance for all units assigned to you.

a. Where to proceed next

As indicated on the questionnaire, if the "Rural" box is checked in Item L, proceed with Items 9 and 10. If the "all other" box is checked, omit Items 9 and 10.

b. Filling Item L for "extra" units

In cases where you fill a new questionnaire for "extra" units found at the time of interview, make the Item L entry in the same box as for the regular assigned units in the same segment.

2. Item 9 Own, rent, or rent-free

Ask the question in Item 9 as worded and record the respondent's answer by checking the appropriate box.

In some cases, you may have to ask additional questions to get the correct information.

a. Own

Check the box for "Own" if the owner or co-owner is living at the sample unit, even though he may be absent from the household for a short period of time such as a family member in the Armed Forces or temporarily working away from home.

Check the "Own" box even if the place is mortgaged or not fully paid for.

The owner need not be the head of the household.

A co-operative apartment is owned only if the owner lives in it.

In the case of a trailer which is owned by the occupant but which is parked on rented ground, the land is considered to be the unit for the land usage question. Check the box for "Rent" in such a case.

b. Rent

Check the box for "Rent" if any money rent is paid or contracted for. The rent may be paid by persons not living in the unit--for example, a welfare agency.

c. Rent-free

Check the box "Rent-free" if the persons occupying the place neither own or rent it. Places of this kind are usually occupied rent-free by persons in exchange for services rendered, e.g., a caretaker, farm worker or janitor who receives the use of a house or apartment as part of his wages. A tenant farmer who does not pay money rent should be reported as occupying the unit rent-free.

3. Item 10a-b Acreage

If the answer to Item 9 is "Own" or "Rent-free" ask the question in Item 10a "Does this place have 10 or more acres?" If "Rent" is checked in Item 9 ask 10b "Does the place you rent have 10 or more acres?" Check the box for "Yes" or "No" as indicated by the respondent's answers. When questions arise use the following definitions as a guide.

a. General definition of "place"

In most cases the "place" has a clearly defined meaning. For example, in a built-up area, the "place" is likely to be one sample unit consisting of a house and lot. In the open country, on the other hand, it may consist of a whole tract of land or a combination of two or three pieces of land on which the sample units are located.

If there is any question as to what is meant by "place," use the following explanation. The "place" consists of one or more tracts of land which the respondent considers to be the same property, farm (or ranch) or estate. These tracts may be adjoining or they may be separated by a road or creek, or other pieces of land.

b. Definition of place for "owners" or "rent-free"

Places which are "owned" or "rent-free" include the entire acreage considered to be part of the same "place," including any part rented out to others. Even if the owner rents out all the land but continues to live on it, the rented land should be regarded as part of the owner's place.

c. Definition of place for "renters"

For renters, the "place" would include only the house and land for which they are paying rent, and not the entire acreage or property of the owner. This is an especially important distinction and one which you should explain to the respondent, if necessary.

d. More than one unit on same place

If there is more than one sample unit on the same place (as defined above), the answer for each unit must be the same. For example, an owner lives in one sample unit on a place of 150 acres; his hired hand lives rent-free in a separate sample unit on the same place. The answer to Item 10a would be "Yes" for each unit. Remember again, however, that if there is a cash renter on this property, we are referring only to the land which he rents.

e. If place is definitely in built-up area

There may be certain areas coded "rural" which have been built up into apartment areas, suburban housing developments, and the like. In such cases where the place is obviously a private home on a lot or an apartment, mark "No" for Item 10a or b without asking the question. Also, check the "No" box in Item 10d.

If the sample unit is in a rural (not built-up) area the question must be asked, even if the unit appears to be just a house and lot.

f. Problem cases

If there are any special problems involving the definition of "place" about which you are uncertain, make the best decision you can for that particular case, keeping in mind the above rules. Describe the problem on an INTERCOMM and transmit it to your office for submission to Washington.

4. Item 10c
Sale of produce
($50 or more)

If the answer to Item 10a or b is "Yes" ask Item 10c as worded and record "Yes" or "No" as the case may be. It is not necessary to find out the precise amount, so long as the answer can be classified as $50 or more ("Yes") or less than $50 ("No"). Note that the question refers to gross sales during the past 12 months. If questions arise on the meaning of "sales from this place," use the following as a guide.

a. Sales from this place defined

By "sales of crops, livestock, and other farm products" is meant the gross amount received for the sale of crops, vegetables, fruits, nuts, livestock and livestock products (milk, wool, etc.) poultry and eggs, nursery and forest products produced on this place.

Do not include the value of products consumed on the place. The products may have been sold at any time during the past 12 months.

b. Place

The "place" is the same as that referred to in Item 10a or b.

c. More than one unit

If there is more than one sample unit on a place (remembering how "place" is defined differently for owners and renters), the answer for each unit must be the same. For instance, the owner lives in one unit on a place of 15 acres. His total sales amounted to $780. His hired hand lives rent free in a separate unit on the place. Each of the two units would have "Yes" in Item 10a and "Yes" in Item 10c.

d. Special situation

If the respondent has recently moved to the place, and he has not sold any farm products, explain that this question refers to sales made from the place during the past 12 months, either by him or by someone else. It's possible he may know, in a general way, the amount of sales. If, however, he is unable or unwilling to make an estimate, report the item as "DK" (Don't know).

5. Item 10d
Sale of produce
($250 or more)

If the answer to Item 10a or b is "No" ask Item 10d. Ask the question as worded and mark "Yes" or "No" as required.

a. Follow same rules as for Item 10c

In completing Item 10d follow the same instructions as were given for Item 10c for sales, definition of "place," more than one unit, and special situation. The only difference is that Item 10d refers to sales of $250 or more. (The higher amount of sales from a place of less than 10 acres must have been made for it to be classified as a farm.)

If the place is obviously a private home on a lot or an apartment, 10d can be checked "No" without asking the question.

6. Noninterviews

If the unit is a Type C noninterview, do not fill Items 9 or 10. For Type B - vacant units, leave Item 9 blank, but try to obtain information for Item 10a and for 10c or 10d as appropriate. For other Type B and for Type A noninterviews try to obtain information for Items 9-10d, asking neighbors, etc., as necessary. If you cannot obtain information on value of produce, at least try to get answers for Items 9 and 10a or b. Where this is not possible, leave the items blank, but footnote the entry to say you were unable to find out.

G. Item 11 Type of unit

In Item 11 check the box for "Housing unit" or "Other unit" according to the rules in Part A, Chapter 3. Check Item 11 for Type A and Type B noninterviews, as well as for interviewed units. Leave Item 11 blank for Type C noninterviews.

H. Items 12-14 Listing check

Items 12 through 14 are to be asked to find out whether there are any unlisted units at the sample address. The information sought through Items 12, 13, and 14 is to be obtained for Type A and Type B noninterviews, as well as for interviewed units. Use a neighbor, building superintendent or the like as respondent for a vacant unit and for units where the occupants themselves have not been interviewed, i.e., because they are temporarily absent, etc.

If "Yes" is reported in answer to any of the questions in Items 12-14, check the "Yes" box and review the Segment List to see if the living quarters reported is listed. If it is found, enter, for "S,"

the Segment List sheet number and, for "L," the line number on which the listing is found. If more than one quarters is reported, for example, two basement apartments, check the Segment List for each and enter the sheet and line number for each, if found.

Fill Table X for each living quarters reported which is not listed. Thus, for each "Yes" box checked, there must be an entry of sheet and line number(s) or one or more lines of Table X must be filled.

1. Wording of questions

Ask all these questions exactly as worded in units being interviewed. In inquiring about noninterview units, some rewording of the questions will be necessary. For example, you might say "Are there living quarters for more than one group of people in that vacant house next door?"

2. Item 12

Ask Item 12 in all segments if the address in Item 2a identifies a SINGLE-UNIT structure (including a row house).

Obtain an answer to the first part of the question before asking the second part; and to the second part before asking the third part.

a. Address identifies only part of structure

In some cases you may discover that the address in Item 2a, which appears to be for a single-unit structure, actually identifies only part of the structure. In such a case, do not ask Item 12. (If the address identifies an entire floor of the multi-unit structure, ask Item 13.)

Footnote the Item 2 a address and give a description of the unit. Also enter the description on the Segment List.

Example: The sample unit address in Item 2a and on the Segment List is 301 N. Green St. You discover that 301 N. Green Street is a downstairs apartment and the upstairs apartment in the same structure has an address of 303 N. Green St. You would not ask Item 12 for this unit, but describe in a footnote to Item 2a and on the Segment List, "Downstairs apartment, upstairs is 303." Since the address of the sample unit describes an entire floor in a multi-unit structure, you would ask Item 13.

3. Item 13.

Ask Item 13 in all segments if the address in Item 2a identifies an entire floor or an unnumbered part of a floor, such as, "first floor," or "second floor left rear." It is not necessary to ask Item 13 in regular apartment houses where the apartments are identified by numbers or letters. Of primary concern are units which have been created by conversion of an old house, or similar situation, which are likely to have been missed in listing or Census enumeration.

In asking Item 13, be sure to make it clear that you are asking about the particular sample unit described in Item 2a, for example, "--on this floor?" or "--in this first floor left rear apartment?"

4. Item 14

Item 14 is to be asked in TA and NTA segments only. It is not to be asked in B segments. Also, it is not to be asked in apartment houses or apartment developments. In these cases, leave Item 14 blank.

Determine that the other building(s) on the property is within the segment boundaries before checking the Segment List. If it is not, and you have checked the "Yes" box in Item 14, explain the circumstances in a footnote, e.g., "Unit referred to is outside segment."

a. Item 14 to be asked for Type C, "Built after April 1, 1960" noninterviews

Item 14 is to be asked for Type C, "Built after April 1, 1960" noninterviews, since this might disclose an unlisted unit on the property which was built before April 1, 1960, and should be interviewed as an "extra" unit.

5. "Other units"

Items 12-14 do not need to be asked for sample units selected from a special dwelling place register, nor for a sample unit which is a person, bed or cot, or unoccupied trailer site in special dwelling places, nor for a sample unit which is a room in a boardinghouse or nurses' home. Leave Items 12-14 blank when they do not need to be asked.

6. Table X

"Table X" is designed to record the existence of separate living quarters and to help to determine whether the living quarters are a part of the unit being interviewed or constitute an "extra" unit to be listed and interviewed on a separate questionnaire. You are to use Table X as follows:

Column 1

This is the line number column from which the number of "extra" units can be determined at a glance. These line numbers provide identification for the extra units in case a reference should have to be made to any particular one. In most cases, only one line will be filled on one questionnaire.

Column 2

Enter the questionnaire item number by which the unit was discovered, for example, 13.

Column 3

The purpose of this column is to find out the number of separate living quarters in each space reported, for example, the number of separate quarters on the second floor, etc. Check "Yes" in column 3a or "No" in 3b as appropriate and fill a separate line of Table X for each separate living quarters reported. When more than one line is filled as a result of asking 3a, columns 2, 3a and 3b need be filled only for the first line.

Column 4

Enter a description of the location of the specific space you are inquiring about; for example, "2nd floor, left"; "1st floor rear"; "basement"; etc.

Columns 5-7

The questions in these columns will determine whether the space is a housing unit, "other" unit or not separate living quarters.

Col. 5

Determine whether the quarters shown in col. 4 are occupied; if so, ask the question and record the answer by making an "X" in column 5a or b. If the quarters are vacant skip to column 6.

Col. 6

Ask question 6 whether the space is occupied or vacant, and check column 6a or 6b as appropriate. (See Part A, Chapter 3, paragraph A-5.)

Col. 7

Ask question 7 for both occupied and vacant space and check column 7a or b. (See Part A, Chapter 3, paragraphs A-6, 6a, and 6b.) If the space is vacant and has no direct access or cooking equipment, it will be necessary to ask whether the last occupants had cooking equipment. (See Part A, Chapter 3, paragraph D-4.)

Columns 8 and 9

Use these columns to classify the information recorded in columns 5-7 as follows:

Col. 8

If the space is neither a housing unit or "other" unit, enter a check in column 8 and if occupied, add the occupants to the questionnaire for the sample unit at which discovered.

Col. 9

If the space qualifies as a housing unit or "other" unit, check column 9a or 9b as appropriate and fill a separate questionnaire for the unit and interview it if occupied.

Columns 10 and 11

The questions in columns 10 and 11 apply only if the space is classified as a housing unit and is in a B Segment. (Part F of this Manual contains instructions on B segments.)

Column 12

If the space inquired about is found to be an "other" unit, describe the unit in column 12; for example, enter "room in boarding house," "staff unit in mental hospital," etc.

I. Item 15 Telephone number

Enter the telephone number in Item 15. If the household has a telephone but the number is not obtained footnote the reason. The "No phone" box is to be checked only in those cases where there is no telephone in the household at all.

If the respondent asks why the telephone number is being obtained explain that in case additional

information is required, it would be cheaper to call for it by telephone than to send someone out again to make a personal visit.

J. Item D

After completing Item 15, go to Item D and follow the instructions printed on the questionnaire. As indicated there, if any person in the household has been reported as having diabetes, you are to check the "Yes" box and fill a Diabetes Supplement for each such person. (Instructions for the Diabetes Supplement are in Part D, Chapter 8.)

K. Item 16 Record of calls

This is a record of all visits made to a household to complete your interviewing, and is to include all visits made regardless of whether or not you found anyone home. Count as "visits" only actual attempts to contact the household, such as by ringing the doorbell or knocking on a door.

1. Calls for entire household

The first line of Item 16 is for a record of calls to obtain an interview from any acceptable respondent. Enter the date and time of each visit in the column for the particular visit you are making. That is, enter the date and time of the first call in the column headed "1," for the second call in the column headed "2," etc. For the date enter the month and day, e.g., "Feb. 4." Do not use numerals for the month. For time enter the time of day or night, e.g., "9:20 A.M.," "7:30 P.M.," etc. This time represents the time you make the call, not the time you complete the interview.

Enter an "X" on the line for "Entire household" in the column headed "Com." for the last call made to the household to indicate that the interviewing for the household has been completed. For final "Noninterview" leave the "Com." column blank. Ordinarily the "X" will be entered in the "Com." column immediately after the last date entered on the household line.

However, if return calls for additional respondents are necessary, the "X" on the household line should be placed directly above the "X" on the last call line.

2. Return calls for individual respondents

The remaining lines in Item 16 are for a record of return calls to obtain information from individual respondents. Use one line for each person for whom it is necessary to make a return call, and enter the column number of the person in the space following "Col. No." Ordinarily, such calls will be required only for persons not related to the head.

Enter an "X" in the appropriate column headed "Com." to indicate that an interview has been completed on a call for a specific respondent. Enter the "X" on the appropriate line and in the "Com." column immediately following the date and time of interview.

3. Illustration of how to fill Item 16

Below is an illustration of how to fill Item 16. No one was at home on the first trip to the household. The housewife and 20-year-old son were interviewed for themselves and for other related household members on the second trip. A roomer (column 5) could not be interviewed until the fourth trip.

16. RECORD OF CALLS AT HOUSEHOLD

Item			1	Com.	2	Com.	3	Com.	4	Com.
Entire household		Date / Time	May 6 10:30 a.m.		May 6 7:45 p.m.		—		—	X
Record of return calls for individual respondents	Col. No. 5	Date / Time			—		May 7 7:45 p.m.		May 8 8:10 p.m.	X
	Col. No. —	Date / Time			—		—		—	

L. Item 17
Noninterviews

Item 17 is for recording any instance in which you are not able to obtain complete interviews for part or all of a household.

A completed interview is one in which the interviewer has asked all questions on personal characteristics and health for all members of a household. If a respondent has refused to answer a few of the questions, such as that on income, but has provided the rest of the information to the best of his knowledge, the interview is considered completed.

In a case where an interview is not completed, enter an "X" in the box for the appropriate noninterview reason, one box only.

In case you are in doubt as to whether a questionnaire should be considered to be a completed interview, or are uncertain as to what type of noninterview should be recorded, do not check Item 16 or 17. Send an INTERCOMM, explaining the circumstances, with the questionnaire when you return it to your Regional Office.

1. Type A noninterviews

Noninterviews can be classified into four general groups. The first of these (Type A) consists of households occupied by persons eligible for interviews, but for which no interview was obtained. (If only part of a household is noninterview, it is classified as Type Z noninterview--see below.)

Type A noninterviews must be held to an absolute minimum. Every Type A noninterview means that we are losing valuable information; and if the number is large, our sample returns may not be representative of the entire population.

a. Refusal

An occasional respondent may refuse to be interviewed. When this is the case, check the "Refusal" box in Item 17. Also, in the Footnotes space, write out all the pertinent details regarding the respondent's reason for refusing to grant the interview.

b. No one at home--repeated calls	Check this box if, after making the permitted number of calls, you have not found an eligible respondent at home even though there are people living there during the interview week.
c. Temporarily absent	Check this box if the usual residents of a household are temporarily out of town, and will not return until after the end of the interview week; make certain that the unit is not vacant.
d. Other Type A	This category will include occupied units on impassable roads, quarantined households, and any other Type A cases not listed above. On the line under the box state the reason briefly, e.g., "impassable roads."
2. Type B noninterviews	Type B noninterviews consist of vacant units, units occupied solely by persons who are not household members by Census definition, and certain other special situations.
a. Vacant-nonseasonal	Check this box for all vacant units intended for year-round occupancy, regardless of where they are located. However, do <u>not</u> count as "vacant" a unit whose occupants are only temporarily absent, i.e., would be defined in Part A. Chapter 3 as usual residents of the unit even though they are out of town now. Such units should be classified "temporarily absent."
b. Vacant-seasonal	Check this box for vacant units intended for only seasonal occupancy. These may be in summer or winter resort areas, used only during the hunting season, etc., (<u>except</u> units for migratory workers).
c. Usual residence elsewhere	This category is for units occupied solely by persons who have usual residence elsewhere as defined in Part A, Chapter 3.

In resort areas, particularly, there will be many houses, apartments, etc., occupied by persons and families who have homes elsewhere. When an occupied summer or winter home is one of the sample addresses and the occupants have a usual residence elsewhere (as defined in Part A, Chapter 3), the household is to be classified as "usual residence elsewhere."

Note, however, that the sample unit must be actually <u>occupied at the time of interview</u> to be classified here. Usually, this means that you will need to contact a household member to learn that a unit is to be classified properly as "usual residence elsewhere." Sample units being held for persons with usual residence elsewhere who are not actually living there at the time of interview should be classified as "vacant," even if fully furnished and not for sale or rent.

d. Armed Forces

This category is for units occupied solely by members of the Armed Forces on regular active duty, as defined in Part D, Chapter 2.

e. Other Type B

This category will include all the classes of units listed below. In each case, check the "Other" box and on the line under the box state the reason briefly, e.g., "under construction."

(1) Unit under construction

Consider a unit as "under construction" if the construction has not proceeded to the point where all exterior windows and doors have been installed and final usable floors are in place. If the construction has proceeded to this point, the reason for noninterview should be reported as "vacant."

(2) Unit being created from conversion of former unit

Indicate here units being created from the conversion of a former unit. Use the same criteria for completion of construction as in the case of "unit under construction."

(3) Vacant--migratory workers	Indicate here units now vacant and used only for the temporary accommodation of migratory workers.
(4) Temporary business or storage	Indicate here units temporarily used for business or storage purposes, but expected to revert to residential use. If a unit has been permanently converted to business or storage use, it is to be classified as a Type C noninterview.
(5) Vacant trailer space	You may occasionally be assigned to interview the occupants of a designated trailer space in a trailer camp. If the space has no trailer in it, classify it here.
(6) Units not yet started in SOC permit segments	You may be assigned a segment with the letter "P" following the segment number and find that construction at a sample unit in the segment has not been started. Treat this unit as a Type B noninterview, "Other" and specify "Permit granted, construction not started."
3. Type C noninterviews	Type C noninterviews include units which ordinarily would not be listed or sampled for this segment, and which you have eliminated as sample units in accordance with the instructions in Part A, Chapter 2.
a. Demolished	"Demolished" units have been totally or partially torn down. If merely vacant pending demolition, classify as vacant rather than here.
b. In sample by mistake	This classification refers to units that should not have been listed originally. The units may be outside segment boundaries, never intended for residential use, etc. Describe the situation fully.
c. Eliminated in subsample	Check this box when you have eliminated a unit in subsampling, in accordance with instructions in Part A, Chapter 2.

d. Built after April 1, 1960	Check this box when you have made the "YEAR BUILT" determination and found that the sample unit is in a structure which was built after April 1, 1960.
e. Other Type C	This category will include all the classes of units listed below. In each case, check the "Other" box and on the line under the box state the reason briefly, e.g., "nonexistent."
(1) Non-exist-	Classify here any unit which you have not been able to find. Describe the situation fully.
(2) Unfit for human habitation	An unoccupied unit which has become unfit for human habitation and is beyond repair so that it is <u>no longer considered living quarters</u> should be classified here.
(3) Permanently converted to business or storage	Classify here any unit that has been permanently converted to business or storage use.
(4) Mergers	Classify as Type C "Other-Merger" units which are noninterview because they have been merged with another unit. See the instructions in Part A, Chapter 2.
(5) Other	Classify here any other Type C noninterviews and describe them in full.
4. Type Z non-interviews	As mentioned above, a Type Z noninterview is a case where only <u>part</u> of a household is non-interview; an interview has been obtained for one or more members of a household, but no interview has been obtained for one or more other members. Since Type Z noninterviews have nearly the same effect on our statistics as Type A noninterviews, every effort must be made to avoid Type Z's as well as Type A's.

In case of a Type Z noninterview, enter the column numbers of noninterview persons in the indicated blanks. Also enter the noninterview reason in full.

M. Items 18 and 19 Name and code of Interviewer

Sign your name in the space provided in Item 18 after you have completed the entire interview for a household or are turning in the questionnaire as a final noninterview. In Item 19, enter the interviewer's code which has been assigned to you by your office.

CHAPTER 2.

SELECTED PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS (QUESTIONS 1-5) AND ITEM H

A. Symbols, type face and general rules

In order to become familiar with the questionnaire, you must first know the meaning of the different kinds of symbols and type face used on the questionnaire.

1. Symbols used

The following symbols are used throughout the questionnaire wherever they apply.

a. Use of three dots

Where three dots "..." appear, insert the name of the illness, accident or injury which you are asking about. This aids the respondent in answering the questions, especially when several illnesses have been reported.

b. Use of two dashes

Where two dashes "--" appear, insert the name of the person, relationship or the number, whichever is appropriate.

c. Words in parentheses

Words in parentheses are alternative wordings of the question and are to be used when they fit a particular situation better.

2. Questions in heavy type

The questions to be asked the respondent appear in heavy black type (bold face). Instructions to you, as the interviewer, appear in light type. These instructions tell you when you are to ask the questions. Words in the questions which are in capital letters are to be emphasized in asking the questions.

3. Use of pronoun, "you"

Most of the questions include the word "you" and, therefore, apply only when you are talking to the respondent about his own characteristics and health conditions. When you are asking about other members of the family, substitute for "you" either "he" or "she" or use the name or relationship of the person involved.

4. How to delete an entry

If you make the wrong entry in writing out an answer to a question, do not erase. Instead, draw a line through what you have written and write the correct entry elsewhere in the space or in a note in the footnote space. If you make an "X" in the wrong check box, draw a circle around that box and make an "X" in the correct box.

5. Use of footnotes

Footnotes should be used to explain questionable or inconsistent entries, to continue an entry when the space provided is not adequate, and to give additional information which you feel to be pertinent. Footnotes are required for various specific entries and circumstances, as cited in later instructions.

B. Questions on personal characteristics

The remainder of this chapter deals with the first set of questions you will be asking in each household. Some of these items are used to establish a list of the household members. Other items provide descriptions of the persons such as age, race, sex, marital status, and work status during the past 2 weeks so that illness in the population can be studied in relation to these factors. Other questions on personal characteristics are asked at the end of the interview.

C. Eligible respondent

Questions 1 and 2 (name and relationship of all household members) may be asked of any "responsible" adult member of the household. "Responsible" means anyone who is not mentally incompetent or too ill to be able to think clearly about the questions being asked. Adult means a person 19 years old or older or any person who has been married.

Single persons 17 or 18 years old must not respond for other family members but may respond for themselves under the following circumstances:

(1) If there is no related person in the household who is 19 years old or over; for example, if the household consists of two unrelated 17 or 18 year old boys living in a school dormitory room, each may respond for himself.

(2) If they are present during the interviews with an older respondent, 17 or 18 year old persons may respond entirely or partly for themselves. However, do not make any extra effort to have them participate.

The reason for this restriction is that, while 17 and 18 year old persons should know about themselves, they are unlikely to have sufficient knowledge about the rest of the family to be able to furnish accurate information.

1. For questions 3-5

Questions 3-5 may be asked of the respondent for all related persons in the household. Also, the respondent may be asked all the remaining questions on the questionnaire for related children (under 19 years of age) in the household, and for related adults, but only if they are not at home at the time of interview. (See the instructions for Item H in paragraph J of this chapter.)

a. "Related"—defined

"Related" means related by blood, marriage, or adoption.

b. Children

Information about a child is normally to be obtained from one of the parents or other related adult in the household. If an unrelated person is usually responsible for the child's care, that person may report for the child. Thus, if the respondent has a foster child or ward living in his home, he should answer the questions about the child.

c. Adults not related

Adults not related to the head of the household (partners, roomers, or servants) are to answer questions 3-5 (and all other questions) for themselves. If, however, such persons have related family members in the household, any responsible adult member of that family may answer the questions for that family group. If adults not related to the head are not at home at the time of the original interview, a return call must be made to interview them.

2. Exceptions to eligible respondent rule

In the following two cases a person who is not a related member of the sample household can be considered an acceptable respondent.

a. You may interview a person who is responsible for the care of a person who is not competent to answer the questions, provided there are no related members of the household who can answer for the person. The person may or may not be a member of the household. For this type of case, enter a footnote describing the circumstances, e.g., "only household member is mentally incompetent and unable to respond for self; respondent was person who takes care of her during the day."

b. A member of the Armed Forces who lives at home with his family may be interviewed for his family even though he himself is not listed as a household member.

3. Return call maybe necessary

In some instances, you will have to make a second visit to the household in order to interview an eligible respondent. For example, if a respondent who is otherwise acceptable does not appear to be "responsible" because of extreme age, illness, etc., stop the interview and continue with another respondent even if doing so requires an additional call. Also if an otherwise eligible respondent can answer questions for himself, but does not know enough about other related adults in the household, finish the interview with him, but arrange to call back for the other household members. For cases such as the foregoing, describe the circumstances in a footnote.

4. No eligible respondent in household

If none of the household members listed is an eligible respondent, and there is no eligible respondent according to the exceptions in paragraphs 2-a and 2-b above, turn in the questionnaire as a noninterview, Type A - Other, and explain the circumstances.

D. Question 1 Names of household members

After asking the "YEAR BUILT" question when required, and determining that the household is to be interviewed, question 1a "What is the name of the head of this household?" is the opening question of the interview. Next, ask question 1b to obtain the names of the other household members.

1. List all household members

Then, ask questions 1c and 1d as reminders about persons who may be overlooked by the respondent.

There is an asterisk beside the "Yes" boxes in questions 1c and 1d which refers you to an instruction under question 1e: "(Apply household membership rules)". Do not list a person

if you discover at this point in the interview that he is not a household member by Census definition. See Part A, Chapter 3.

List each person named by the respondent in answer to questions 1a-1d who is a household member.

a. Question 1c

Before asking the question in 1c, state to the respondent "I have listed" and read the names of all persons listed in response to questions 1a and 1b. (If the relationships are known at this point, you may used or include them. For example, you might say: "I have listed your husband, you, your sons, John and James and your daughter, Nancy.")

Then ask "Is there anyone else staying here now such as friends, relatives, or roomers?" If "Yes", list each one reported, unless it is definitely clear at this point that the person is not a household member.

b. Question 1d

Ask question 1d: "Have I missed anyone who USUALLY lives here but is now away from home?" If "Yes", list each one reported, unless it is definitely clear at this point that the person is not a household member.

Do not list persons who formerly lived with this household but now live elsewhere, such as a daughter who has married and moved into her own home.

Do not list a person if you learn from this question that he is on active duty with the Armed Forces.

2. Questions 1e and 1f

Questions 1e and 1f are to be asked to help determine whether or not the persons listed from questions 1a-1d are to be considered household members.

You may have learned in question 1c or 1d that a person named by the respondent is not

a household member because his usual residence is elsewhere or he is on active duty with the Armed Forces. Questions 1e and 1f apply to the other persons named by the respondent, that is, those you have listed.

a. Question 1e

If an answer of "Yes" to question 1e is given for any person listed, ask additional questions for that person as needed in order to determine whether he has a usual place of residence elsewhere. If he is not a household member, delete him according to the instructions in paragraph 4 below.

b. Question 1f

Question 1f is to be asked if it appears that any adult males have been listed. For the purpose of this question, "adult" means a person who is 17 years old or over. The question is to be asked at this point to avoid asking unnecessary questions about active members of the Armed Forces, who are not included in the Survey.

Although exact ages have not been determined at this point in the interview, it should be possible in most cases to have a general idea of the age of household members. For example, the apparent age of a female respondent who is head of the household should indicate whether her son living at home is probably 17 years old or over. When in doubt, always ask.

If the answer to question 1f is "Yes" delete the person(s), according to the instructions in paragraph 4 below.

Although question 1f is primarily for males, if in asking the question, it is discovered that a listed female household member is in the Armed Forces she also is to be deleted.

(1) "Armed Forces"- defined

"Armed Forces" means the U. S. Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine Corps or Coast Guard and any National Guard unit presently activated as part of the regular Armed Forces. Included in "Active duty" is the six month period a young man may serve in connection with the provisions of the Reserve Forces Act of 1955.

Do not count as members of the Armed Forces persons working in civilian positions for the Armed Forces, persons serving in the Merchant Marine, persons in a National Guard unit not activated as part of the regular Armed Forces, or civilians who train only part time as reservists.

(2) Armed Forces Reserve

Persons who are in any reserve component of the Armed Forces but who only attend weekly reserve meetings, summer camp or the like are not on "full-time active duty."

3. Who are household members

The rules given in Part A, Chapter 3 for determining which persons are to be considered members of a household must be applied at every household. You should always ask any additional questions needed in order to determine properly who are household members. Examples of such questions are as follows:

"How many days a week does your husband spend in the city where he works?"

"Does your daughter live in the town where she goes to college or does she sleep here and go back and forth to classes?"

"Do your family and your son's family all live and eat together?"

"Does your cousin have her own cooking equipment in her room?"

4. Delete the name if not household member

If a person whose name you have listed would be considered to have a usual place of residence elsewhere, to be living in a separate unit, or not a household member for any other reason, (following the rules in Part A, Chapter 3), delete his name by drawing a large X in the column for that person, from question 1 through question 13. Explain in a footnote the reason for the deletion. Do not change the column numbers of other members of the household.

5. Use additional questionnaires if more than 6 household members

All members of the household, regardless of whether they are related to the head, are to be listed on one questionnaire (or one set of questionnaires if more than 6 persons). If there are 7 to 12 members of the household, list them on a second questionnaire and change the column numbers to "7," "8," etc. If there are more than 12 members of the household, use additional questionnaires in a similar manner.

6. Prescribed order of listing household

List the members of the household in the following order:

1. Head of the household
2. Wife of the head
3. Unmarried children of the head, or of the wife, in order of their ages, beginning with the oldest
4. Married sons and daughters (in order of age) and their families listed in this order: husband, wife, children
5. Other persons related to the head
6. Roomers and other persons not related to the head.

a. Related persons first

List first the head of the household and all persons related to the head in the order specified.

b. Unrelated persons second

Then, list all persons not related to the head, for example, servants, roomers, etc., in a convenient order. If among the persons not related to the head there are married couples or persons otherwise related among themselves, they should be listed in the order indicated for the families of married children (group 4).

7. How to enter names

Use column 1 for the head of the household and use a separate column for each of the other persons. Do not skip columns.

In the column for the head of the household, enter the last name in the space provided at the top, and enter the first name in the space below the last name. If there should be two persons in the household with the same first and last names they must be further identified by a middle initial or name, or as Sr., Jr., etc. Do not assume members of the household have the same last name. However, for each member of the household with the same last name as the person in the preceding column, enter a long dash instead of repeating the last name.

The following example of a five-person household illustrates the correct procedure:

Col. ①	Col. ②	Col. ③	Col. ④	Col. ⑤
Doe	_____	Poe	_____	Roe
John	Betty	Olive	Samuel	Thomas
Head	Wife	Daughter	Grandson	Roomer

E. Question 2 Relationship to head of household

As the respondent gives you the name of each household member, enter not only the name but also the relationship of this person to the head of the household. You may find it convenient to repeat the name and relationship as you write them, so that the respondent does not give you the names too rapidly for you to record them.

1. Head of household

Accept as the head of the household the person whom the respondent names as the head.

There must be one and only one head of the household. In some households you will find two or more persons sharing a housing unit who are not related. Since there can be only one head, designate one as the "Head" and call each of the others "Partner".

a. Head--defined

If a question is raised as to what is meant by the head of a household, say that he (she) is the person who is regarded as the head by the members of the household. In most cases the head is the chief breadwinner of the family, although this is not always true. In some cases the head may be the parent of the chief earner, or may be the only adult member of the household. As pointed out above, members of the Armed Forces are not covered by the survey even if they continue to live at home. Therefore, if a member of the Armed Forces is regarded as the head, list instead his wife (or other logical person) as the head.

b. If "head" deleted

If the person originally designated as the head of the household is deleted for any reason, designate another person as "head" and change the

relationships of other household members if necessary. Do not change the column numbers of other members of the household.

2. Relationship of other persons

After you have determined who is to be recorded as the head of the household, enter in question 2 for each person the relationship of the person to the head of the household.

a. Examples of relationship entries

Some typical examples of relationship entries are "wife," "son," "daughter," "stepson," "stepdaughter," "father," "mother," "grandson," "daughter-in-law," "aunt," "cousin," "nephew," "roomer," "servant," "hired hand," "partner," and "maid." (Note: In the case of common-law marriages report the relationship as you would for married persons.)

b. Persons unrelated to the head

If there are any persons in the household who are not related to the head, but are related to each other, their relationship to each other should be shown also. For example, a roomer and his wife must be listed as "roomer" and "roomer's wife"; a roomer and his brother must be listed as "roomer" and "roomer's brother"; a servant and her daughter must be shown as "servant" and "servant's daughter."

3. Persons in "special dwelling places," rooming houses, etc.

you may be assigned to interview persons who live in "special dwelling places" (institutions, hospitals, hotels for transients, facilities for housing students or workers, summer camps, trailer or tent camps, etc.)

In all such places, follow the rules in Paragraphs E-1 and E-2 above for relationship entries in question 2 (e.g., "head," "wife," etc.), including unrelated members to be included on the same questionnaire such as "partner," "roomer," etc.

F. Questions 3-5 How to ask the questions

As indicated above, questions 1 and 2 (name and relationship) are to be filled for each person in the household at the beginning of the interview.

Ask question 3 for each person (for whom the respondent is an eligible respondent) before you ask question 4 (marital status) for any person.

Similarly, ask question 4 for each person before you ask question 5 (work status).

For each of the questions, start by asking the respondent to answer the question about himself. Then ask him to answer the question for the head (if the respondent is not the head) and proceed to the other household members for whom he is an eligible respondent, in the order in which the members are listed.

1. Illustration

Illustration A below summarizes the order of asking the questions in a four-person household, where the wife is the respondent on questions 1 and 2 for all household members, and on questions 3-5 for related persons; and where a roomer is respondent on questions 3-5 for himself.

Illustration A

Questions	Head ①	Wife ②	Daughter ③	Roomer ④
1 2	Asked about all household members			
3	2nd	1st	3rd	Roomer responds for himself
4	2nd	1st	3rd	For self
5	2nd	1st	3rd	For self

G. Question 3 Age at last birthday, race and sex

Be sure to obtain the age of each person at his last birthday. If the respondent does not know the exact age of the person, ask him to estimate it as closely as he can.

For babies under 1 year of age, enter "Und. 1" for age.

1. Race and sex

As a rule, do not ask about race and sex but simply check the proper boxes while you are asking age. Unless you learn otherwise, assume that the race of all persons related to the respondent is the same as the race of the respondent.

a. Nonwhite races

Report Mexicans as white, unless they are definitely Indian or other nonwhite race. Report Negroes and persons of mixed Negro and other parentage as Negro. Report American Indians and all races other than white or Negro as "other."

b. Sex

The sex of a person cannot always be known from the name. For example, names such as "Marion" and "Lynn" are used for both males and females, If there is any doubt, ask the sex of the person.

H. Question 4 Marital status

Ask question 4, on marital status, only for persons 17 years old and over. If the person is under 17 years of age, check the box "Und. 17 yrs." without asking the question, even though you may have learned that the person is married, widowed, divorced or separated. As noted on the questionnaire, give the marital status of such persons in a footnote (unless the marriage was annulled). For persons 17 and over, if it is obvious from the relationship entries that two of the household members are husband and wife, check the box for "Married" without asking the question. If the person is the mother or father of a household member leave off the phrase "...or never married." in asking the question.

1. Annulled marriages

Consider persons whose only marriage has been annulled as never married.

2. Separated persons

Accept a respondent's statement that a person is separated. If, however, the respondent raises a question as to the meaning of "separated," explain that the term refers only to married persons who have a legal separation or who have parted because they do not get along with each other.

Persons who are separated from their spouse because of the circumstances of their employment, service in the Armed Forces, or similar reasons (other than marital discord) should be classified as married not separated.

3. Common-law marriages

Consider persons with common-law marriages as married.

I. Question 5
Work status in past 2 weeks

Question 5a is to be asked for each person 17 years old or over. For persons under 17, check the box "Under 17 years."

Ask the question as worded and accept the respondent's reply of "Yes" or "No." However, if questions arise as to the meaning of "work," use the following definition as a guide.

1. Work--defined

"Work" includes paid work as an employee for someone else for wages, salary, commission, or pay "in kind" (meals, living quarters or supplies provided in place of cash wages). Also include work in the person's own business, professional practice or farm, and work without pay in a business or farm run by a relative.

Do not count work around a person's own house or volunteer unpaid work for a church or charity.

A person who worked at any time last week or the week before, even for an hour, is to be checked "Yes" for question 5a.

2. Where to proceed next

If "Yes" is checked in question 5a omit questions 5b-5e and go to Item H.

If "No" is checked in question 5a both questions 5b and 5c must be asked.

3. Question 5b With a job or business

Ask question 5b as worded and check "Yes" or "No" in accordance with the respondent's answer. When questions arise, consider as having a job or business a person who was temporarily absent from his job or business all of last week and the week before because of vacation, bad weather, labor dispute or personal reasons such as illness; and expects to return when these events are ended. Also check "Yes" for a person who says that he has a new job which he has not yet started but enter a footnote, "New Job--not yet started."

a. Job-defined

A person has a job when he has a definite arrangement with one or more employers to work for pay (full-time or part-time).

(1) Seasonal job

Seasonal employment is considered a job only during the season and not during the off-season.

(2) Persons "on call"

A person "on call" to work only when his services are needed is not considered to have a job during weeks when he does not work. For example, a substitute teacher who was not called to work last week or the week before would be checked "No" for question 5b.

b. Business--defined

A person has his own business (including a farm operation or professional practice) if he does one of the following:

(1) Maintains an office, store, or other place of business.

(2) Uses machinery or equipment in which he has invested money for profit.

(3) Advertises his business or profession.

Casual workers who work for themselves such as itinerant handymen or other odd job workers are not considered to have a business during weeks when they do not work.

4. Question 5c Looking for work or on layoff

Question 5c is to be asked regardless of the answer to question 5b. The reason for asking the question of persons who have answered "Yes" to 5b is that a person who is not working but considers himself as with a job may actually be on temporary layoff or looking for a job and we want to provide such persons an opportunity to say whether this is so.

a. How to record the answer

Check the "Yes" box if the respondent's answer indicates that the person was either looking for work or on layoff or both.

b. Looking for work--defined

Looking for work refers to any effort to get a job or to establish a business or profession. A person was looking for work if he actually tried to find work during the past two weeks and also if he made such efforts previously (i.e., within the past 60 days) and was waiting during the past two weeks to hear the results of these earlier efforts.

Some examples of looking for work are: registering at an employment office; visiting, telephoning or writing applications to prospective employers; placing or answering advertisements for a job; and being "on call" at a personnel office or at a union hiring hall, etc.

c. Layoff--defined

A person is said to be on layoff if he is waiting to be called back to a job from which he has been temporarily laid off or furloughed. Layoffs are generally due to slack work at the person's place of employment. However, they may also be due to plant re-tooling or re-modeling, seasonal factors and the like. If a person was not working because of a labor dispute at his own place of employment he is not to be considered "on layoff" but with a job from which he is absent.

5. Question 5d Which--looking or on layoff

If the answer to question 5c is "Yes," ask question 5d: "Which--looking for work or on layoff from a job?"

Check the box for "Looking," "Layoff," or "Both" in accordance with the respondent's answer and the definitions above.

6. Question 5e Are you retired

Ask question 5e: "Are you retired?" for males 45 years old or over, if the answer to all of questions 5a-c is "No," and check "Yes" or "No" for question 5e. Otherwise, leave it blank.

Accept the respondent's answer to this question if it is "Yes" or "No." If a question is raised as to what is meant by "retired," state that it means that the person has either voluntarily or involuntarily stopped working, (or never worked), and that he is not looking for work. Most retired persons have pensions or independent incomes. A retired person may or may not be unable to work.

J. Item H
Whom to
interview

After completing questions 1-5, note the instruction in Item H that if related persons 19 years old or over are listed in addition to the respondent, you are to say: "We would like to have all adults who are at home take part in the interview. Is your --, --, etc., at home now?"

Check the "At home" or "Not at home" box for each adult on the basis of the respondent's answer. In the case of children, check the "Under 19" box unless a person under 19 years of age is the respondent. In that case, check the "At home" box.

If other eligible respondents are at home, ask: "Would you please ask --, --, etc., to join us?"

This procedure is a reminder, as stated on the questionnaire, to interview each ADULT for himself for questions 6-13 and the rest of the questionnaire if he is at home at the time of the interview. Since these questions are about each person's own health, he should be the best source of information about them.

If you have checked "Not at home" for a person who arrives later on in the interview, you should, of course, interview him also, but do not change the original entry. This rule applies even though the person arrives in time to answer some of questions 6-13.

In the case of unrelated persons (partners, roomers, servants, etc.), this determination is not to be made until you have completed the interview for all related members. Record "At home" for an unrelated person at the time you conduct the interview with that person. Persons unrelated to the head of the household who are related to each other, are to be treated the same as any other family group.

CHAPTER 3.

HEALTH AND HOSPITALIZATION QUESTIONS, 6-13, AND ITEM R

A. General procedure

Questions 6-13 are organized so as to obtain health information systematically for each member of the household. Space is provided for recording the illnesses, injuries and hospitalizations reported for each person in the column for that person. After questions 6-13 have been asked for all related household members, detailed information about each illness and injury will be obtained and recorded in Table I and Table A, and about each hospitalization in Table II.

1. Order of asking questions 6-13

When you are interviewing a person for himself, and he is not reporting for any other persons in the household, follow the order in which the questions appear on the questionnaire.

When you are interviewing one person in the household about himself and also asking about other related members of the household follow the order listed below:

Block of Questions or Single Question	Ask for:
6-9	These questions are asked as a block for the respondent first. Then, as a block, for each related household member, one member at a time.
10, 11	All related household members at one time.
12	Respondent first. Then, each related household member--one at a time.
13	Respondent first. Then, each related household member--one at a time.

The example below illustrates a three-person household in which the wife is the respondent.

ILLUSTRATION B

Order of asking questions 6-13

Questions	Ask in order:		
	Head	Wife	Son
6 7 8 9	2nd	1st	3rd
10 11			
	All family members at one time		
12	2nd	1st	3rd
13	2nd	1st	3rd

When two (or more) related adults in the same household are being interviewed together, follow the same general order of asking the questions: ask questions 6-9 as a block of one respondent, then ask questions 6-9 of the other respondent, then ask questions 6-9 for each other related household member in the order in which he is listed on the questionnaire. Follow the same procedure in asking question 12, and in asking question 13. Complete questions 6-13 for all related household members before filling Table I or Table II.

2. How to record illness conditions reported in questions 6-12

Record the answers to questions 6-12 for each person in the column for the person in the space opposite the corresponding question. If more than one condition is reported in answer to a question, record each condition not already recorded for the person. Do not record the same condition twice for the same person even though the respondent names the condition twice.

Record as illness whatever the respondent reports to you as illness. Record in the column spaces the respondent's own description of the illness (using his words--not your own). Record enough of the description so that when you are ready to obtain the additional information in Table I, later in the interview, you will be able to identify the condition properly. The complete description of the condition will be recorded later in columns d-1 through d-4 of Table I.

Record the condition in the column space of the question in answer to which it is reported. For example, if an injury, chronic condition or impairment is reported in answer to question 6 or 7, it is to be recorded there (in 6 or 7) even though specific questions will be asked about injuries, chronic conditions and impairments later.

3. Use of probes in questions 6-8

There are two probe questions, labeled b and c to be used in connection with each of questions 6-8.

a. Probe question b

Whenever the answer to one of questions 6a-8a is "Yes," ask the appropriate probe question; "What was the matter?", "For what condition?" or "What were they?", to bring out a description of the condition and the name of it if the condition is not volunteered.

b. Probe question c

After recording any conditions reported in answer to one of questions 6-8 ask the appropriate second probe question: 6c--"Did you have anything else during that period?", 7c--"Did you take any medicine for any other condition?" or 8c--"Did you have any other accidents or injuries during that 2-week period?" This gives the respondent an opportunity to report additional conditions. Ask probe question c regardless of whether probe question b is asked.

Continue to ask probe question c until you obtain an answer of "No" and check the "No" box. Thus, either the "No" box alone will be checked in questions 6-8 or both the "Yes" and "No" boxes will be checked; never the "Yes" box alone.

4. Probe in question 9

There is a single probe question in question 9, to bring out the present effects of "old" injuries. Either the "Yes" or "No" box is to be checked in question 9.

5. Questions 10, 11 List of conditions and list of impairments

There are no general probe questions to be asked in connection with questions 10 and 11, since they are directed at specific conditions named in lists to be read to the respondent. Therefore, either the "Yes" box or the "No" box will be checked for each person in questions 10 and 11. If the "Yes" box is checked, one or more conditions should be recorded for the person.

6. Question 12 Other problems with health

Question 12 is designed to give the respondent an opportunity to report other ailments, conditions or problems with health which a family member may have, which had not been asked about specifically. There are two probe questions similar to those in questions 6-8. Ask probe question b if the condition is not volunteered. Ask probe question c regardless of whether probe question b is asked and continue to ask the question until an answer of "No" is received. Thus, the "No" box must always be checked in question 12, as in questions 6-8.

7. Question 13 Hospitalization probe question

If the answer to question 13a is "Yes" the question "How many times were you in the hospital during that period?" is to be asked and the answer recorded in question 13b in the column for the person. For each "time" recorded in this question, a line of Table II is to be filled.

B. Questions 6-8

1. Time reference

Questions 6-8 apply to the 2-week period, "Last week or the week before," as defined below.

2. Last week or the week before--defined

"Last week or the week before" refers to the 2 weeks (14 days) just prior to the week in which you are interviewing. The 2-week period starts with Monday and ends with last Sunday night. No days of the interview week are to be included. For example, if you are interviewing on Tuesday, July 21, 1964 "last week or the week before" would refer to the period from Monday, July 6, 1964 through Sunday night, July 19, 1964; no illness starting after July 19 would be included, no matter how serious it might be. This principle applies to all succeeding questions.

a. Calendar card

In order to help the respondent identify the correct reference period for questions 6-8, he is to be handed a special 2-week reminder calendar (white card) with the dates of the 2-week reference period (last week and the week before) outlined in red.

Before starting each of your interviewing assignments, prepare three calendar cards by outlining the dates of the 2-week reference period in red, in accordance with the following examples. (These examples show the correct reference periods for Weeks 01 and 02 of Sample B-30.)

EXAMPLE FOR WEEK 01:

Red line

1964							
	S	M	T	W	T	F	S
JUNE		1	2	3	4	5	6
	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
	21	22	23	24	25	26	27
	28	29	30				
JULY				1	2	3	4
	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
	26	27	28	29	30	31	

EXAMPLE FOR WEEK 02

1964							
	S	M	T	W	T	F	S
JUNE		1	2	3	4	5	6
	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
	21	22	23	24	25	26	27
	28	29	30				
JULY				1	2	3	4
	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
	26	27	28	29	30	31	

Red line

Carry a few calendar cards with you in case you lose one.

In the rare cases in which the interview for an assignment week is delayed until the following week, prepare a new calendar card showing the reference period as changed, i.e., the 2-week period ending the Sunday night just before your actual interview date.

After asking question 6, let the respondent keep the 2-week reminder calendar (with the 2-week reference period outlined) until the end of the interview. This will enable him to refer to it whenever you find it necessary to remind him of the two-week period in those sections of the interview which ask for information about "Last week and the week before."

At the close of the interview, take back the calendar so that it may be used in other households during that week's assignment.

3. Question 6
Sick last week or the week before

When asking question 6 the first time for a family, read to the respondent the introductory statement printed on the questionnaire above question 6a: "This survey covers all kinds of illnesses. These first questions refer to last week and the week before last, that is, the period outlined in red on this card." Hand the respondent the calendar card. (The introductory statement is to be read only once for a family. Do not repeat it for other family members.)

Then ask question 6a: "Were you sick at any time LAST WEEK OR THE WEEK BEFORE?" Add the parenthetical statement "(the 2 weeks shown on that card)" the first time you ask the question of each respondent. After the respondent has heard it once, you may ask question 6a for other members of the family without including the parenthetical phrase, unless you feel that the respondent needs to hear the phrase repeated more often.

If the answer to question 6a is "Yes" and the illness (condition) is not volunteered, ask question 6b, "What was the matter?" If "Yes" to 6a, ask probe question 6c regardless of whether it was necessary to ask question 6b. Continue to ask question 6c until the answer is "No." Then check the "No" box.

Record in question 6, in the column for the person, all conditions reported in answer to questions 6a-6c.

Record as illness whatever the respondent mentions as illness, using his words, not your own.

4. Question 7
Medicine or treatment

Ask question 7a as it is worded, but whenever you have an entry in question 6 for a person, add the parenthetical phrase, "besides ... which you told me about." Question 7 is not intended to obtain information about medicine or treatment taken for the conditions already reported, but rather about conditions for which medicine or treatment is taken. It is not necessary to repeat conditions reported previously.

If the only medicine taken is to prevent an illness from starting or for general well-being, such as vitamins or minerals, question 7 should be checked "No." However, if by not taking the medicine the person would have a flare-up or attack of an illness condition which would otherwise be expected to be dormant, question 7 should be checked "Yes" and the condition recorded.

5. Question 8 Accidents and injuries during last week or the week before

Question 8 covers accidents and injuries happening last week or the week before and is to be asked as worded. Of concern are all sorts of injuries, such as cuts, bruises, burns, poisonings, fractures, strains, sprains, and dislocations. Record separately each injury reported by the respondent.

The word "accidents" together with "injuries" is used in the wording of the question in case some persons may think of "injuries" only in terms of "accidents." Accidents can occur without causing injuries and such accidents should not be reported. On the other hand, not all injuries are accidental, for example, one person attacking another or injuries received in an attack or battle during a war. All injuries are to be recorded whether or not they were caused by accidents.

It is not necessary at this point to find out the full detail of the nature of the injury since this will be obtained later in Table I, but you should record sufficient information to be able to identify it later in Table I.

C. Question 9 Injuries which still bother a person

This question is for reporting the type of effects still bothering the person as a result of "old injuries", i.e., those occurring prior to "last week or the week before." The original injury may have occurred only a few weeks or months ago or, on the other hand, it may have happened many years ago. This question serves

as an additional probe for reporting conditions of interest in this study which persons might fail to mention in answer to earlier questions since they may now be adjusted to them and not look upon them as illness.

It is not necessary that the person suffered ill effects during "last week or the week before" or be suffering from them "now" for the illness condition to be present. If the person is subject to periodic recurring attacks of a condition caused by an old injury, it should be recorded. For example, a person who is subject to recurrent attacks of "foot trouble" due to an old injury had his last attack over a month ago but knows he may have another attack at any time. "Foot trouble" should be recorded in question 9 for such a person.

1. What to record

Record in question 9 the present ill effects experienced, not the injury itself. For example, entries of "stiff shoulder," "pains in arm," etc., describe the present effects and are proper entries for question 9. If the respondent answers only "Yes" or reports the condition only in terms of the original injury, as for example, a broken hip that occurred some time ago, ask the added probe in question 9b: "In what way does it bother you?", then record the present effects. If the injury occurred recently and is not yet healed, e.g., a wrist fractured three weeks ago has not yet healed, the entry should be the injury, e.g., "fractured wrist."

D. Question 10 Conditions List Card A

Question 10 differs from the earlier questions in three major respects:

(1) It covers a twelve-month period.
(2) It involves reading a list of conditions to the respondent (see Card A).
(3) It is asked for all of the family members at one time.

The conditions on Card A are for the purpose of calling the respondent's attention to certain selected chronic conditions which have a fairly high prevalence rate in the population and which might be overlooked by the respondent unless they are causing trouble at the present time.

1. Time reference

The time period referred to in this question is the past 12 months. The past 12 months is defined as the 12 months immediately prior to the week of interview. An easy way to do this is to take "last Sunday's" date and ask about the period from that date a year ago. For example, if "last Sunday's" date was July 5, 1964--then the period you are asking about is July 5, 1963, through July 5, 1964.

2. How to ask the question

In asking question 10, read to the respondent the introductory statement above the question: "Now I am going to read a list of conditions." Then continue: "Please tell me if you, your --, etc., have had any of these conditions DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS?" After a brief pause, follow by reading the Conditions List on Card A to the respondent. Read the list condition by condition, and wait for a reply of "Yes" or "No" to each condition before going on to the next one. This procedure is necessary in order to be sure the respondent has time to think about each of the conditions. This is the only acceptable way for reading the list. If two respondents are present, wait for each to reply to each condition before going on to the next one.

a. Family reference

Question 10 includes a reference to the specific members of the family about whom you are inquiring. In the course of reading the list of conditions, insert the reference to the family members as often as necessary to keep a particular respondent aware of the fact you are asking about other persons as well as about him.

In reading the Conditions List, if you should come to a condition which has been reported previously for any family member, read the name of the condition anyway and add a phrase such as "besides your asthma" or "besides your son's asthma?", etc.

b. Ask about others	If the respondent's reply to a condition is "I have that," "my husband had ..." or a similar response which indicates the respondent may not be reporting about the entire family, after recording the condition ask "Has anyone else in the family had ... DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS?"
c. Repeating question	To help the respondent remember that question 10 applies to all related household members, and also that it refers to a specific period of time, repeat the question whenever it seems appropriate to do so. The question is printed in the heading of Card A as a reminder to you to repeat it as often as necessary.
3. Conditions not present at time of interview	Any condition on the list which the person had at any time during the past 12 months should be reported even if the source of the trouble has been corrected (as in the case of a hernia repair), or removed (as in the case of a tumor operation).
4. Present conditions not causing trouble	The respondent may mention that a member of the household has a certain condition but that the condition hasn't caused trouble in the past 12 months. For example, a person with diabetes which is kept under control through treatment, might not consider that the diabetes has caused trouble but he knows that he still has it. Conditions of this type <u>should</u> be recorded on the questionnaire.
5. Doubts about recording	The words in capital letters are to be emphasized in reading the check list of conditions. However, if the respondent reports "Yes" to a condition do not ask if it is CHRONIC, REPEATED, etc. Assume the respondent heard the condition as read and record it. (It is not necessary to record the word "chronic," etc., unless the respondent specifically says, "Yes, I have chronic bronchitis.") If the respondent mentions a condition but is not sure whether it would be considered "chronic," etc., or adds that he doubts whether we are interested in it, ask "Have you had ... during the past 12 months?" If the answer is "Yes," the condition should be recorded on the questionnaire.

6. Hasn't had condition for 12 months or more

If the respondent mentions that a household member formerly had one of the conditions on the list, but that the condition was cured (e.g., asthma the person had as a child), or that it was corrected by an operation, prior to the past 12 months, it is not to be reported unless it was present at some time during the past 12 months.

7. "Arrested" conditions

When a condition is reported as arrested it means that the person still has the condition but that its progress has been arrested. Such conditions should be reported in question 10. For example, a person who said he has a case of arrested tuberculosis would be checked "Yes" in question 10 and "arrested tuberculosis" would be recorded.

8. Conditions volunteered

Occasionally, when listening to the list of conditions on Card A, a respondent will volunteer a condition not included on the card. Such conditions should be recorded in question 10 provided the conditions were experienced during the last 12 months. However, conditions which are usually temporary or of short duration (such as colds, flu, chicken pox, etc.) should not be recorded unless they started or were present during the past 2 weeks.

9. How to record the answers

Even though question 10 is asked for the family as a whole, you record the answer in the proper column for each person: either a check for "Yes" and an entry of the condition(s), or a check for "No" should appear in each persons's column.

10. What to record

The condition to be recorded in question 10 should be in terms of the respondent's answer. For example, if in answer to your reading the condition, "heart trouble" the respondent should say "I have that," you would record "heart trouble" in question 10. However, if the respondent should say, "I have 'angina'," that is the condition to be recorded in question 10, not "heart trouble." (This rule applies also to question 11.)

E. Question 11 Impairments List Card B

Question 11: "Do you, your--, etc., have any of THESE conditions?" is to be handled in the same manner as question 10, except that question 10

and Card A refer to chronic conditions, question 11 and Card B refer to impairments. All impairments are to be recorded if the person still had them as of "last Sunday night," even though the person may not think of them as illness.

The wording of question 11 serves as a break in the reading of a list of conditions and calls to the attention of the respondent that these are conditions of a different type.

F. Question 12 Other ailments, conditions, or problems with health

Question 12 is to be asked separately for each related household member. This question is a kind of general "clean-up" question and is intended to provide the respondent an opportunity to report here any ailment or condition which had not been mentioned earlier--possibly some that the Check Lists may have called to his mind.

1. Time reference

Question 12 refers to the present time, except that, as with all the health and hospitalization questions, any ailment, condition or problem with health which started after "last Sunday night" is not to be reported.

2. How to ask the question

Ask question 12a as worded, "Do you (does your husband, etc.) have any other ailments, conditions or problems with your health?" Check the box for "Yes" or "No" for each person. If the "Yes" box is checked ask probe question b "What is the condition?" unless it has already been volunteered. Record the condition itself if it is still present. If the condition is no longer present, record the present ill-effects.

Following are some examples of responses to question 12, together with the way each should be handled:

a. In answer to question 12, a respondent reports that her son is subject to frequent nosebleeds. "Nosebleeds" should be recorded as a condition for the son.
b. A respondent reports in answer to question 12 that her mother had a virus infection last fall which hung on for a long time. In reply to your question the respondent says her mother no longer has the infection but it left her with "weak lungs." "Weak lungs" should be recorded for the mother as the present effect of the old condition.

c. In answer to question 12, a respondent reports that she had pneumonia last winter. When you ask if she still has any ill effects from the pneumonia she says no, she recovered from it completely some time ago. Nothing should be recorded since neither the condition nor ill-effects from it are present now.

If "Yes" has been checked in question 12, ask probe question c, "Any other problems with your health?" regardless of whether it was necessary to ask probe question b, and record any problem (condition or effect of old condition) reported. Continue to ask probe question c until an answer of "No" is received, then check the "No" box.

3. Impairments and conditions on Card A

As indicated in the instructions for question 12, for certain conditions you will need to ask additional questions to determine if the condition is still present or if there are any present ill-effects. However, this does not apply to impairments, or conditions on Card **A.** If one of these is reported, it should be entered in question 12 (unless, of course, it had been reported earlier) without trying to determine whether it is "still present" or has left any "present ill-effects.

G. <u>Question 13 Hospitalizations since specified date</u>

Question 13a is to be asked separately for each related household member. Check the box for "Yes" or "No" for each person, and if "Yes" is checked ask question 13b, before asking question 13a for the next person.

A date will have been entered in question 13a on questionnaires prepared for each of your assignments. This date will be the first of the month preceding the month in which the first day of the interviewing week falls. Always use the date on the questionnaire in asking the question. For example, in all interviews being conducted in the week starting Monday, July 6, 1964, you would ask the question "Have you been in a hospital at any time since June first, a year ago?"

Although the survey is primarily concerned with hospitalizations which occurred during the past 12 months, for certain statistical purposes we also need to know about hospitalizations which occurred just prior to the past 12 months. Also, people tend to forget hospitalizations which started prior to the "past 12 months" but which actually extended into the 12-month-period. For these reasons, therefore, the hospitalization question is asked for a period that is slightly longer than 12 months.

If a second questionnaire is needed because there are more than six household members, enter in question 13a the date which is on the first questionnaire before asking the question. If you need to prepare a questionnaire for an "extra" unit, enter in question 13a the date used on other questionnaires for that interview week before asking the question

For each person for whom the answer to question 13a is "Yes," ask 13b, "How many times were you in the hospital during that period?" and enter the number in the column for that person.

1. "Being in a hospital"-defined

If a respondent should ask what you mean by "being in a hospital," explain that this means being hospitalized as an inpatient for some illness condition, for childbirth, for an operation, etc. Going to an outpatient clinic in a hospital or to visit another person who is a patient there should not be counted as "being in a hospital."

2. Nursing homes, rest homes, or similar places

Although only the term "hospital" is used in question 13a, as noted on the questionnaire, any stays reported in nursing homes, rest homes, or similar places are to be included as hospital stays.

"Nursing homes, rest homes, or similar places," mean any type of "home," sanitarium (sanatorium) or institution where patients are apt to remain for long periods of time. These include homes for the aged, convalescent homes, TB sanitariums or TB wards in general hospitals, institutions for the mentally ill, etc. The length of time

the person was a patient in a place of this type does not affect the inclusion of this stay, as long as the person is now a household member by Census definition (see Part A, Chapter 3).

H. Item R
Who Responded

Item R is for the purpose of identifying who responded for the health probe questions 6-13. Check one of the boxes in Item R as follows:

1. Adults

If the adult person responded for questions 6-13 entirely for himself, check the box "Responded for self-entirely." If he responded partly for himself, check the box "Responded for self-partly" and enter the column number of the person who partly responded for him. For adults not present, enter the column number of the person or persons who responded for them.

Consider a person to have responded entirely for himself if he was present during all this part of the interview.

Consider a person to have "Responded for self-partly" if he was present to the extent that one or more of the probe questions was addressed directly to him.

2. Children

For an unmarried person under 19, enter in Item R the column number of the person or persons who responded for him.

3. "At home" but not interviewed

If you have checked the "At home" box for a person in Item H but have not been able to interview him for himself, explain the circumstances in a footnote. This instruction appears in Item R on the questionnaire.

CHAPTER 4.

TABLE I AND TABLE A
ILLNESSES, IMPAIRMENTS, AND INJURIES

A. Table I

1. General procedure

The questions in Table I are to be asked separately for each condition reported in answer to the health probe questions, 6-12.

a. Order of asking questions within Table I

Successive lines of Table I are to be filled in accordance with the following order. Start with the respondent and carry each of his illnesses through Table I, one at a time, beginning with the first one listed in questions 6-12. Continue for each other person in the same manner in the order the person is listed on the questionnaire. See Illustration C on the following page.

b. One line for each condition

Use one line of Table I for each condition. Frequently, two or more closely related conditions will be reported for one person; for example, a person might have heart trouble and high blood pressure. You would use one line for the heart trouble and one for the high blood pressure.

There are five lines in Table I on pages 2 and 3 of the NHS-HIS-1 questionnaire. If more lines are needed for entries in Table I, use the additional lines numbered from 6 to 12 on pages 4 and 5 of the questionnaire. If more than twelve lines are needed, use an additional questionnaire and renumber the first line (pages 2 and 3) number 13, the second line 14, etc.

c. Follow order of questions in Table I

Ask each question in the order specified going across the Table. Headings across certain columns tell you when these questions are to be asked.

2. Column (a) Column number of person

Enter in column (a) the column number of the person for whom the illness, injury or impairment is reported. This entry identifies the person who has the illness and is <u>essential</u> for tabulation purposes. If it is incorrect or has been omitted, all of the related illness information in this line of Table I might be attributed to the wrong person.

Illustration C

Head	Wife	Question	Son
☒ Yes ① ☒ No	☐ Yes ② ☒ No		☐ Yes ③ ☒ No
Cold		6.	
☐ Yes ☒ No	☐ Yes ☒ No	7.	☒ Yes ☒ No
			Diabetes
☐ Yes ☒ No	☐ Yes ☒ No	8.	☐ Yes ☒ No
☐ Yes ☒ No	☒ Yes ☒ No	9.	☐ Yes ☒ No
	Stiff elbow		
☒ Yes ☐ No	☐ Yes ☒ No	10	☐ Yes ☒ No
Bronchitis			
☐ Yes ☒ No	☒ Yes ☐ No	11.	☐ Yes ☒ No
	Deafness		
☐ Yes ☒ No	☐ Yes ☒ No	12.	☐ Yes ☒ No

— Column #2 was the respondent

Table I

Line number	Card No. (Person)	Question No.	Did you ever AT ANY TIME talk to a doctor about your ...?	If a condition is on Card C, enter [illegible] without asking [illegible] through (d-f) and [illegible] to columns (e) – (f). For all other illnesses and the present effects of Polio courses — — If doctor talk[illegible] What did the doctor say it was — did he give [illegible] a medical name? — If doctor NOT talked to, record original [illegible] ask (d-2) — (d-2) [illegible] recorded. For all injuries — which happened LAST WEEK OR THE WEEK BEFORE, ask: What part of the body was hurt? What kind of injury was it? (For injuries or accidents which happened before the past 2 weeks, enter the present effects.) (d-1)
	(a)	(b)	(c)	
1	2	9	☒ Yes ☐ No	Stiff elbow
2	2	11	☒ Yes ☐ No	Deafness
3	1	6	☐ Yes ☒ No	Cold
4	1	10	☒ Yes ☐ No	Bronchitis
5	3	7	☒ Yes ☐ No	Diabetes

The column number to be entered for a person listed on the first questionnaire for a household is the column number printed on the questionnaire, even if one or more columns have been deleted. For persons listed on additional questionnaires because all six columns on the first questionnaire have been filled (even if some are deleted), enter the column number as you have changed it, i.e., 7, 8, or 9, etc.

3. Column (b) Question number

Enter the number of the question from which the condition was first obtained.

a. Conditions not picked up by questions 6-12

When conditions not picked up by questions 6-12 are reported later in the interview, show in column (b) where such conditions were first reported; for example, "Table II." (Do not add conditions of this type to questions 6-12.)

4. Column (c) "doctor ever talked to"

"Did you ever AT ANY TIME talk to a doctor about your ...?" is to be asked for each condition reported. Check "Yes" or "No" in this column according to the response obtained. When interviewing a household respondent for other adult members of the household, obviously you would substitute for the words "you" and "your" the proper words to indicate the person referred to. In the case of children, substitute the phrase "Did anyone ever AT ANY TIME talk to a doctor about --'s (your daughter Jane's, your son John's) ...?"

a. "Doctor talked to"--defined

"Talking to" a doctor about a condition includes both seeing a doctor and consulting a doctor by telephone.

Consider as "talking to a doctor" a visit by the person to the doctor or a visit by the doctor to the person. If the doctor pays a visit to the household to see one patient and while there examines or visits professionally another member of the household, a single visit may be counted as "doctor ever talked to" by each individual for each condition receiving the doctor's attention. For the purpose of column (c) talking to or seeing a doctor in a clinic or at a hospital (including as an outpatient) are to be considered as talking to a doctor.

Consider as "talking to a doctor" any telephone calls to the doctor's office that involve receiving suggestions for treatment or advice from the doctor even if they are transmitted through the nurse and the doctor wasn't spoken to directly.

Consider talking about the condition to a family member who is also a doctor as talking to a doctor ("Yes" in col. (c)). Also, if the person who had the condition is himself a doctor and he followed his own treatment or advice, this should be reported as doctor "talked to" in column (c).

Exclude telephone calls made to the doctor's office only for the purpose of making appointments.

b. Chronic conditions

For chronic conditions, such as the type shown on Card A or impairments, the question in column (c) refers to any time a doctor was seen since the condition started. For example, a person might not consult a doctor every time he experienced an occurrence (attack) of the trouble. Such cases would be checked "Yes" in col. (c) if a doctor had been consulted for the trouble AT ANY TIME.

c. Non-chronic conditions

In the case of non-chronic conditions such as colds, virus, etc., the question in column (c) refers to whether a doctor was talked to at any time about that particular condition (cold, virus) which was experienced last week or the week before. The question in column (c) does not refer to talking to a doctor about previous attacks of colds, virus, or other non-chronic conditions.

d. Type of doctor--defined

For the purposes of column (c), consulting MD's, osteopaths or dentists (for dental conditions) will be considered as talking to a doctor but consulting chiropractors, chiropodists, podiatrists, naturopaths, Christian Science healers or other types of people giving medical care will not be counted. However, do not make special inquiry about the kind of doctor consulted. It is not intended that you tell the respondent the survey definition of who is considered a doctor. For example, if a person said in answer to the question in column (c), "I saw a chiropractor--do you consider him a doctor?", you would not need to answer "Yes" or "No" but tell him we are interested in any doctor he may have talked to. Continue at once to

the next question, "What did the doctor say it was-- did he give it a medical name?", and check "No" in column (c) for the condition about which a chiropractor was seen.

Record in column (d-1) what the chiropractor said it was even though you have checked "No" in column (c).

Opticians and optometrists do not hold M.D. degrees. However, an oculist is an old-fashioned term for ophthalmologist, and ophthalmologists do hold M.D. degrees and are to be counted as doctors.

B. Table I Columns (d-1) through (d-4)

For purposes of analysis, all illnesses and injuries reported will be translated into medical codes. Since the coding system to be used provides for over 1500 different conditions, it is essential that the descriptions on the questionnaire be as complete and detailed as you can make them.

The best description of an illness is its exact medical title. Names of illnesses given by respondents are often sufficient to permit medical coding. This is true of the specified conditions listed on Card C in your flashcard booklet. As noted on Card C and on the questionnaire it is not necessary to ask the questions in columns (d-1) through (d-4) for these conditions.

However, the statements of respondents do not always give a complete description of the condition. When the respondent does not know the exact medical title of the illness, one or more of three different kinds of information generally need to be obtained.

1. A specific description of what the trouble was, that is, the specific kind of trouble.

2. The respondent's statement of the cause, or note that the respondent does not know the cause.

3. The part of the body affected.

When a doctor has been talked to about an illness the question in column (d-1), "What did the doctor say it was--did he give it a medical name?" is always to be asked (except for the conditions on Card C and current injuries), and constitutes the first step toward getting an adequate entry. Regardless of whether or not a doctor was talked to, the respondent's first statement may not give a complete description of the illness condition. The questions in columns (d-2) through (d-4) are for the purpose of supplying the additional information needed.

The "x" which appears on the right side of each of columns (d-2), (d-3), and (d-4) is to be circled whenever the question does not need to be asked. The question does not need to be asked when the information you would expect to obtain by asking it already appears in an earlier column of Table I. As noted above, columns (d-2) through (d-4) do not need to be asked for conditions on Card C.

1. Column (d-1) Asking the question

For conditions on Card C, enter the probe question entry in column (d-1) without asking the question. For all other conditions, ask column (d-1), "What did the doctor say it was--did he give it a medical name?" exactly as worded for each illness condition about which a doctor was talked to ("Yes" in column (c)). As stated on the questionnaire, this question is also to be asked for present effects of "old" injuries, i.e., those which happened prior to last week or the week before. For injuries which happened during last week or the week before do not ask "What did the doctor say it was--," ask instead "What part of the body was hurt? What kind of injury was it?" This instruction together with the question appears in the lower part of the heading over column (d-1). See the instructions in paragraph B-1-e below.

If a doctor was not talked to about an illness condition ("No" in column (c)), do not ask the

question over column (d-1), but instead enter in column (d-1) the original entry from the question (6-12).

a. Recording name of condition

Enter in column (d-1) whatever the respondent tells you the doctor said, using the respondent's own words. If the medical name given by the respondent is one which is unfamiliar to you, ask him to spell it for you. If the exact spelling is not known, record it phonetically but also ask the respondent to describe how it affects him and record the description in a footnote. In this way it may be possible to apply the medical codes when the spelling is poor.

b. Vague or incomplete description

Your entry in column (d-1) and its related columns (d-2) through (d-4) should represent the most complete description of the condition the respondent can give you. Therefore, if the respondent does not know the medical name or if his answer is vague, if a more complete description was given in answer to one of questions 6-12 than given in answer to the question in column (d-1), copy the pertinent details of the first answer to the space in column (d-1); or ask the respondent how it affects him and record the description in a footnote.

c. Accidents or injuries-entry in column (d-1)

The entry to be made in column (d-1) for accidents or injuries depends on whether the injury happened during the past two weeks or before that time. Therefore, at this point, if it isn't clear when the injury occurred ask additional questions to find out if it occurred last week or the week before or prior to that time.

(1) Injury happened in last two weeks

For injuries which happened during "last week or the week before," column (d-1) is for recording the nature of the injury and the part of the body affected at the time the injury occurred.

(2) Injury happened prior to last two weeks

For injuries or accidents happening prior to last week or the week before, column (d-1) is for recording the present effects of the original injury. (It is not the place for recording the original injury itself which will be recorded in Table A on the back page of the questionnaire.)

In the case of an injury which happened earlier but has not yet healed, the original injury is to be entered in column (d-1), since the original injury is still present. For example, in the case of a fractured hip occurring four weeks prior to the interview, the entry "fractured hip" is appropriate in column (d-1) if the fracture has not yet healed. For these cases, indicate in a footnote that the injury has not yet healed.

d. Injuries--defined

There are many kinds of injuries, such as cuts, bruises, etc. "Insect stings," "animal bites," "sunburn," "sun poisoning," "heat or sun strokes," "blisters," "frostbite," etc., are also considered as injuries.

(1) Poisonings

Illnesses resulting from poisoning also count as injuries. A poisoning can occur from eating, drinking, breathing or coming in contact with some poisonous substance or gas. Poisoning also may occur from an overdose of a substance that is non-poisonous when taken in normal doses.

Such occurrences are considered injuries (and Table A is required) whether or not the illness was from a one-time occurrence or was the result of continued exposure.

Note: Sometimes the words "poison" or "poisoning" are used to describe conditions which are classified as diseases or illnesses and not as injuries, e.g., "poison oak," "poison ivy," "ptomaine or food poisoning." These do not require a Table A.

(2) Continued exposure

Except for poisonings (see above), exposure to heavy lifting, loud noise, and other similar hazards are considered injuries only when they are one-time occurrences. For example, a punctured eardrum resulting from a loud explosion would be considered an injury, but continued exposure to loud noises at work resulting in partial deafness would not be considered an injury. For the latter case, do not fill a Table A, but footnote the entry in column (d-1) or (d-2) to state that the condition was caused by continued exposure to loud noises at work. Follow the same procedure if cause is continued heavy lifting, continued strain, etc.

e. Adequate reporting of nature of injury for column (d-1)

For injuries which occurred "last week or the week before," the entry in column (d-1) should specify the exact nature of the injury sustained and not how the accident itself happened. General, vague answers such as "hit," "bumped," "mashed," etc., are not acceptable since they do not provide sufficient information on the nature of the injury. (In addition to the exact nature of the injury, the specific part of body affected must also be recorded. See paragraph B-4 below.) Following are some examples of adequate and inadequate nature of injury entries:

Adequate Nature of Injury	Inadequate Nature of Injury
knee fractured	lower back hurt
lower back strained	toe mashed
scalp cut	foot crushed
brain concussion	knee smashed
hip dislocated	eye hit
toe fractured	upper arm mangled
bones in foot broken	hand injured
upper arm cut and bruised	ankle swelled
neck whiplash	head bumped
ankle sprained	fell downstairs
foot bruised[1]	broken blood vessel in foot

[1]caused broken blood vessel

If the respondent cannot supply the exact nature of the injury, as required above, record his description but also add "DK exact nature of injury."

(1) Internal injuries

For injuries to internal organs it is only necessary to know the name of the organ injured, such as "injury to liver," "spleen injured." For the purpose of this survey, "internal organs" are those inside the chest, abdomen and pelvis.

(2) Something entering body

For something entering the body through the eye, ear, nose, etc., that caused trouble, the entry should show the object causing the trouble, where the object entered the body and where it lodged. For example, "swallowed fish bone, stuck in throat," "cinder in eye," etc.

(3) Poisonings

For all poisonings show the substance or agent, and the manner in which the person was poisoned, e.g., "swallowed overdose of aspirin," "breathed carbon monoxide," "lye burned hand."

(4) Multiple injuries

A single accident may result in one or more kinds of injuries. Only one line should be filled in Table I for current injuries from a single accident, but column (d-1) should include a proper description of each specific injury, for example, "fractured ankle and dislocated shoulder," "loss of eye--6 ribs broken--fractured skull." If the space is not sufficient in (d-1) for an adequate description, continue the entry in the footnote space.

(5) "Current" injury causes impairment

If a "current" injury results in an impairment, both the injury and the impairment should be recorded in the appropriate columns (d-1) through (d-4) on the same line of Table I. For example, if a person broke his lower back "last week"

and this resulted in immediate paralysis of both entire legs, you would enter in (d-1) through (d-4) "Paralysis of both entire legs caused by broken lower back." Similarly, if a person was blinded in one eye by a knife cut, you would record "Blind in one eye--eyecut." If the space is not sufficient, continue the entry in a footnote. Consider these as a single entry in asking columns (e)-(p) of Table I. However, since the injury involved an impairment, you would continue beyond column (aa) for the impairment, even though the injury happened during the past 2 weeks.

2. Column (d-2) Cause of condition

When the entry in column (d-1) is an impairment or a symptom or any entry from questions 9 or 11 except conditions on Card C, the question "What was the cause of ...?" is to be asked unless the cause has already been recorded in column (d-1). If the question in column (d-2) is not to be asked, circle "X" on the line for that condition.

a. Impairment--defined

An impairment may be the result of a disease or illness, or it may be from an injury the person has received, or it may be a defect present since birth. The cause of the impairment must be obtained so that it will be possible to distinguish between these three main sources of impairments.

As defined for this survey, an impairment consists of:

(1) Any of the conditions on Card B
(2) Loss of one or both eyes, loss of breast, loss of kidney or lung
(3) Mental deficiency or retardation

(Note: Any seeing or hearing "trouble" or "trouble" with back or limbs are to be considered as on Card B, regardless of the question in answer to which they were reported.)

(1) Entries from question 9 or 11

Whether or not they fall under the definition of impairments as given on page D-66, column (d-2) is to be asked for all entries in column (d-1) which came from question 9 or 11, except for conditions on Card C. (This instruction also appears in the heading of column (d-2), as a reminder.)

b. Symptom--defined

Generally speaking, "symptoms" are signs of diseases and when a person has symptoms he is said to be ill. The term "disease" refers to the underlying condition causing the symptoms. Because symptoms are only signs and because certain symptoms, such as backache or headache, may be produced by more than one condition, just reporting the symptom is not a sufficient entry. An upset stomach, for example, is a symptom of some condition,--it could be from a virus or from food eaten or it could have an emotional basis, etc.

Card D in your flashcard booklet contains a list of symptoms arranged in alphabetical order which, together with their synonyms, is to be considered a complete list for the purposes of the survey. When you are in doubt as to whether the entry in column (d-1) is a symptom, refer to this list.

(1) Synonyms of symptoms on Card D

There are certain symptoms not listed on Card D which are clearly synonymous with the symptoms which are listed. For example, "running a temperature" is not listed but "fever" is and these are clearly synonymous. In the case of symptoms clearly synonymous with those on Card D, column (d-2) is also to be asked.

c. Amount of detail required for impairments and symptoms in column (d-2)

The amount of detail required for column (d-2) is the same as for column (d-1). If the answer to the question in column (d-2) is an impairment or a symptom, column (d-2) should be asked again for the cause of the impairment or symptom reported in column (d-2).

Examples:

(d-1)	(d-2)
deformed lower leg	paralysis stroke
headache	upset stomach DK

The entry of "DK" (for "don't know") shows the interviewer has recognized "upset stomach" as a second symptom and has asked column (d-2) again in an attempt to obtain the cause of the upset stomach.

d. Illustration D

Illustration D on the following page shows some examples of entries in columns (d-1) and (d-2). Column 2 is the respondent in this illustration.

3. Column (d-3) Kind of trouble

With respect to the medical coding requirements for certain illness conditions, the entries in column (d-1) or (d-2) do not always show the exact kind of condition the person has. For example, "heart trouble," "kidney trouble," and "stomach trouble" are all general terms which mention trouble with a specific part or organ of the body but they are not specific as to the kind of trouble. Thus, heart trouble might be of several different kinds--angina, coronary, rheumatic heart, heart leakage, etc.; kidney trouble could apply to kidney stones, nephritis, bladder infection, etc.; stomach trouble could refer to any number of digestive disturbances, for example, ulcers, appendicitis, intestinal flu, etc., and in column (d-3), we want to give the respondent an opportunity to provide this more specific information.

Illustration D

	Question	
☐ Yes ① ☒ No	☒ Yes ② ☐ No Nervousness 6.	☒ Yes ③ ☒ No Diarrhea
☒ Yes Indigestion ☒ No	☐ Yes ☒ No 7.	☐ Yes ☒ No
☐ Yes ☒ No	☐ Yes ☒ No 8.	☒ Yes Hurt knee ☒ No
☒ Yes Back trouble ☒ No	☒ Yes Eye trouble ☒ No 9.	☐ Yes ☒ No
☐ Yes ☒ No	☐ Yes ☒ No 10.	☐ Yes ☒ No
☐ Yes ☒ No	☒ Yes Withered arm ☐ No 11.	☒ Yes Squint in one eye ☐ No
☒ Yes Hepatitis ☒ No	☐ Yes ☒ No 12.	☐ Yes ☒ No

Table I

Col. No. of person (a)	Question No. (b)	Did you ever AT ANY TIME talk to a doctor about your . . . ? (c)	If condition is on Card C, enter condition without asking columns (d-1) through (d-4) and go to columns (e)–(f). For all other illnesses and present effects of "old" injuries – – If doctor talked to, ask: What did the doctor say it was – did he give it a medical name? – If doctor NOT talked to, record original entry and ask (d-2) – (d-4) as required. For all injuries which happened LAST WEEK OR THE WEEK BEFORE, ask: What part of the body was hurt? What kind of injury was it? For injuries or accidents which happened before the past 2 weeks, enter the present effects. (d-1)	CAUSE If the entry in col. (d-1) is An IMPAIRMENT or a SYMPTOM or came from Question 9 or 11, ask: What was the cause of . . . ? (If "Cause" is an injury, enter "Accident" or "Injury" and fill Table A.) (d-2)
2	6	☒ Yes ☐ No	Nervousness	Menopause
2	9	☒ Yes ☐ No	Blind in one eye	Accident
2	11	☒ Yes ☐ No	Atrophy of muscles in one arm	Poliomyelitis
1	7	☐ Yes ☒ No	Indigestion	Nerves – DK
1	9	☒ Yes ☐ No	Back trouble	Spinal injury
1	12	☒ Yes ☐ No	Hepatitis	O
3	6	☒ Yes ☐ No	Diarrhea	DK
3	8	☐ Yes ☒ No	Bruised knee	O
3	11	☒ Yes ☐ No	Squint in one eye	DK

a. When to ask column (d-3)

There are four illness conditions printed in the heading of column (d-3) for which the question "What kind of ... is it?" is to be asked. These conditions are "asthma," "cyst," "growth," and "tumor." This question is also to be asked if column (d-1) or column (d-2) contain the words "trouble," "condition," or "disease," which are vague descriptions. (This instruction also appears in the heading of column (d-3).)

If the respondent's first answer indicates that he does not understand what information is desired, re-ask column (d-3), emphasizing the word "kind." If the respondent does not know the specific kind, record what he does say about it and also enter "kind DK."

b. How to ask column (d-3) for allergies, strokes

When "allergy" or "stroke" has been reported in the column (d-1) or (d-2), ask column (d-3) but use alternate wording printed in the heading of column (d-3), namely:

"How does the allergy affect you?"
or
"How does the stroke affect you?"

(If the effect of "allergy" or "stroke" in column (d-2) has been given in column (d-1), column (d-3) does not need to be asked.)

(1) Description for allergies and strokes

For allergies and for strokes the information needed is not "kind of trouble" but how the disease affects the person--that is, what the manifestations are. For example, in the case of an allergy, the person may have been affected with a swelling in some part of the body, with a breaking out or itching, with sneezing, eyes watering and nasal trouble or trouble with breathing, etc.

In the case of a stroke the manifestation might be, for example, "nervous tic on left side of face," "entire right leg and arm paralized," "speech difficulty," etc. Note that for a stroke, the information needed is how the person is affected now, not necessarily how he was affected at the time of the stroke.

4. Column (d-4) Part of body affected

Column (d-4) is to be asked only for certain specified types of conditions. These are listed in the heading of column (d-4) and also appear in paragraph 4-a below.

Ask column (d-4) unless one of the entries in column (d-1), (d-2), or (d-3) contains the required description of the part of the body which is affected. Circle the "X" in column (d-4) if "part of body" is not required at all or has been entered in a previous column.

a. Conditions for which column (d-4) must be asked

The conditions for which the "part of body" must always be shown--either in column (d-4) or one of the previous columns are:

(1) All impairments
(2) "Current" injuries (those happening last week or the week before)
(3) Present effects of "old" injuries
(4) Certain conditions and symptoms, as follows:

Abscess	Cyst	Pain
Ache (except headache)	Growth	Sore
	Hemorrhage	Soreness
Bleeding	Infection	Tumor
Blood clot	Inflammation	Ulcer
Boil	Neuralgia	Weak
Cancer	Neuritis	Weakness

b. Detail needed

For certain parts of the body more detail is needed than for others. Whenever column (d-4) is required, the specific parts of the body for which more detailed specification is needed are the ear or eye, head, back, arm, or leg. These are listed in the heading of column (d-4) together with the type of specific detail that is required.

Other detailed entries besides those listed are acceptable, for example, "finger," "toe," "arch," "neck," etc. If an entire arm or leg is affected, state that this is so by entries such as "one entire arm" or "one whole leg"; do not simply enter "arm" or "leg."

If the part of the body affected is the eye or ear, or any part of the arm or leg, ask whether <u>one</u> or <u>both</u> are affected. The use of the singular or plural is acceptable except in those cases where the use of the singular or plural does not show specifically whether one or both are affected. For example, in the case of "eye infection" or "deafness" an entry of "one" or "both" (eyes or ears) must be made.

c. Illustration E

See Illustration E on page D-73, for examples of entries in columns (d-1)-(d-4) of Table I.

5. Condition to which remaining questions refer

The most specific description of a condition is considered the "main condition" and is the one which should be asked about for the remaining questions in Table I. For example, if a symptom has been reported in column (d-1) but the entry in column (d-2) is a condition on Card A or some other condition that usually last for a long time, that is present now or was present at any time during the past 12 months, it is the condition to which the remaining questions should refer. If the condition in column (d-2) was not present at any time during the past 12 months, the questions in Table I should refer to

NHS-HIS-100
FY 1965

Illustration E includes examples of some conditions properly reported in columns (d-1) through (d-4).

Illustration E
Table I

Line number	Col. No. of person (a)	Question No. (b)	Did you ever AT ANY TIME talk to a doctor about your . . .? (c)	If condition is on Card C, enter condition without asking columns (d-1) through (d-4) and go to columns (e)–(f). For all other illnesses and present effects of "old" injuries – If doctor talked to, ask: What did the doctor say it was – did he give it a medical name? – If doctor NOT talked to, record original entry and ask (d-2)–(d-4) as required. For all injuries which happened LAST WEEK OR THE WEEK BEFORE, ask: What part of the body was hurt? What kind of injury was it? (For injuries or accidents which happened before the past 2 weeks, enter the present effects.) (d-1)	CAUSE: If the entry in col. (d-1) is An IMPAIRMENT or a SYMPTOM or came from Question 9 or 11, ask: What was the cause of . . .? (If "Cause" is an injury, enter "Accident" or "Injury" and fill Table A.) (d-2)	KIND: For any entry in col. (d-1) or col. (d-2) that includes the words: Allergy*, Asthma, Cyst, Growth, Stroke*, Tumor, "Condition", "Disease", "Trouble" – ask: What kind of . . . is it? *For an ALLERGY or STROKE, ask: How does the allergy (stroke) affect you? (d-3)	PART OF BODY: Ask only for: IMPAIRMENTS, "CURRENT" INJURIES, and PRESENT EFFECTS OF "OLD" INJURIES. And for: Abscess, Ache (except headache), Bleeding, Blood clot, Boil, Cancer, Cyst, Growth, Hemorrhage, Infection, Inflammation, Neuralgia, Neuritis, Pain, Sore, Soreness, Tumor, Ulcer, Weak, Weakness. What part of the body is affected? Show detail for: Ear or eye – (one or both); Head – (skull, scalp, face); Back – (upper, middle, lower); Arm – (shoulder, upper, elbow, lower, wrist, hand; one or both); Leg – (hip, upper, knee, lower, ankle, foot; one or both) (d-4)
1	2	10	☒ Yes ☐ No	Asthma		Bronchial	
2	2	11	☒ Yes ☐ No	Back trouble	Accident	Slipped disc	Upper back
3	1	6	☒ Yes ☐ No	Bleeding from nose	High blood pressure		
4	1	10	☒ Yes ☐ No	Stroke		Partial blindness	One eye
5	1	10	☒ Yes ☐ No	Allergy		Eyes water	
6	3	6	☒ Yes ☐ No	Heart trouble		Coronary	L'
7	3	7	☒ Yes ☐ No	Pains in chest	Coronary heart		L'

FOOTNOTES AND COMMENTS

L' Same conditions – Line 6 carried across remainder of Table I.

the condition (symptom) in column (d-1). Explain the circumstances in column (d-2) or in a footnote in such a case. (See illustration of "sore leg" and "varicose veins" below.)

An impairment, regardless of the column in which it is recorded, is the condition to which the remaining columns should refer.

Current effects from old injuries are to have the remaining columns asked about them, not the injury itself.

In the examples below, the asterisk (*) shows the condition to which the remaining columns apply:

(d-1)	(d-2)	(d-3)	(d-4)
stomach trouble	(X)	stomach ulcer*	(X)
backache	loss of kidney* from accident	(X)	(X)
curvature of spine*	arthritis	(X)	Middle and upper
sore leg*	varicose veins[1]	(X)	one lower leg

[1]varicose veins removed 2 years ago

a. Re-ask column (c) if "No"

If the "main condition" being carried across Table I is different from the condition entered in column (d-1), and the "No" box is checked in column (c) for that condition, ask column (c) about the "main condition" and correct column (c) if "Yes."

C. Types of reporting problems

The following paragraphs call attention to some conditions that may cause reporting problems particularly with respect to whether or not they should be included if they are reported by the respondent.

1. Dental conditions	Do not report filling of cavities in the teeth as such, but report the toothache or other symptoms together with their causes. Also, report all diseases of the mouth and jaws--including pyorrhea, abscesses, and boils. If teeth were pulled or other dental surgery performed, report it, giving the name of the disease or condition that necessitated the pulling of the teeth or surgery.
2. Pregnancy and childbirth	Normal pregnancy is not to be considered as illness. Complications of pregnancy, if considered by the respondent as illness, should be reported as such. Delivery or childbirth, even when normal, should be reported for the mother in Table I if it occurred last week or the week before since this condition involves bed days and usually hospitalization. In recording a delivery either state that it is normal or that there were complications. If there were complications, enter "delivery" and also a description of the complications in columns (d-1) through (d-4) of Table I. Do not record "pregnancy" if you mean "normal delivery" or "childbirth." Childbirth during the last two weeks need not be reported for the baby in Table I, unless there were birth complications for the baby or the baby had some other illness. For these kinds of cases enter the specific condition; do not enter just "birth."
3. Menstruation and menopause	Normal menstruation is not illness. However, if the respondent reports that menstruation is abnormal or caused illness this should be recorded, for example: excessive or slight "flow," delayed or painful menstruation, or frequent or irregular menstruation. Any menopausal symptoms mentioned should be included as illness.

4. Cysts, tumors or other growths	Cysts, tumors, and other growths can be either malignant (cancerous) or benign (non-cancerous). The questions in column (d-1) and/or column (d-3) may obtain this information and it is anticipated that they will. If they do not, however, do <u>not</u> ask the respondent if the growth was malignant.
5. Illness resulting from vaccination, immunization, etc.	Vaccination and immunization in themselves are not illnesses. However, they may cause temporary illness with such symptoms as fever, headaches, etc. Illness resulting from vaccination or immunization should be reported as in the following example: "Fever and headache" in column (d-1); and "smallpox vaccination" in column (d-2).
6. Mental illness	All mental illnesses that are mentioned by the respondent should be recorded on the questionnaire. Try especially to get the medical term if known by the respondent.
7. Names of operations	If the only description the respondent gives of an illness is the name of an operation, ask what the condition was that made it necessary to have the operation and record it in column (d-1). Also, record the present effects, if any, that cause illness.
8. Reaction to drugs	If the respondent reports as an illness in the past 2 weeks a reaction to drugs taken, three things should be reported--the reaction, the drug, and the reason for taking the drug. For example, "skin rash-penicillin-virus."
9. Illnesses occurring in past 12 months not now present	For chronic conditions, such as those on Card A, experienced during the past 12 months which the person no longer has (for example, a hernia which has been repaired or a tumor which has been removed) show what the trouble was at the time the person had the condition.

10. Illnesses, etc., starting after "last Sunday night"

For the purposes of this survey, no illness, hospitalization or other health-related event starting (or first occurring) after "last Sunday night" should be recorded on the questionnaire. If you have recorded something of this kind and afterwards learn that it should not have been recorded, delete or correct the entry as appropriate and explain the deletion in a footnote. This rule does not apply to household membership (see Part A, Chapter 3) or personal characteristics such as age, marital status or membership in the Armed Forces, all of which apply as of the time of interview.

11. Conditions first reported in Table I

A condition first reported in columns (d-2) through (d-4) of Table I which becomes the "main condition" for that line, or which is closely related to the condition in column (d-1), is not to be recorded on a separate line of Table I. For example, "loss of kidney" first reported in column (d-2) as the cause of "backache" in (d-1) would be the "main condition" on that line but would not be recorded on a separate line of Table I.

If an impairment or a condition on Card A is first reported in columns (d-2) through (d-4) but is not the "main condition" on that line, it should be recorded on a separate line and carried across Table I if it is present now or was present at any time during the past 12 months. For example, "arthritis" first reported in column (d-2) as the cause of "curvature of spine" in (d-1) would not be the "main condition" on that line but should be recorded on a separate line and carried across Table I if it is present now or was present at any time during the past 12 months. If such a condition was not present during the past 12 months, explain in a footnote why you have not recorded it separately.

12. Conditions reported later in interview

The questionnaire is designed to bring out by the probe questions 6-12 and Table I all conditions the person has. However, it may happen that a chronic condition (on Card A) or an impairment will be first reported in Table II or questions 16 and 17. Such conditions are to be carried back to Table I. See the instructions in Part D, Chapter 5 for Table II, and in Part D, Chapter 6 for questions 16 and 17.

Conditions first reported later than question 17 in the interview are <u>not</u> to be carried back to Table I, but are to be recorded in footnotes. For example, if in answer to question 20b the respondent should report that he quit smoking six months ago because of his bronchial condition, and this had not been reported earlier, you should footnote the entry for question 20b, and enter in the footnote: "Quit smoking 6 months ago because of bronchial condition -- not in Table I."

13. Birth injuries

Birth injuries to either the mother or the child do not require a Table A. However, you should make sure that the injury occurred during the act of delivery, not later. Injuries occurring after birth, even if while still in the hospital, require Table A.

14. Broken eardrum

A "broken (perforated) (ruptured) eardrum" may be caused by an accident or injury or may be due to some other cause, such as a childhood disease. Always ask what caused the broken eardrum. If the cause was an accident or injury, fill Table A. If the cause was other than an accident or injury, or if the respondent does not know the cause, no Table A is needed but the circumstances should be explained in Table I or in a footnote to column (d-2).

15. Uncertain injuries

If the respondent does not know whether a condition or impairment was caused by an accident or injury, or cannot recall such an occurrence when an accident is indicated, do not fill Table A. Explain the circumstances in a footnote to Table I, e.g., "Doctor says probably caused by blow on head but respondent cannot recall such an occurrence happening."

16. Conditions reported separately which may be the same

When conditions which may be the same are reported separately in answer to questions 6-12, record each one on a separate line of Table I. Follow this rule even though the conditions may be related in the respondent's mind or in yours.

a. Caution about deciding two conditions are the same

Under no circumstances are you to attempt to diagnose conditions or to make decisions that two conditions are the same because you yourself have the impression that they should be. It is only when the respondent indicates that they are the same by his answers to columns (d-1) through (d-4) that you are to consider that they are the same.

b. Procedure for conditions which are reported to be the same

In asking the questions in columns (d-1) through (d-4) for two or more conditions, if the respondent says that one condition is the same as another condition, follow this procedure:

(1) Leave in Table I the separate entries in columns (d-1) through (d-4) for each condition reported but put a footnote symbol in column (d-4) on the lines affected and state in the footnote that the conditions are the same.

(2) Since you will already have taken the first condition through all columns of Table I, do not ask the remaining questions for the other condition or conditions <u>which have been reported as being the same</u>. See Illustration E.

D. <u>Table A</u>

Table A is for the purpose of obtaining additional facts about three types of cases:

1. Injuries or poisonings occurring "last week or the week before."

2. Injuries or poisonings which occurred <u>prior</u> to "last week or the week before" which caused ill-effects that are still present.

3. Injuries or poisonings which occurred prior to "last week or the week before" which have caused impairments.

Table A is to be filled immediately after completing columns (d-1) through (d-4) and before asking the remaining columns of Table I.

For group 1, questions 3-5 of Table A will be asked. Questions 1 and 2 will not be asked since the date of the injury and the nature of the injury will be recorded in Table I.

For groups 2 and 3 all of the questions in Table A will be asked about the injuries, since Table I will have recorded only the present effects of earlier injuries or the present impairment.

If an impairment or the present effects of an old injury are the result of more than one accident, fill a separate Table A for each accident. If two or more persons are injured in the same accident, fill a separate Table A for each.

If space for three or more injuries or poisonings is needed for a household, use one or more additional questionnaires for this purpose. Do not use the footnote space for recording accidents or injuries.

1. Information from Table I

Enter the number of the line in Table I on which the accident, injury or poisoning or the present effects or impairment from an earlier injury or poisoning are listed.

If a single "current" accident resulted in multiple injuries, all of these should have been recorded on a single line of Table I, and that line number would be recorded in Table A. If a single "old" accident has resulted in more than one "present effect" which are recorded on separate lines of Table I, enter all of these (e.g., 2, 3, and 4) as the "Line No. from Table I" for that Table A.

2. Questions 1 and 2

Questions 1 and 2 are to be asked only for accidents or injuries which happened prior to "last week or the week before."

For accidents which occurred during the past two weeks do not ask questions 1 and 2, but check the box "Accident happened last week or week before" and skip to question 3a.

a. Question 1 When it happened

Ask question 1 for all injuries or poisonings which occurred prior to "last week or the week before."

Record the month and the year if the injury or poisoning occurred in 1963, 1964, or 1965. Only the year needs to be recorded if the accident occurred prior to 1963.

b. Question 2 Nature of injury and part of body

Ask question 2 of Table A for all injuries or poisonings which occurred prior to "last week or the week before." The entries for part of body and nature of the injury require the same amount of detail as for entries in columns (d-1) through (d-4) of Table I. Follow the same instructions given in paragraphs B-1-e and B-4-b when filling this question.

If more than one part of body was injured, be sure to identify the injury to each part of body. Example:

upper leg	bruised
ankle	fractured

3. Question 3a Motor vehicle involved in accident

Ask question 3a for each injury unless the answer is clear from the information already given. In that case check the proper box without asking question 3a. If the answer to question 3a is "No," go to question 4.

a. Motor vehicle defined

A motor vehicle is any mechanically or electrically powered device, not operated on rails, upon which or by which any person or property may be transported or drawn upon a land highway. A land highway is any street, road, path, etc., (either public or private) which is customarily used for vehicular traffic. Any object such as a trailer, coaster, sled, or wagon attached to a motor vehicle is considered a part of the motor vehicle.

Motor vehicles include cars, busses, trucks, fire engines, motorcycles, motorized bicycles, motorized scooters and trolleys not operating on rails. In addition, farm machinery, construction machinery, tractors and army tanks are considered motor vehicles only when in transport, under their own power, on a land highway. Devices used solely for moving persons or materials within the confines of a building or its premises are not considered motor vehicles.

Some respondents may think of certain non-motor vehicles such as trains, streetcars or bicycles as motor vehicles and report accidents involving those vehicles as "Yes" answers to question 3a. Be careful that such accidents are recorded as "No" in question 3a on the questionnaire.

b. Involvement not restricted to collision

Check "Yes" for each accident involving a motor vehicle in any way at all, regardless of whether the person was in the vehicle and regardless of whether the vehicle was moving at the time of the accident. The "Yes" box would be checked in question 3a, for example, for the following situations: A pedestrian hit by a car, a person hurt while boarding or leaving a bus, or a person on a bicycle hurt by running into a parked car, or a person hurt while repairing a car. These would be reported as accidents involving a motor vehicle as well as the case of a person hurt in a collision or some other type of accident while riding in a motor vehicle.

4. Question 3b Number of motor vehicles involved

Question 3b is to be asked if the answer to question 3a is "Yes." Check the box "Yes" if more than one motor vehicle was involved and "No" if only one motor vehicle was involved.

Again, be careful that only motor vehicles are reported as involved in the accident and exclude non-motor vehicles.

5. Question 3c Was motor vehicle moving

Ask question 3c if the answer to question 3a is "Yes," regardless of the answer to question 3b.

a. How to ask the question

If only one motor vehicle was involved ("No" in question 3b), question 3c is to be asked without the parenthetical phrase. If more than one motor vehicle was involved, ask "Was either one moving at the time?"

If a motor vehicle and non-motor vehicle were involved (e.g., a bus and a train collision), be sure the respondent understands that the word "it" in question 3c refers to the motor vehicle and not to the other vehicle.

b. Moving-defined

In most cases it will be easy for the respondent to determine whether or not the motor vehicle was moving at the time of the accident, but in some instances a question may arise. Consider that the motor vehicle was moving if the wheels were moving (this includes skidding) or if the vehicle had come to a stop just an instant before the injury occurred.

6. Questions 4a and 4b Where accident happened

Question 4a is to be asked for each accident and if the accident did not occur at home, question 4b is also to be asked.

If the accident did happen at home, it is necessary to know if it happened inside the house or on the premises.

a. Home defined

"Home" as used here includes not only the person's own home but <u>also any other home</u>, vacant or occupied, in which he might have been when he was injured, as well as homes being <u>remodelled</u> or <u>under-going</u> repair. Do not consider an accident occurring at a house <u>under construction</u> as occurring at home, but check the box "Industrial place and premises" for these.

(1)	Inside house	Check the box for "inside house" if the accident occurred while the person was inside the house, in any room or porch but not an inside garage. Porches or steps leading directly to porches or entrances are considered as "inside the house." Falling out of a window or falling off a roof or porch also are included as "inside the house." Also to be included in this category are injuries happening within motel or hotel rooms. The lobby, corridors and other public places within the motel or hotel premises are not to be regarded as "home."
(2)	Adjacent premises	Check "adjacent premises" if the accident occurred in the yard, the driveway, patios, gardens or walks to the house, or a garage. On a farm, the adjacent premises include the home premises or garage, but not the barns or other buildings (unless used as a garage) or the land under cultivation.
b.	Some other place	Check "some other place" if the accident occurred some place besides a home. In that case, ask question 4b and check the box which describes the particular type of place where the accident happened. If the types of places listed do not describe the type of place where the accident occurred, check the box "other" and specify the type of place.
c.	Street and highway	The phrase, "street and highway" means the entire width between property lines of which any part is open for the use of the public as a matter of right or custom. Note that this includes more than just the traveled part of the road. "Street and highway" includes the whole right of way. Public sidewalks are part of the street but private driveways, private lanes, private alleys and private sidewalks are <u>not</u> considered part of the street.
d.	Farm	"Farm" is to be checked if the accident occurred in a farm building or on land under cultivation but not in the farm home or premises. "Farm" includes a ranch, as used here.
e.	Industrial place and premises	"Industrial place and premises" is to be checked if the accident occurred in industrial places and premises such as a factory building, a railway yard, a warehouse, a workshop, a loading platform of a factory or store, etc. A construction project (houses, buildings, bridges, new roads, etc.) is included in this class, as well as buildings

undergoing remodeling. Private homes which are undergoing remodeling are not to be classified as industrial places and premises, but instead should be classified as "home." Other examples of "industrial place and premises" are logging camps, shipping piers, oil fields, shipyards, sand and gravel pits, canneries, and auto repair garages.

f. Schools

"School (including school premises)" is to be checked for an accident occurring either in the school buildings or on the premises (campus). This classification includes all types of schools, elementary, high schools, colleges, business schools, etc.

g. Place for recreation and sports

"Place for recreation and sports" is to be checked for accidents occurring in places which are designed for sports and recreation, such as, bowling alley, amusement park, baseball field, dance hall, lake or mountain or beach resort, stadium. In contrast, a person injured while sledding on a hill near his home, for example, would not be checked as "sports and recreation" even though sledding is a sport. Places for recreation or sports located on the premises of an industrial place should be classified as "Industrial place and premises."

Exclude recreation and sports <u>at schools</u> from this class, since it would be checked in box 6.

h. Other

Check the box "Other" if the specific types of places listed above do not describe where the accident happened. If "Other" is checked, specify the exact type of place, such as, grocery store, restaurant, office building, church, etc. General entries such as "Armed Forces" are <u>not</u> satisfactory, since a person can be in the Armed Forces and have an accident in any one of several kinds of places.

7. Question 5 At work when accident happened

Check the box "Under 17 at time of accident" when that is clearly the case from the information given in question 1 of Table A and question 3 (age). Otherwise, ask question 5 of Table A and check one of the appropriate boxes.

Consider an injury as occurring "at work" if the person was on duty at the time of the accident. Thus, a salesman traveling from town to town

would be "at work" if an injury occurred en route between towns, but a person on his way to an office job who had an accident en route would not be considered as having been injured "at work."

Check "No" for persons who were not "at work" at a job or business at the time of the accident.

Check "While in Armed Services" for any injury or poisoning which occurred while the person was in the Armed Services (excluding the Reserves), regardless of whether he was on duty at the time it occurred. For example, check the box "While in Armed Services" for a sailor who was away from his ship when he slipped, fell on the ice and broke his leg on a downtown street.

E. Table I
Cols. (e)-(w)

1. Columns (e)-(h) Restricted activity last week or the week before

The purpose of these questions is to separate the illness conditions causing persons to cut down on their usual activities for as much as a day from those conditions not affecting usual activities.

Ask the question over columns (e) and (f) exactly as worded. Check either column (e) or column (f), but not both. If the answer is "No," enter "X" in column (e) and leave columns (f)-(l) blank. If the answer is "Yes," enter "X" in column (f) and ask the question over columns (g) and (h). Record the respondent's answer to the question without explaining "the things you usually do." However, if questions are raised the following guide should be used.

a. "Things you usually do"—defined

The things a person usually does are the person's "usual activities." For school children and most adults, "usual activity" would be going to school, working, or keeping house, etc. For children under school age, "usual activities" depend upon whatever the usual pattern is for the child which will, in turn, be affected by the age of the child, weather conditions, etc. For retired or elderly persons, usual activities might consist of almost no activity, but cutting down on even a small amount would mean that a person should answer "Yes" to the question.

On Sundays or holidays "usual activities" should be interpreted as the things the person usually

does on such days--going to church, playing golf, visiting friends or relatives, staying at home and listening to the radio, reading, looking at television, etc.

(1) Illustrations — The following examples illustrate cases of persons cutting down on the things they usually do because of illness or an injury: a person in school was kept away from school; a person who worked away from home was kept away from work; a farmer or a housewife was kept from caring for the farm or home either completely or had to cut out all but the essential chores; an elderly person who normally takes a daily walk in the park was kept from doing so.

(2) In bed or in a hospital — If a person is sick in bed or in the hospital (because of the condition you are asking about), he is always to be counted as cutting down on the things he usually does. This includes a chronic invalid who might spend all of his time in bed because of the condition you are asking about.

(3) Problem cases — In borderline cases, where "usual activity" is difficult to determine, accept the respondent's view of what he himself considers to be his "usual activities." For example, a man with a heart condition may still consider his "usual activity" to be "working," even though the heart condition has prevented him from working for a year or more. You should accept his statement that "working" is his "usual activity." In another example, a man may say that a heart attack six months ago forced him to retire from his job or business, he does not expect to return to work, and considers his present "usual activities" to include only those associated with his retirement. The question, then, would refer to those activities.

b. Columns (g) and (h) Cut down for as much as a day — If column (f) is checked, ask the question over columns (g) and (h), "Did you have to cut down for as much as a day?" If the answer is "No," check column (g) and skip to column (m). If the answer is "Yes," check column (h) and continue with the question in column (i).

(1) "Cut down for as much as a day"--defined — Accept the respondent's answer to this question, but if questions are raised as to the meaning of "cut down for as much as a day," use the following as a guide.

A day of restricted activity (cut down) is a day when a person cuts down on his usual activities for the whole of that day on account of an illness or injury. "Usual activities" for any day means the things that the person would usually do on that day, as defined on page 86.

Restricted activity does not imply complete inactivity but it does imply only the minimum of the things a person usually does. A special nap for an hour after lunch does not constitute cutting down on usual activities for as much as a day, nor does the elimination of a heavy chore such as cleaning ashes out of the furnace or hanging out the wash. All or most of a person's usual activities for the day must have been restricted for the person to have been caused to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day.

Following are some examples of a person having to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day:

A housewife who expected to clean house after doing the breakfast dishes, then work in the garden and go shopping in the afternoon was forced to rest because of a severe headache, doing nothing after the breakfast dishes until she prepared the evening meal.

A young boy who usually played outside most of the day was confined to the house because of a severe cold.

A garage owner whose usual activities included mechanical and other heavy work was forced to stay in his office directing others, talking to customers, etc., because of his heart condition.

2. Column (i) How many days during that two-week period

Ask column (i): "How many days did you have to cut down during that two-week period?" for all persons answering "Yes" to the question over columns (g) and (h) ("X" entered in (h)). Enter the total number of different days during last week or the week before on which the condition caused the person to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day. The days to be entered here are not necessarily consecutive days.

Note that the "two-week period" in the question in column (i) includes the Saturdays and Sundays. All days of the week are of equal importance in this question, even though the types of activities which were cut down might not be the same on week-ends as

on regular week days. If necessary, this should be brought to the attention of the respondent.

To illustrate the concept involved in the preceding paragraph, consider the following example: a man who planned a fishing trip for Saturday and Sunday had to stay home from work Friday and was also too ill to go fishing both on Saturday and Sunday because of a flare-up of his back trouble. Assuming that this is the only time during the past 2 weeks in which he was bothered by back trouble, the correct entry for column (i) would be "3."

As stated above, a person who is sick in bed or in the hospital (because of the condition you are asking about) is cutting down on the things he usually does, so all days in bed or in a hospital are to be included in the total in column (i).

3. Column (j) Number of days in bed

Ask column (j) as worded, "During that two-week period, how many days did ... keep you in bed all or most of the day?"

Enter the total number of days <u>this condition</u> kept the person in bed, either all or most of the day or check the box for "None." Do not leave this column blank if there is an "X" ("Yes") in column (h).

a. "Day in bed"--defined

Count as a "day in bed" any day on which the person was kept in bed either all or most of the day because of the condition being inquired about. All or most of the day is defined as more than half of the daylight hours. Taking a nap on "general principles" should not be counted.

All hospital days or days as a patient in a sanitarium or nursing home, are to be counted as bed days even if the patient was not literally in bed at the hospital, sanitarium, or nursing home.

b. Check entry

Since all days in bed are to be included in column (i), the number of days shown in column (j) can never be greater than the number in column (i).

4. Column (k) Days lost from school

Ask the question as it is worded for persons 6-16 years old. Check the box "None" if no days were lost from school and also if the person does not go to school (and is between the ages of 6-16, inclusive). Once you have learned that the person would not have been going to school during that period whether he had been sick or well, you can check the box "None," without asking the question for any <u>other</u> conditions listed for him in Table I, and for which column (k) requires an entry.

a. "School day"--defined

Count only the days when the whole school day was lost from school <u>due to an illness or injury</u>. For example, a day when the person went to school at

noon would not count as a day lost from school. However, if the person's regular school day is less than a whole day and that amount of time was lost from school on account of illness, it should be counted as a whole day lost from school.

b. School vacation — Since school vacation periods are not all the same, this question is to be asked even during periods of the year which you might normally think of as school vacation periods.

c. Disregard work days — If a person 6 through 16 years of age works instead of, or in addition to, going to school, record only the days lost from school (disregarding any days lost from work).

5. Column (1) Days lost from work — This question is for the purpose of finding out if a person lost time from work because of the condition you are asking about in Table I.

For column (1) you will need to check question 5. As indicated in the heading, the question in column (1) is to be asked only for persons who have answered "Yes" to question 5a or 5b (working or having a job or business).

Check "None" for persons who did not lose time from work. Leave column (1) blank for persons under 17 or with "No" to questions 5a and 5b, since the question is not to be asked for them.

a. Work--defined — "Work" is defined for column (1) the same as given for question 5 in Part D, Chapter 2.

b. "Work day"--defined — Apply the same instructions given above for "school day" to a "work day" in arriving at the number of days lost from work. (See paragraph E-4-a.)

c. Disregard school days — If a person 17 years of age or over goes to school in addition to working, record only the days lost from work (disregarding any days lost from school).

6. Check for number of days reported in columns (k) and (l) — Since hardly anyone works 7 days a week or goes to school 7 days a week, you should follow-up such replies as "the whole 2 weeks" or "all last week," etc. Do not enter "14" or "7" automatically but re-ask the question in order to find out the actual number of days lost from work or school. If a person actually lost 7 or 14 days from work or school during "last week or the week before," enter "7" or "14" but explain in a footnote that these days were actually lost.

Illustration F indicates some patterns of restricted activity during the past 2 weeks.

Illustration F

Ages	Col. No. of person (a)	LAST WEEK OR THE WEEK BEFORE did . . . cause you to cut down on the things you usually do? (Check one) No (Go to col. m) (e)	Yes → (f)	Did you have to cut down for as much as a day? (Check one) No (Go to col. m) (g)	Yes → (h)	How many days did you have to cut down during that two week period? (i)	During that two week period, how many days did . . . keep you in bed all or most of the day? (j)	If 6-16 years old, ask: How many days did . . . keep you from school during that two week period? (k)	If "Yes," in Q. 5a or 5b, ask: How many days did . . . keep you from work during that two week period? (l)
38	2	X				___ Days	___ Days or ☐ None	___ Days or ☐ None	___ Days or ☐ None
39	1		X		X	5 L Days	1 Days or ☐ None	___ Days or ☐ None	2 L Days or ☐ None
	1		X		X	1 L Days	___ Days or ☒ None	___ Days or ☐ None	1 L Days or ☐ None
17	3		X		X	6 Days	3 Days or ☐ None	___ Days or ☐ None	___ Days or ☒ None
14	4		X		X	1 Days	1 Days or ☐ None	1 Days or ☐ None	___ Days or ☐ None

L One day was the same.

7. Check between columns (i), (j), (k), and (l)	The number of days entered in column (i) must be equal to or greater than the number of days entered in any one of columns (j), (k), or (l), since days in bed or days lost from school or work all represent "cutting down on usual activities." If there are inconsistencies of this kind, additional questions must be asked to ascertain the correct numbers to be recorded in each of the appropriate columns.
8. Overlapping days of restricted activity	If the person has days of restricted activity reported (columns (i), (j), (k), or (l)) which are caused by more than one condition enter the number of days for each condition reported and ask, "Were any of these days the same?" If the answer is "Yes," specify in a footnote the number of days that were the same.
9. Columns (m)-(o) Condition first noticed during or prior to past 3 months	Ask the question appearing over columns (m)-(o) for each condition in Table I. In the case of an injury or poisoning, substitute the question "Did ... happen during the past 3 months or before that time?" for "Did you first notice ... during the past 3 months or before that time?" If the condition was first noticed prior to the past 3 months, enter "X" in column (m) and leave columns (n) and (o) blank. If it started during the past 3 months, enter "X" in column (n) and ask the question in column (o).
a. "First noticed"-defined	The time when a condition was first noticed refers to the time when it <u>first</u> began to give any trouble or show any symptoms. This could have been even prior to the condition having been diagnosed if there were symptoms which later proved to be the diagnosed condition. In the case of a current injury, this is when the injury occurred; in case of after-effects of an injury, such as an infection from a blister, this refers to when the after-effects began to give trouble.

In the case of a condition that has continued for a long time, as might be the case with heart trouble or arthritis, the date might be many years ago. Some conditions which a person has all of the time manifest themselves in more serious ways from time to time. It is the date the trouble was first noticed that is referred to here, not necessarily the date of the most recent attack or flare-up.

b. Past 3 months-defined

The past 3 months refer to the 3 months immediately prior to the week of interview. Count the week of interview as starting with Monday of that week. Thus, for an interview being conducted on Monday, July 13th, the past 3 months refer to the period from April 12th through July 12th.

c. Column (o) Condition started prior to or during past 2 weeks

Ask column (o), "Did you first notice it (did it happen) during the past 2 weeks or before that time?" for each condition that was first noticed (or injury that happened) during the past 3 months.

If the condition first started prior to the week before last, check the box "Before 2 wks.". If it started within the past 2 weeks, ask the question "Which week, last week or the week before?"

Check the box "Last week" if the condition started during the week before the week of interview. Check "Week before" if it started during the week before the one immediately prior to the week of interview.

10. Column (p) Condition first noticed during past 12 months or before

Column (p), "Did you first notice it during the past 12 months or before that time?" is to be asked if column (m) is checked (condition first noticed before 3 months ago). Check the "3-12 months" box if the condition started during the past 12 months. Otherwise, check the "Before 12 months" box.

11. Column (aa) Instructions to interviewer

The heading of column (aa) tells you, the interviewer, under what conditions you are to continue with the remaining questions in Table I for a condition. The questions are to be continued for all conditions starting prior to 3 months ago ("X" in column (m) and for all conditions which are included on the Conditions List (Card A) and all impairments as defined earlier. As indicated in the heading of column (aa) the questions in columns (q)-(w) are not to be asked about a condition which started less than 3 months ago unless it is on Card A or is an impairment.

Impairments or conditions listed on Card A may not necessarily have been reported in answer to questions 10 and 11--they may have been reported earlier or later in the interview. The condition as recorded does not need to include the terms "chronic," "repeated," etc., to be considered as on Card A or as an impairment, even though these terms are used in reading the check lists.

a. Other conditions to be carried beyond column (aa)

For conditions starting "during the past 3 months" (column (n) checked) you are instructed to continue the questions past column (aa) only if the condition is an impairment or is on Card A. This procedure also applies to conditions like those on Cards A or B. For example, if in answer to the reading of "heart trouble" on Card A, a person said that he had "angina pectoris" which started a month ago you would carry the condition beyond column (aa), despite the fact that it was not reported literally as "heart trouble." It would of course be impossible to provide a complete list of all the conditions which are "like those on Card A," but in general, if you have any reason to believe that a reported condition is an impairment or similar to one of the Card A conditions it should be carried past column (aa).

12. Column (q) Bed days during past 12 months

This column is for recording the total number of days during the past 12 months which have been spent in bed because of a particular condition. The word "ABOUT" in this question is intended to convey the idea that an approximation of the number of bed days is sufficient. Check the box for "None" if no days were spent in bed during the past 12 months on account of <u>this condition</u>.

a. "Bed day"--defined

Staying in bed means all or most of the day as defined for column (j). As indicated earlier, days spent in a hospital are to be included.

b. Help the respondent to estimate

It may be desirable to assist the respondent in making an estimate of the number of days in bed for all or most of the day during the past 12 months. For example, you might ask "How many days usually during a month did ... keep you in bed--how many months was this the pattern?". Or, the same type of question might be asked in terms of weeks.

c. Check entry

The number in column (q) cannot be less than the number in column (j) since "last week and the week before" is part of the past 12 months.

d. Overlapping bed days

Any days in bed caused by more than one condition are to be reported in column (q) in the same manner as overlapping days of restricted activity in columns (i), (j), (k), and (l). (See par. E-8 of this chapter.)

13. Column (r) Bed days during last week or the week before

The question in column (r) is for the purpose of recording the number of days in bed "last week or the week before" for persons who are usually bed-ridden or who are "in and out" of bed frequently. Such persons may not consider being in bed as a departure from their usual activities and, therefore, may have reported that they had not cut down on their usual activities during the past two weeks.

As stated on the questionnaire, column (r) is to be asked only if one or more days in bed are reported in column (q) and column (j) is either blank or has the "None" box checked. Insert the number of days in column (q) for the dashes in asking the question. If "Yes", enter the number of days in bed during last week or the week before. If "No," check the box for "None."

Leave column (r) blank if it does not need to be asked. For example, if there is an entry of bed-days in column (j), column (r) is not to be asked and is to be left blank.

Do not change earlier entries made in columns (e)-(l) as a result of the answer to column (r).

If the answer in column (q) is 365, do not ask column (r) but record "14" in column (r) (if column (r) is required).

14. Column (s) Number of times doctor seen in past 12 months

As indicated on the questionnaire, column (s) is to be asked only if a doctor had been talked to about the condition you are carrying across Table I ("Yes" in column (c)).

The wording of the question "ABOUT how many times DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS have you seen or talked to a doctor about your ...?" means that an estimate of the number of times is acceptable. (If the person was an inpatient in the hospital for this condition during the past 12 months, do not count this as a doctor visit.)

Enter the number of times (or the respondent's estimate), or check the "None" box, if no doctor was seen or talked to about this condition during the past 12 months.

15. Column (t) Activities affected by health

Column (t) is to be asked for each person for whom <u>one or more</u> conditions are reported which require entries beyond column (aa), to obtain the person's present activity status. The question is asked only once for each person, and only after all conditions for the person have been recorded in Table I.

a. Card to be used

The respondent is to be asked to look at an Activities Card and classify himself or any other person for whom he is reporting by selecting one of the four statements on the card. There are four versions of the card to be used, as follows:

Card E (green) is to be used for all males 17 or over and females 17 or over who have answered "Yes" to question 5a, 5b, or 5c.

Card F (blue) is to be used for females 17 or over who have answered "No" to all of questions 5a-5c.

Card G (yellow) is to be used for children age 6-16.

Card H (white) is to be used for children under 6.

As evidenced above, the age and sex entries in question 3 and the work status entries in question 5 determine the card to be selected. Note that Card E is to be used for females 17 or over who have answered "Yes" to any one of questions 5a-5c.

b. How to ask the question

Ask the respondent to look at the appropriate card for the person and read to him the heading of column (t), emphasizing "in terms of health." If the respondent does not appear to understand that he is to select the statement best describing the present status of his activities, read each statement aloud and ask him which one best fits the person. Follow this procedure also in cases where the respondent is not able to read the card.

If the first answer of the respondent indicates that the respondent has not understood the reference, you should inquire if he is thinking of it in terms of health.

c. Illustrations of some limitations

Statement No. 1 on all the cards--"unable to work (keep house, go to school, etc.) at all"--is relatively easy to understand and respondents do not appear to have any difficulty in deciding whether the first statement applies to a person. The following examples are for the purpose of acquainting you with the types of limitations that may be questioned.

Statement No. 2--"able to work (keep house, etc.) but limited in the amount or kind of work (housework, etc.)"--may need some additional explanation. Some examples of the kinds of limitations referred to are listed on the following page.

Cards	Limitations
Workers: (Card E)	Employer needs to provide special equipment; needs special rest periods at work; unable to work full time or for long periods of time; unable to do strenuous work, etc.
Housewife: (Card F)	Unable to lift children, wash or iron or do housework for long periods at a time, etc.
Children 6-16: (Card G)	Needs special schools or special teaching, unable to go to school full time or for long periods at a time, etc.
Children under 6: (Card H)	Needs special rest periods, unable to play strenuous games, unable to play for long periods at a time.

Statement No. 3 refers to those who are only limited in their outside activities. For example, limited in participating in sports, clubs, hobbies, church, civic projects, shopping, athletics, games, etc. Note that Card H does not carry Statement No. 3 since it is not applicable to children under six years old.

d. Where to record

Enter on the line for the last condition for the person the number of the statement the respondent selects, even if the condition on that line is not a condition which requires entries beyond column aa.

(Column (t) is not to be asked, of course, if the only conditions reported for the person do not require entries beyond column (aa).)

e. If "4" reported

If statement No. 4 is reported for a person, skip column (u) but ask column (v).

16. Column (u) Due to illness conditions

Column (u) is to be asked only if the entry in column (t) is "1," "2," or "3"--i.e., if the person's present activities are limited in some way. Check "Yes" or "No" on the line for the last condition for each person for whom column (u) is asked. Be sure the respondent understands that the question refers to all of the conditions reported for the person, and only to those conditions. If a respondent has reported only one condition, ask the question in column (u) as follows: "Is this because of the condition you told me about?"

Do not report "Yes" for an elderly person merely because of his age, if he says that the limitations on his activities are not due to any of the conditions reported for him. In this circumstance, check "No" but do not change the entry in column (t).

a. Which condition

If the respondent has reported more than one condition and has answered "Yes" to column (u), ask "Which?", meaning which condition. Enter "X" to the right of the "Yes" and "No" boxes on the line for each condition the respondent says has contributed to the limitation of activities reported for the person in answer to this question.

b. "Temporary" activity limitations

If the "X's" in column (u) are ONLY for conditions involving (1) pregnancy, (2) injuries which have not yet healed, or (3) conditions not carried beyond column (aa), go back and re-ask column (t) as follows: "Except for your 'broken leg' ('pregnancy,' 'influenza,' etc.), which statement on this card would normally fit you best, in terms of health?" If the respondent selects a different statement, correct columns (t) and (u) as appropriate.

17. Column (v) Mobility limitation

Column (v), about the ability of the person to get around (mobility limitation), is to be asked regardless of the answer to column (t).

Read the introduction in the column heading to the respondent and ask him to look at Card I. Enter the number of the statement the respondent selects on the line for the last condition for the person.

The five statements on Card I are scaled in order of severity and are self-explanatory.

If a question is raised, the limitations must be "in terms of health" and should be of a long range nature. Temporary limitations due to an acute illness or a current injury should not be considered in arriving at the degree of limitation. For example, a person who would otherwise not be limited in getting around, but who was temporarily confined to bed or to the house because of pneumonia, should be counted as a "5," that is, not limited in any of the four preceding ways.

18. Column (w) Due to illness conditions

Column (w) is to be asked if the entry in column (v) is "1," "2," "3," or "4."

The questions in column (w) are the same as those for activity limitations in column (u) and the entries are to be made in the same manner. That is, the "Yes" or "No" box is to be checked on the line for the last condition for each person for whom column (w) is asked; enter "X" on the line for each condition mentioned as contributing to the mobility limitation.

As in the case of activity limitation, if the only condition(s) reported as causing the mobility limitation is a "temporary" condition, re-ask column (v) as to which statement would normally fit the person best, in terms of health. Correct columns (v) and (w) as appropriate.

19. Question 14
Visual acuity

Question 14 is to be asked after completing Table I for all persons.

As instructed in the heading of the question, check Table I for eye conditions that may have been reported there. If the person you are asking about had any kind of an eye condition or vision problem (including cataracts or glaucoma) and is 6 years old or over ask the various parts of the question as prescribed by the instructions preceding each part, which are printed on the questionnaire.

If the person has no eye condition or is under 6, check the box marked "No eye condition or under 6 years" and go on to the next person.

a. Question 14a
Ability to read newspaper print with glasses

Ask question 14a as worded. This question applies to the total vision a person has. Impaired vision in only one eye would not necessarily affect a person's ability to read newspaper print. Therefore, if the person is blind (or has impaired vision) in one eye, make sure that the respondent understands that the question refers to the person's ability to read with either one or the other eye.

Be sure to read the question clearly so that the respondent hears the phrase "with glasses," since many people who have serious eye trouble can read ordinary newspaper print when they are wearing their glasses, even though they may not be able to read without them.

Check the box for "Yes" or "No" depending on the respondent's answer.

Check "Yes" if the person does not wear glasses but says he can read ordinary newspaper print.

If the person cannot read (is illiterate), question 14a is to be checked on the basis of whether he can see well enough to read if he knew how.

If the answer to question 14a is "No" check that box and proceed to the next person for whom question 14a must be asked.

b. Questions 14b and c

If the answer to question 14a is "Yes" ask the b part of the question. "Can you see well enough to recognize a friend walking on the other side of the street?" No reference to "glasses" is in this question, but if the person uses glasses the answer to be obtained should be in terms of what the person can see when he is using his glasses.

If the answer to question 14b is "No" ask question 14c and check the box which most closely approximates the answer: "Great deal," "Some" or "Hardly any or None."

CHAPTER 5.

TABLE II
HOSPITALIZATIONS

A. Hospitalizations and stays in nursing homes, rest homes or similar places

Table II is to be filled for all hospitalizations and stays in nursing homes, rest homes or any similar places since the date entered in question 13a. Table II is to be filled after completing question 14 for all related household members.

1. Interviewer instruction

After completing question 14 for all related household members, follow the instructions which appear in the shaded section to the left of Table II:

> Enter (in the space provided) the total number of hospitalizations recorded in question 13. Fill one line of Table II for each hospital stay reported. If no hospitalization has been reported, check the "None" box.

If there are unrelated persons in the household the entry in this section should show the total number of hospital stays reported in question 13.

2. General procedure for Table II

The answers to question 13 will have indicated which persons in the household were in hospitals or nursing homes, rest homes, and similar places during the specified time period. Each stay in any one of these types of places is to be recorded on a separate line, regardless of the number of times a person was in any of them during the period and regardless of how many times a person may have gone for the same condition.

If a person was moved from one hospital to another, e.g., from an emergency hospital to a general hospital, these are to be recorded as two separate stays.

When hospitalization is for childbirth, one line of Table II will be filled for the mother and a separate line for the baby.

Each line of Table II represents information about a particular hospital stay and all the questions, including column (g), apply to that stay.

Since a separate line of Table II is to be filled for each stay (time) in a hospital, the number of lines filled for a person in Table II should agree with the number in his column for question 13 (plus any lines added by question 15). If it does not, correct the figure in question 13b and explain the reason for the correction in a footnote, e.g., "respondent misunderstood question 13--actually only one time in hospital."

If more than four lines are needed in Table II use additional questionnaires.

3. Column (a) Column number of person

Enter the column number of the person for whom you are recording the information. As in Table I, it is essential that the column number be entered for the correct person. Otherwise all of the related hospital information might be attributed to the wrong person.

4. Column (b) Question number

Enter the question number (13 or 15) that provided the information for the line of Table II you are filling.

5. Column (c) Date entered hospital

Read the question in column (c) as worded, inserting the number of times reported for the person in the first part of the question. If the person was in a hospital more than once during the period, add the parenthetical phrase "the last time" to the end of the question. As indicated by this phrase, the most recent hospitalization is to be recorded first if the person had more than one hospitalization in the period.

Record in column (c) the month, day, and year the person entered the hospital. If the respondent cannot furnish the exact date, <u>obtain the best estimate possible</u>. Use the calendars in the back of your Flashcard Booklet to assist the respondent in recalling dates and ask whatever additional questions seem appropriate.

Some examples of questions you might ask to assist the respondent in recalling dates are:

"Can you recall the <u>approximate</u> date?"

"Do you know which week of the month it was?"

"Do you recall the day of the week you entered the hospital?"

"Was it before or after Memorial Day (or some other special date)?"

"Was it in the early part, the middle part or the last part of the month?"

If, after your probing, the respondent cannot fix the exact date but can set it as between two dates, enter both dates, e.g., "5-10." As a last resort, enter the part of the month, e.g., "early part," "near end of month," etc..

If, after your additional questioning with the calendar, the respondent cannot say which month it was but that it was one of two, enter both, e.g., "Mar. or Apr.". If the respondent is unable to name any months, ask what season of the year it was, e.g., "Was it in the winter or spring?" and enter the season (e.g., "winter") for the month.

You should always be able to make some sort of entry in column (c). For statistical purposes a date must always be assigned for each hospital entry, so it is essential that you obtain the maximum amount of information available.

a. Caution regarding correct entry for year

Experience has shown that it is very easy to make a mistake in entering the year a person was hospitalized, particularly when you are working in a different calendar year from the reported year of hospitalization. In all cases, make sure that you have entered the <u>correct year</u> in column (c).

6. Column (d) Number of nights in hospital, nursing home, etc.

Enter the total number of nights spent in the hospital in column (d). <u>Do not include any nights in the interview week.</u> However, <u>all</u> nights in the hospital through "last Sunday night" are to be entered, <u>including</u> nights <u>prior</u> to the date stamped in question 13.

If the respondent is unable to state the exact number of nights the person was in the hospital, again use your calendar to assist the respondent's recall, and ask any necessary additional questions, for example:

"Do you remember the day of the week you left the hospital?"

"Was it more than 20 nights or less than 20 nights?"

"Do you remember how many weeks you were there?"

As in the case for column (c), you should always be able to obtain some approximation of the number of nights. Therefore, and whenever necessary, obtain the best estimate you can and enter that in column (d).

If the respondent's answer is in terms of days, repeat the question so that he understands we are interested only in the number of nights. For example, a first answer of, "I was in for 7 days" might mean 6, 7 or 8 nights. Such answers should always be followed up by repeating the question or by asking an additional question to clarify the answer.

a. Not overnight, delete

If it is learned that the person did not remain overnight for any "time" (stay) in the hospital, enter "None" in column (d). Delete this line of Table II, correct the figure in question 13 and explain the reason for the deletion in a footnote, e.g., "Did not remain overnight."

b. Entire stay prior to reference period

If the respondent's answer to the date of hospital entry for column (c) and the number of nights for column (d) indicates that the entire stay was prior to the reference period, that is, before the date specified in question 13a, check with the respondent to verify that you have the correct date of entry and number of nights.

Do not delete this line of Table II, even if you verify that the entire stay was prior to the reference period. Explain in a footnote that you have verified the date of entry and number of nights and that the stay was prior to the reference period. Complete the remaining entries in Table II.

7. Columns (e), (f), and (g) Check on 12-month and 2-week period

Columns (e), (f), and (g) contain questions which you (the interviewer) can usually answer from information obtained earlier. In such cases, do not ask the questions but be sure to make the appropriate entries.

a. Column (e) Number of nights in past 12 months

"The past 12 months" is defined the same as for question 10, i.e., from "last Sunday's" date a year ago through last Sunday night, and includes both the beginning and ending dates.

If the answer to column (e) is not perfectly clear from earlier information ask the question, again using your calendars to assist the respondent in recalling dates.

If all the nights in column (d) were in the past 12 months, copy the column (d) figure in column (e).

If none of the nights in column (d) was in the past 12 months, enter "None" in column (e). Do not delete the line in such a case. Complete the remaining entries in Table II.

b. Column (f) Nights in hospital, nursing home, etc., during last week or the week before

If the date in column (c) and the number of nights in column (d) show that none of the nights in the hospital, nursing home, etc., could possibly have been "last week or the week before," enter "None" in column (f). If there is any chance at all that any part of the hospitalization was in the 2-week reference period, and the answer is not clear from earlier information, ask the question, and record the number of nights or enter "None" as the case may be.

c. Column (g) Still there last Sunday night

If the person was still in the hospital, nursing home, etc., on last Sunday night, for this hospital stay, check "Yes" in column (g); if not there last Sunday night, check "No." If the date in column (c) and the number of nights in column (d) show that this period could not possibly have included "last Sunday night," check the box for "No" without asking the question. If there is any doubt, ask the question.

Note that even if the person was in the hospital "last Sunday night" for his most recent hospital stay, "No" would be checked in column (g) for any previous hospital stays reported for him.

8. Column (h) Condition causing hospitalization or stay in nursing home, rest home or similar place

Ask the question in column (h), "For what condition did you enter the hospital--do you know the medical name?" Enter the medical name, if known; if not known, enter the best description of the condition which the respondent can give. The entry should fully describe the condition for which the person entered the hospital. As indicated in the column heading, all the rules for entry of "cause," "kind," and "part of body" in columns (d-1) through (d-4) of Table I apply to entries in column (h) of Table II. If "cause," "kind" or "part of body" is required and this information is not known by the respondent, enter "cause DK," "kind DK" or "part of body DK"; do not enter just "DK."

The column (h) entry should represent the diagnosis given at the hospital, if it is known, which may not necessarily be the complaint for which the person went to the hospital. In the case of a person going to the hospital for tests or diagnosis, enter the final diagnosis if known; otherwise enter the trouble or condition that made the tests seem necessary. If the respondent reports that a person entered the hospital to have an operation, determine and enter in column (h) the condition which made the operation necessary.

If more than one condition was diagnosed or treated during this hospital stay, enter all such conditions.

For delivery and childbirth, enter in column (h) whether the mother's delivery was normal ("normal delivery") and whether the baby was normal at birth ("normal birth"), or whether there were complications. In the latter case, enter "delivery" or "birth" in column (h) and also specify what the complications were. For example, if the mother's delivery was by Caesarian section but the baby was a perfectly normal baby, the entry for the mother would be "delivery -- Caesarian" and the entry for the baby would be "normal birth." Conversely, the mother may have a "normal delivery" but the baby may be born with a deformity, e.g., "birth--club foot." Other examples: the mother's delivery may be complicated by an illness condition, the baby may be "premature," "underweight," "weighed only four pounds," "blue baby," etc. Any such complications are to be recorded in addition to "delivery" or "birth."

a. Check with column (q) Table I

If the hospitalization is for a condition which has been carried beyond column (aa) of Table I, ask if the nights reported in column (e) of Table II have been included in the number of days reported in column (q) of Table I. If they have not, correct the figure in column (q). If there was more than one hospital stay for this condition during the period, make sure that all nights in the hospital because of the condition are included in column (q).

9. Column (i) Operations performed

Ask the question in column (i), "Were any operations performed on you during this stay at the hospital?" for each hospital stay.

If any operations were performed on the person during the stay in the hospital, check the "Yes" box and enter in column (i) the name of each operation performed. Otherwise, check the "No" box. If an operation(s) is reported, ask "Any other operations?" until you receive the answer of "No" and check the "No" box.

a. Surgical operation--defined

A surgical operation, for the purpose of this survey, includes any cutting or piercing of the skin, including stitching of cuts or wounds. It includes cutting or piercing of other tissue, scraping of internal parts of the body (e.g., curettage of the uterus), and setting of fractures and dislocations. Also included are the insertion of instruments in body openings for internal examination and treatment (e.g., bronchoscopy, proctoscopy, cystoscopy), and the introduction of tubes for drainage. Injections, transfusions, and routine blood tests are not to be reported as surgical operations.

b. How to report surgical operations

If the condition for which the operation was performed is not already recorded in column (h), ask for the name of it and report it in column (i), in addition to the name of the operation. For example, if the respondent states "amputation of one leg above knee," ask the name of the condition for which the operation was performed--it may be "diabetic gangrene," or "leg lacerated in automobile accident," or "osteomyelitis," etc. If the name of the operation is not known, record in column (i) the condition for which it was performed. The following examples show the correct method of reporting:

Amputation of one foot--diabetic gangrene

Operation for varicose ulcers on both upper legs

Be sure to report each operation if more than one was performed during the stay in the hospital.

c. Fractures, dislocations, and stitches

In some cases respondents may not think of the setting of fractures and dislocations or the stitching of cuts or wounds as operations. If the person entered the hospital for such an injury and the respondent says no operation was performed, ask if the bone or joint was set or if stitches were taken in the cut or wound. If the answer is "Yes," enter the action taken as the name of the operation (e.g., "Broken wrist" in column (h), "Wrist set" in column (i)).

If the respondent should say that the bone was not set, etc., explain the circumstances in a footnote.

10. Column (j) Name and address of hospital

Enter the name and address of the hospital, nursing home, rest home, sanitarium or similar place in column (j). The exact street address is not required but the name of the street on which the hospital is located is needed to help in identifying the hospital. Enter the name of the hospital on the top line. Enter the street and the city and State below it. If the name of the street is not known, enter "DK." If the city is not known or the hospital is not in a city, enter the county and State.

It is important to obtain the full and complete name of the hospital in order to classify each hospital by type in accordance with Public Health Service specifications. If the respondent abbreviates the name or supplies only a shortened local name, for example, "county hospital," "general hospital," etc., when he means "Baker County Hospital" or "Detroit General Hospital" etc., it will be necessary to obtain and record the full name.

Also, be sure you have the correct name of the hospital. For example, "Baker County" may operate a hospital but its name is "Jeremiah Wilson Memorial Hospital." In such a case it would be impossible to identify "Baker County Hospital" for classification. In all such cases in which it is possible that the respondent could be giving the name as it is referred to locally, ask the respondent if that is the name of the hospital.

Be sure that your entries of the names of the hospital, the street, and the city or county are legible. If the respondent is not sure how to spell any one of the names, spell it phonetically and footnote that it is a phonetic spelling.

a. Check local telephone directory

If you are interviewing in the general area in which the hospital is located and have ready access to a local telephone directory, check the latter for doubtful hospital names. Also, if the respondent does not know the name of the street on which the hospital is located, check the telephone directory for that, when possible.

B. Question 15 Baby born in hospital

Question 15 is a check on Table II to be sure that all deliveries and births which should be recorded are entered in Table II.

1. Question 15a Baby in household

As instructed on the questionnaire, examine the ages in question 3 to see if a baby (or babies) one year of age or under is listed as a household member. If a baby 1 year of age or under is listed, check the "Baby" box in question 15a and go to question 15b. If no baby is listed, check the "No baby" box in question 15a and skip to question 16.

2. Question 15b Births and deliveries shown in Table II

If a baby age 1 or under is listed, check Table II to see if the baby's birth and the mother's delivery are recorded. If more than one baby age 1 or under is listed, be sure to check on both (or all). If delivery and birth are recorded in Table II, check the "Yes" box in question 15b and skip to question 16. Otherwise, check the "No" box and ask question 15c.

3. Question 15c Was baby born in the hospital

Check the "Yes" box in question 15c if the baby (babies) was born in the hospital and ask question 15d. If the baby was not born in a hospital check the "No" box and skip to question 16.

4. Question 15d Birthdate of baby

Enter the month, day, and year the baby was born. (If it is necessary to ask about more than one baby, continue the 15d entry in a footnote, e.g., "(name of baby) born (month) (day), (year).") If the birthdate is on or after the date shown in question 13a, fill one line of Table II for the mother and a separate line of Table II for the baby for all deliveries and births not previously recorded in Table II.

C. Conditions to be carried back to Table I

At the end of Table II is an interviewer instruction within a shaded box. After completing Table II for all persons, carry each condition in column (h) or column (i) back to Table I if it does not already appear there and either:

1. The stay in the hospital, nursing home or sanitarium includes any part of "last week or the week before" (an entry of "1" or more nights in column (f))

or

2. The stay was for a condition listed on Card A or for an impairment.

Carry such a condition through column (s) of Table I only, unless it is the only condition past column (aa) reported for the person. Then, you would ask the questions in columns (t)-(w). Do not re-ask the questions on activity status and mobility, columns (t)-(w) for that person.

If the condition carried back to Table I is due to an accident or injury, a Table A should be filled for that line of Table I.

CHAPTER 6.

MEDICINES AND SMOKING HABITS
(Questions 16-22)

A. General

During fiscal year 1965, information is to be collected about medicines bought or obtained by members of the family, and about smoking habits. This chapter contains the instructions for these supplemental questions, 16-22, and Tables P and NP.

B. Medicines--Questions 16-17 and Tables P and NP

Questions 16 and 17 are "family style" questions about medicine prescribed by a doctor and medicine NOT prescribed by a doctor bought or obtained by anyone in the family "last week or the week before." The time reference period is defined the same as for questions 6-8. Additional information about these medicines will be obtained and recorded in Tables P and NP.

"Bought or obtained" refers to the time the person actually got the medicine. Examples: A person obtained medicine from a doctor last week for which he will be billed later; a family ordered medicine from a mail order house three weeks ago which was received week before last. Both of these should be reported as medicine bought or obtained last week or the week before.

Before asking these questions, read to the respondent the introductory statement printed on the questionnaire above question 16a: "Now I have some questions about purchases of medicine. First, I want to ask you about medicine prescribed by a doctor --."

1. Question 16 Medicines prescribed by a doctor

Then ask question 16a: "Last week or the week before, did anyone in the family buy or obtain any kind of medicine prescribed by a doctor?" Check the "Yes" or "No" box below the question in accordance with the respondent's answer.

Ask the respondent to refer to the 2-week calendar card again, if you have any doubt as to whether he is thinking of the correct reference period.

If the answer to question 16a is "No," skip to question 17.

a. Medicine prescribed by a doctor--defined

"Medicine prescribed by a doctor" is defined as: (1) any medicine obtained on a doctor's written prescription, (2) any medicine which has been prepared on the basis of a doctor's telephone call to a pharmacist, or (3) any medicine given by the doctor (or nurse) to the person to take home with him.

There are some kinds of medicine which require an initial prescription but re-fills do not, e.g., insulin used for the control of diabetes. The original prescription is primarily to advise the pharmacist, and the person himself, as to the type of insulin to be taken. Medicine of this kind should be counted as medicine prescribed by a doctor, even though the doctor may not issue a written prescription or call the pharmacist for each refill.

Not to be included are medicines and shots or injections administered to the person in the doctor's office, or in a hospital or clinic.

b. Question 16b and Table P

If the answer to question 16a is "Yes," ask question 16b: "What is the name of the medicine?"

Enter the name of the medicine in column (a) of Table P. If the name of the medicine is not known, enter "DK" in column (a); ask column (b) as follows: "What condition is the medicine for?"; and enter the condition in column (b). However, if the name of the medicine is known do not ask the question in column (b) until all of the prescription medicines for the family have been recorded in column (a).

(1) Respondent offers to show label on box, bottle, etc.

In those cases where the respondent offers to get the box or bottle of medicine and show you the label, copy the name of the medicine from the box or bottle.

c. Question 16c

Then ask question 16c: "Last week or the week before, did anyone buy or obtain any other medicine prescribed by a doctor?" and check the "Yes" or "No" box.

If "Yes," ask question 16b and enter the name of the medicine in column (a) of Table P and continue to re-ask questions 16b and 16c until you receive an answer of "No." Then check the "No" box.

d. Complete Table P

After all prescribed medicines reported to have been bought or obtained last week or the week before have been recorded in Table P, complete the line of Table P for each.

(1) Column (b) Condition

If the name of a medicine is entered in column (a), ask column (b): "What condition is the -- for?" inserting the name of the medicine for the dashes in asking the question.

Record the best description of the condition the respondent can give you. If more than one condition is volunteered, enter all mentioned. If the respondent does not know what the medicine is being taken for, enter "DK" in column (b) and record the circumstances in a footnote.

(2) Column (c) For whom prescribed

Ask column (c): "Who was it prescribed for?" and enter the column number of the person reported by the respondent.

Only the column number of the person for whom the medicine was prescribed is to be entered, not those of all persons who may have taken the medicine. For example, a mother might obtain a prescription for her son for his bronchial congestion, and give some of the son's medicine to her daughter when she developed a similar condition. In such a case, only the column number of the son should be entered.

If a medicine was specifically prescribed for more than one person, enter the column numbers of both (all).

If the name of the medicine was not known, so that column (b) was asked earlier, ask column (c) as follows: "Who was the medicine for (condition) prescribed for?"

(3) Column (d) When bought

Ask column (d): "Did you buy (obtain) the -- last week or the week before?" inserting the name of the medicine for the dashes in asking the question. Again, ask the respondent to refer to the calendar as appropriate. Check the box for "last week" or the "week before" in accordance with the respondent's answer.

If the medicine was purchased both last week and the week before, check both boxes and footnote the entry showing the number of separate purchases during the past 2 weeks.

If it should be disclosed at this point that the medicine actually was bought or obtained before the 2 week reference period check the "Before 2 weeks" box and do not ask column (e).

If you should learn that the medicine was bought during interview week, do not check any box but enter a footnote symbol in column (d). Enter in the footnote: "Bought (obtained) during interview week." Do not ask column (e).

(4) Column (e) Cost

Column (e): "How much did it cost?" is to be asked only if the medicine was bought or obtained last week or the week before.

Accept the respondent's estimate, but enter the cost in dollars and cents. The "cost" referred to is the cost of the total amount of this particular medicine purchased during the past 2 weeks. For example, if a prescription was filled week before last at a cost of $2.66 and was refilled last week at the same cost, the "cost" to be entered in column (e) on that line of Table P would be $5.32. In this case also enter in parentheses the number of purchases of this prescription during the two week recall period as represented by the total cost. In the preceding example, the complete entry would be as follows: "$5.32(2)."

If the medicine was obtained without cost to the family enter "Free" and explain where the medicine was obtained, e.g., "Free from county clinic," "Free from doctor," etc.

If the respondent cannot provide the cost or a reasonable estimate, enter "DK" and the reason, e.g., "DK--husband bought," "DK--Dr.'s bill not yet received."

e. More than five medicines reported

There are five lines of Table P on the questionnaire. If more than five medicines prescribed by a doctor should be reported, give the information about the additional medicine(s) in a footnote. Put the footnote symbol by the heading "Table P." Be sure to give in the footnote the answers to the questions asked in all columns of Table P.

2. Question 17 Medicines NOT prescribed by a doctor

The pattern for asking questions 17a-c is similar to that for questions 16a-c. Ask question 17a: "Last week or the week before, did anyone in the family buy or obtain any medicine NOT prescribed by a doctor?" "Here is a list of SOME of the items in which we are interested." Show Card J, or ask the respondent to look at the pink card (Card J) in the flashcard booklet.

Allow the respondent time to look over the list of items. If the respondent's answer is "Yes," check that box. If the respondent answers by naming one or more medicines, check the "Yes" box and enter the name of the medicine(s) in column (a) of Table NP.

If a question is raised concerning what constitutes "non-prescription medicine," it includes any of the items shown on Card J unless the item was prescribed by a doctor in accordance with the definition referred to in paragraph B-1-a on page D-115. Also, since Card J is not an exhaustive list include any other non-prescription medicine or medication which has been purchased or obtained last week or the week before.

If the respondent appears to be thinking in terms of the medicines he has in his medicine cabinet, point out to him that we are interested only in the medicines bought or obtained last week or the week before.

If necessary, ask the respondent to refer again to the two-week calendar.

If the answer to question 17a is "No" check the "No" box and go to question 18.

If the answer to question 17a is "Yes" check the "Yes" box and ask question 17b, "What is the name of the medicine?" Record the name of the medicine in column (a) of Table NP, using a separate line for each medicine reported in answer to question 17b. Then ask question 17c (see paragraph 2-b below).

a. Column (a) of Table NP

Record in column (a) the respondent's description of the medicine, e.g., "Bayer's aspirin." If the respondent's description does not include the brand name ask what the brand name is and enter that information also.

If the brand name is not known enter "DK brand name" and record the general name by which the medicine is known, e.g., "cough syrup," "laxative," "corn plasters," "vitamins," and so forth.

If the respondent does not know either the brand name or the general name, ask the question which appears in the heading of column (a), "What is it generally used for?" Enter that information in column (a). Some examples are, "salve for poison ivy," "stomach ulcer pills," "tonic to increase appetite," and so forth.

(1) Respondent offers to show label on box, bottle, etc.

In those cases where the respondent offers to get the box or bottle of medicine and show you the label, copy the brand name from the box or bottle.

b. Question 17c

After completing question 17b and recording in column (a) of Table NP the name(s) of the medicine(s) mentioned in answer to 17b, ask the probe question 17c: "Last week or the week before, did anyone buy or obtain any other medicine NOT prescribed by a doctor?"

Check the "Yes" or "No" box. If "Yes," enter the names of the additional medicines in column (a), as instructed above.

Continue to re-ask questions 17c and 17b until you receive an answer of "No" to question 17c. Then check the "No" box in question 17c.

c. Complete Table NP

After all non-prescribed medicines reported have been recorded in Table NP, complete the line of Table NP for each.

(1) Column (b) When bought

Ask column (b): "Did you buy (obtain) the -- last week or the week before?" inserting the name of the medicine for the dashes in asking the question. Again, ask the respondent to refer to the calendar as appropriate. Check the box for "last week" or the "week before" in accordance with the respondent's answer.

If the medicine was purchased both last week and the week before, check both boxes and footnote the entry showing the number of separate purchases during the past 2 weeks.

If it should be disclosed at this point that the medicine actually was bought or obtained before the 2 week reference period check the "Before 2 weeks" box, and do not ask columns (c)-(e).

If you should learn that the medicine was bought during interview week, do not check any box but enter a footnote symbol in column (b). Enter in the footnote: "Bought (obtained) during interview week." Do not ask columns (c)-(e).

(2) Column (c) Cost

Column (c): "How much did it cost?" is to be asked only if the medicine was bought or obtained last week or the week before.

Accept the respondent's estimate, but enter the cost in dollars and cents. The "cost" referred to is the cost of the total amount of this particular medicine purchased during the past 2 weeks. For example, if a bottle of aspirin was bought last week and a bottle the week before at the cost of eighty-nine cents per bottle, the "cost" to be entered in column (c) on that line of Table NP would be $1.78(2), the (2) indicating two purchases of the medicine in the 2-week recall period.

If the medicine was obtained without cost to the family, enter "Free" and explain where the medicine was obtained, e.g., "Free from county clinic," "Free from doctor," etc.

If the respondent cannot provide the cost or a reasonable estimate, enter "DK" and the reason, e.g., "DK--husband bought."

(3) Column (d) Where bought

Ask column (d): "Where did you buy it?" and check the appropriate box if the respondent tells you that it was a "drug store," "grocery store," or "mail order house."

If the respondent reports some other type of place, check the "Other" box and specify the type of place. Be sure that this entry describes completely the type of place. If the respondent tells you that the medicine was bought at a discount store ask further questions to determine if it was a discount department store or discount drug store or some other type of store. Some examples of "Other" types of places are: "gas station," "department store," "five and ten cent store," "door to door salesman," "lecturers," "spielers," etc.

Do not record the name of the firm. If the respondent should give you a name, such as "Butler's," "The Broadway," etc., it will be necessary for you to ask the respondent what type of place it is (unless you are familiar with the place and know the type).

Only one box is to be checked in column (d), unless, of course, there were two or more purchases at different places; in that event check all boxes that apply and indicate in a footnote the number of purchases at each place. If the respondent questions what to call the place (store) because it sells more than one type of product, ask him to class it according to what he considers the principal products sold.

If you learned in asking column (c) that the medicine was obtained free of cost to the family, leave column (d) blank (that information will be included in your footnote to column (c)).

(4) Column (e) Who uses the medicine

As noted on the questionnaire, column (e) is not to be asked for first aid supplies. For other medicines bought (obtained) last week or the week before, ask: "Which members of the family use the --?" inserting the name of the medicine for the dashes in asking the question.

Unlike the instructions for column (c) of Table P you are to enter in column (e) of Table NP the column numbers of all persons who are using (or will use) the particular box, bottle, etc., of the medicine bought or obtained last week or the week before. For example, a woman might say that she bought a box of aspirin week before last and used all of it herself, since she was the only one having headaches. In this case, you would enter only her column number in column (e) of Table NP (even if other members of the family may have taken aspirin in the past and may do so again). If she said she bought the aspirin just to have on hand, but that nobody had taken any yet, you would need to ask additional questions to find out who would use the aspirin when the need arose. For example, you might say, "Who will use this aspirin the most?" and "Will anybody else use this aspirin?"

d. More than five non-prescription medicines reported

If more than five non-prescription medicines are reported, show the Table NP information about the additional medicine(s) in a footnote, entering the name of the medicine, week of purchase, cost, and so forth in the same detail required for Table NP.

3. Conditions to be carried back to Table I

As indicated by the "INTERVIEWER" instruction enclosed in the box to the right of question 17, "impairments" and "conditions on Card A" which are reported in answer to question 16 or 17, but which do not already appear in Table I are to be carried back to Table I. This should be done only after completing question 17 and Table NP.

In carrying such conditions back to Table I, enter in column (b) the question number in which it was reported--16 or 17. Before starting Table I for the added condition use an introductory statement something like the following, "You told me your husband was taking insulin for his diabetes"; then proceed to ask the necessary questions in Table I.

If you have previously asked the questions in columns (t)-(w) of Table I for this person, carry the added condition only through column (s); if not, ask the questions in columns (t)-(w) also.

C. Smoking Habits--Questions 18-22

Questions 18-22 on smoking habits are to be asked after Tables P and NP have been completed for all medicines reported. They are to be asked individually as a block for each person 17 years old or over in the household. Ask questions 18 through 22 of the respondent first, then the other family members in the order listed.

For persons under 17 years of age, check the "Under 17" box in question 18a and skip questions 19-22. This applies even if you learn that a person under 17 actually does smoke.

Before asking questions 18-22 of a respondent the first time, read to him the introductory statement printed on the questionnaire above question 18a: "Now I have a few questions about smoking--."

1. Question 18a Cigarettes smoked during entire life

Then ask question 18a as worded: "Have you smoked at least 100 cigarettes during your entire life?" (100 cigarettes is the equivalent of 5 packs, of course, but is to be asked in this way, because the respondent might misinterpret a question about "5 packs" as referring to 5 packs a day.)

Check the "Yes" or "No" box in the person's column in accordance with the respondent's answer. If "Yes" ask question 18b. If "No," skip questions 18b, 19, and 20, and ask question 21.

A self-respondent should be able to answer question 18a without difficulty. In some cases a respondent answering for another person may not know how many cigarettes the person has smoked. If the respondent is unable to provide the answer, enter "DK" for question 18a in the person's column, but treat the "DK" as a "Yes" answer and ask question 18b.

a. Question 18b
Most cigarettes smoked per day

If the answer to question 18a is "Yes" or "DK" ask question 18b: "During the period when you were smoking the most, how many cigarettes a day did you usually smoke?"

Enter the number on the "per day" line in the person's column. An estimate is acceptable. Also, intervals are acceptable. For example, if the respondent should say "6 or 8," you would enter "6-8." However, if the respondent gives a vague answer, such as, "hardly any at all," ask him what he means and try to obtain an estimate of the number.

If the respondent should answer in terms of "packs," convert this to the equivalent number of cigarettes. For example, if a person should report "about a pack and a half a day," you would enter "30" for the number of cigarettes smoked per day.

Although the question refers to cigarettes smoked "a day," some persons who smoke only occasionally may answer in terms of "a week" or a longer period. If the answer is in terms of a week, enter the figure on the "per week" line in the person's column. If the person did not smoke at least one cigarette a week, but does smoke occasionally, enter in a footnote what the respondent says, e.g., "Smoked only about 2 cigarettes a month at the most," etc.

The phrase, "During the period when you were smoking the most" refers to the period in which the respondent smoked the heaviest, and can range from a month to many years. If the respondent appears not to understand this, ask an additional question, such as, "Was there any period in your life when you smoked more than you did smoke before or more than you smoke now?"

2. Question 19
Persons now smoking cigarettes

Question 19 is to be asked for all persons who have answered "Yes" (or "DK") in question 18a.

a. Question 19a
Smoke cigarettes now

Ask question 19a as worded: "Do you smoke cigarettes now?" and check "Yes" or "No" in the person's column.

Accept the respondent's answer, but if a question is raised, what you need to determine is whether or not the person had stopped smoking altogether on or before "last Sunday night." If he had stopped smoking cigarettes only temporarily because of illness, economic reasons or the like, but indicates that he has not stopped altogether, you should check "Yes" for this person.

In some cases, you may get a qualified answer to question 19a, such as "Occasionally," "Once in a while," "Just when I go to a party," etc. In such cases, check "Yes" but also enter the essence of the respondent's answer in a footnote.

If "Yes" to question 19a, ask questions 19b and 19c. If "No," skip questions 19b and 19c and ask question 20.

b. Question 19b How many cigarettes smoked now

If "Yes" to question 19a, ask question 19b: "On the average, about how many cigarettes a day do you smoke?"

Enter the number of cigarettes the person smokes "per day" or "per week" at the present time, i.e., as of last Sunday night. The term "on the average" and "about" indicates that an estimate is acceptable. However, try to get an exact number. If the answer is expressed in "pack(s)" smoked per day convert this to the number of individual cigarettes smoked.

c. Question 19c How many cigarettes smoked 12 months ago

Question 19c: "Twelve months ago, how many cigarettes a day were you smoking?" is to be asked to learn if the person's smoking habits have changed in the past year.

If the respondent's answer is "The same or about the same as now," or he gives a number which is the same as the entry for question 19b, check the "Same" box in the column for that person.

If the person "did not smoke cigarettes 12 months ago," check the box "Didn't smoke."

If the person smoked a <u>different</u> amount of cigarettes 12 months ago than he is smoking now, enter the number on the "per day" or "per week" line.

After making the entries for question 19c, skip question 20 and go to question 21. This instruction appears in the shaded area in each person's column.

3. Question 20 Former cigarette smokers: Amount smoked 12 months ago

Question 20 is to be asked to learn about the changes in smoking habits of persons who used to smoke cigarettes but are not smoking cigarettes now ("No" to question 19a).

a. Question 20a How many cigarettes smoked 12 months ago

Ask question 20a as worded: "On the average, about how many cigarettes a day were you smoking 12 months ago?"

If the person was not smoking cigarettes 12 months ago, check the "None" box in his column.

If he was smoking 12 months ago enter the number smoked "per day" or "per week" on the line provided for that purpose in the person's column.

b. Question 20b How long since smoked cigarettes fairly regularly

Question 20b: "How long has it been since you smoked cigarettes fairly regularly?" is to be asked regardless of the answer to question 20a. The answer to question 20b may be more than 12 months ago, less than 12 months ago, or "Never." that is, the person may never have smoked "fairly regularly."

Accept the respondent's answer, but if he should ask you what you mean by "fairly regularly," tell him this means smoking cigarettes on three or more consecutive days.

If the respondent's answer is "less than a month," enter "Und. 1" for "months." If less than a year, enter the number of completed months (1-11) on the line for months. If more than a year, enter the number of completed years on the line for years. If the respondent is not sure, obtain the best estimate he can give you. If the respondent is unable to provide any estimate enter "DK."

If the person says he never smoked cigarettes regularly, put a footnote symbol in the column for question 20b, and enter in the footnote, "Never smoked cigarettes regularly."

4. Question 21 Cigars

Question 21 is to be asked of all persons 17 years or older.

a. Question 21a Ever smoked cigars

Ask question 21a as worded: "Have you ever smoked any cigars?" and check "Yes" or "No" in accordance with the respondent's answer.

If the answer is "No," skip questions 21b-d and go to question 22.

b. Question 21b Smoke cigars now

If "Yes" to question 21a, ask question 21b: "Do you smoke cigars now?"

Question 21b is similar to question 19a, except that question 21b refers to cigars.

If a qualified answer is given, check the "Yes" box but enter the answer in a footnote. For example, a person might say that he smokes cigars when they are given to him in celebration of the birth of a baby or some other special occasion. For such a case, the "Yes" box should be checked and the answer recorded in a footnote.

c. Question 21c How many cigars smoked now

If the answer to question 21b is "Yes," ask question 21c: "About how many cigars a day do you usually smoke?" and enter the number smoked "per day" or "per week" in the person's column.

d. Question 21d How long since smoked cigars

If the answer to question 21b is "No," ask question 21d: "How long has it been since you smoked cigars?"

Accept the respondent's answer, but if a question is raised, explain that you want to find out how long it has been since he smoked at least three cigars or more a week.

If the person should say that he never smoked cigars regularly (as many as three per week), enter in the footnote, "Never smoked as many as three cigars a week."

5. Question 22 Pipe smoking

Question 22 is similar to question 21, except that question 22 refers to pipe smoking.

a. Question 22a Ever smoked a pipe

Ask question 22a as worded: "Have you ever smoked a pipe?" and check "Yes" or "No" in the person's column.

If the answer is "No," skip questions 22b-d, and ask questions 18-22 for the next person 17 years old or over.

b. Question 22b Smoke a pipe now

If the answer to question 22a is "Yes," ask question 22b: "Do you smoke a pipe now?" and check "Yes" or "No" in accordance with the respondent's answer.

c. Question 22c How many pipefuls smoked

If the answer to question 22b is "Yes," ask question 22c: "About how many pipefuls of tobacco a day do you usually smoke?" Enter the number of pipefuls of tobacco smoked "per day" or "per week." If the respondent cannot give an exact number or an estimate but instead answer answers in terms of packages of pipe tobacco smoked, or ounces of tobacco smoked enter "DK" in question 22c and enter the information about the amount smoked in a footnote.

d. Question 22d How long since smoked a pipe

If the answer to question 22b is "No," ask question 22d: "How long has it been since you smoked a pipe?" and enter the number of months or years in the space provided.

Accept the respondent's answer, but if a question is raised explain that you want to find out how long it has been since he smoked at least 2 or more pipefuls of tobacco a day.

If the person should say that he never smoked a pipe regularly (as much as 2 pipefuls of tobacco a day), enter in the footnote, "Never smoked as much as 2 pipefuls of tobacco a day."

6. Where to proceed next

After checking the "No" box in question 22a, or completing either question 22c or 22d, ask questions 18-22 for the next person. Complete questions 18-22 for each related household member 17 years old or over. Then go to question 23.

CHAPTER 7.

PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS AND INCOME
(Questions 23-25)

A. Questions 23-25

Questions 23-25 are to be asked after completion of the questions on smoking habits for all related household members.

1. Order of asking questions 23-25

Illustration G below summarizes the order of asking questions 23-25 in a four-person household, where the wife is the respondent.

Illustration G

Questions	Head ①	Wife ②	Son (age 20) ③	Roomer ④
23	1st	Check box	2nd	For self
24	2nd	1st	3rd	For self
25	To be asked for all related members; answer to be entered in column for head only			For self

B. Question 23 Service in Armed Forces

Ask question 23a, on service in the Armed Forces, only of males 17 years old and over. For other persons, check the box "Fem. or under 17 yrs." and skip the remaining parts of question 23.

1. "Armed Forces"--defined

If the answer to question 23a, "Did you ever serve in the Armed Forces of the United States?" is "No," skip the remaining parts of question 23. If the answer to question 23a is "Yes," ask the remaining parts of question 23 that are appropriate, as indicated below.

"Armed Forces" means active duty for any time at all in the Armed Forces as defined in Part D, Chapter 2, paragraph D-2-b-(1).

2. Questions 23b, 23c, and 23d Service during war

If the answer to question 23a is "Yes," ask question 23b, "Was any of your service during a war?" Check the "Yes" box if the person's service was during war-time only or if it was during both war and peace, and ask question 23c. Check the "No" box in question 23b if the person's only service was during peace-time. For those with "No" to question 23b, ask question 23d.

3. Periods of service

Accept the respondent's answers to questions 23b, 23c, and 23d regarding the period or periods of service in the Armed Forces. However, if a question is raised as to what dates are covered by a given war, cite the appropriate period as follows:

World War II -- September 16, 1940 to July 25, 1947
Korean War -- June 27, 1950 to January 31, 1955

Check the appropriate boxes for all of the wars in which the person has served.

Check the box "Other" for service during World War I, the Spanish American War or any other war not listed on the questionnaire.

C. Question 24 Education

Ask question 24a highest grade of school attended only of persons 17 years old and over. If the person is under 17 years of age, check the box for "Under 17 years" without asking the question.

1. Make only one mark

Make only one mark to report the answer for this question. Thus, if the highest grade a person has attended is the junior year of high school, circle the "3" opposite "High." Enter the highest grade attended regardless of "skipped" or "repeated" grades.

2. Regular school

Count only grades attended in a regular school where persons are given formal education in graded public or private schools, whether day or night school, and whether attendance was full time or part time. A "regular" school is one which advances a person toward an elementary or high school diploma, or a college, university, or professional school degree.

3.	Nonregular schools	Do not count education or training received in nonregular schools, such as vocational, trade, or business schools outside the regular school system. For example, barber's colleges, beautician schools, citizenship schools, and dancing schools are not to be counted. Likewise do not count training received "on the job," or correspondence school training unless it is given by a regular school and is credited toward a school diploma or college degree.
4.	Junior high school	If the highest grade a person has attended is in a junior high school, determine the number of years attended and record the grade as if it had been in a school system with eight years of elementary school and four years of high school.
5.	Post-graduate schooling	For persons who have attended post-graduate high school but have not attended a regular college, circle the "4" opposite "High." For those with post-graduate college training, circle the "5+" opposite "College."
6.	Other school systems	If the person attended school in a foreign country, in an ungraded school, under a tutor, or under other special circumstances, give the nearest equivalent of his highest grade attended or the number of years of attendance.
7.	No schooling	For persons who have not attended school at all check the box "None."
8.	Question 24b Year finished	Ask question 24b for all persons who are shown in question 24a as having attended school. Check the "Yes" box if the person has completed the entire grade or academic year entered in question 24a. Check the "No" box if the person did not finish the grade or year. For example, a person may have completed only a half year, or he may have failed to "pass" the grade.

Note that the entry in question 24b for a person who may be currently enrolled in the regular school system would be "No." For example, a 17-year-old boy enrolled in the fourth year of high school would have "High-4" circled in question 24a but since he would not yet have completed this grade the "No" box would be checked in question 24b.

For a person marked as "college 5+" in question 24a check "Yes" in question 24b if he has gone through one or more post-graduate academic years. Otherwise check the "No" box.

If the answer to question 24a indicates that the person completed more than one post-graduate academic college year, check the "Yes" box without asking question 24b.

D. Question 25 Family income

Question 25 is asked in order to obtain the total combined income for the entire family during the past 12 months.

Ask the respondent to look at the salmon card (Card K), in the flashcard booklet as you ask the question.

Read all parts of the question so that the respondent will know which persons are included in the family and what types of income are to be included.

1. Income of all related members

This question covers the income of the head of the household and all other household members who are related to the head. Thus, it may cover the income of two married couples who are related to each other and living together. Record the code designation (A, B, C, etc.) for the income of this entire group of related persons in the column for the head of the household and leave the question blank for all household members related to the head.

Income to be reported is gross cash income (excluding pay in kind) except for reporting income for a family with their own farm or business; in that case, net income should be reported.

If the question is raised, this should be income before taxes are deducted.

Also include in the family income figure, the income of a member of the Armed Forces who is living at home with his family even though he is not to be recorded as a family member. Include allotments and other money received by the family from a member of the Armed Forces not living at home.

2. Income of unrelated persons

In the column for each roomer, servant, or other person not related to the head, enter the code for his or her individual income, with one exception--if two or more such persons are related to each other (e.g., roomer and roomer's wife), enter the code for their combined incomes in the column for the member of the group who is listed first on the questionnaire.

The following illustrates the proper entries in question 25 for a five-member household consisting of a man (head) and his family and a roomer and his wife.

Col. ①	Col. ②	Col. ③	Col. ④	Col. ⑤
Poe	———	———	Roach	———
Howard	Emily	Sam	John	Mary
Head	Wife	Son	Roomer	Roomer's wife
G			F	

3. Problem cases

Nearly all respondents will answer the income question without hesitation. An occasional respondent may refuse to answer the question, however, even though you explain that the information will be kept strictly confidential. In that case, enter the word "Refused" in the column for the head. If the respondent does not answer the question for some other reason, enter this reason in the column for the head.

4.	Approximation acceptable	The fact that income is divided into groups on the income card and that you ask "Which of these income groups ---?" should indicate to the respondent that an approximation is acceptable. If he appears not to understand, to be trying to figure out the exact income, or says he cannot give the exact income, point out that we are interested only in the income group and that an estimate is acceptable.
5.	Reasons for obtaining income	The income is very important in the statistics for separating the families we interview into groups that live differently. The way these different income groups live affects their health in many ways. For example, people with different incomes have different kinds of occupations, and their occupations affect their health. All of the income information, just like the rest of the information, is completely confidential.

CHAPTER 8.

ITEM D AND DIABETES SUPPLEMENT

A. General

In fiscal year 1965, the Public Health Service is interested in obtaining additional information about persons with diabetes. This will be accomplished by filling a separate Diabetes Supplement (Form NHS-HIS-1(d)).

B. Item D on Front of Questionnaire

After completing Item 15, the telephone number, make the diabetes check referred to in Item D. That is, you are to check Table I to determine whether any of the persons in the household have been reported as having diabetes. If there are none, leave the "Thank You" letter and depart. If diabetes has been reported for one or more persons, a Diabetes Supplement questionnaire must be filled for each such person.

C. Diabetes Supplement (Form NHS-HIS-1(d))

In preparing the Diabetes Supplement, enter the identification information called for on the front page. Enter the PSU number; the segment number; the household serial number; the sample number; and the full name, age, and column number of the person with diabetes in the spaces provided.

1. Respondent rules

The respondent rules for the Diabetes Supplement are contained on the front cover. If the person who has diabetes is an eligible respondent according to the definition used in the basic survey he is to respond for himself. If he is at home at the time of the original interview, simply continue with the diabetes questions. If the person is an eligible respondent but is not at home, arrangements must be made to call back at a time when he will be home. In these cases, it is of the utmost importance that you determine the best time to call and that you try to plan your work so that you will be able to call back at the right time. In order not to forget this, enter the best time to call in the footnote space on the front cover of the Supplement, e.g., "Mr. Smith will be home after 6:00 P.M. any night in the week."

If the diabetic person will not be available at any time during interview week, you may use as a respondent a person who knows the most about the person's diabetes, for example, his wife or mother.

Make the necessary respondent entries, i.e., check the "responded for self" box or enter the column number of the respondent. Except for children under 19 years of age, if someone other than the diabetic person responded enter the reason in a footnote.

2. Record of return calls

If no return call is necessary, check the "None" box in the "Record of return calls to complete supplement." If return calls are necessary, enter the date and time. Also enter your signature and code.

D. General interviewing procedure

For the most part, the questions in the supplement are self-explanatory. Special points and definitions are shown on the right hand side of each page.

Instructions about the order of asking the questions and following any necessary skip pattern appear on the questionnaire in various ways and are in light face type.

Prior to starting the interview, it will be necessary to have ready at hand the two auxiliary forms: NHS-HIS-1(c)--the special symptoms card to be used in connection with question 3, and the special folder of pamphlet covers to be used in connection with question 35.

1. Use footnotes

In addition to recording the specific answers to each question, make generous use of the footnote space (or the right hand margin). Keep these footnotes as brief and cogent as possible; when a respondent expands or qualifies his answer, record the essential part of it in a footnote, or in the side margin, by using his words not your own.

2. "Don't know" answers

As in the regular interview, if a respondent does not know the answer to a question, enter that fact in the appropriate space. However, before accepting such answers make sure that you give the respondent time to provide a more positive answer. Some persons say, "I don't know" as a means of organizing their thoughts or as a verbal preface to a more positive answer.

3. Conditions, hospitalizations, and other health information reported while asking the Diabetes Supplement

If during the course of an interview for a Diabetes Supplement the respondent should report conditions or hospitalizations not reported earlier, or give information which is inconsistent with other health information reported earlier, do not under any circumstances make any changes on the basic NHS-HIS-1 questionnaire, instead, just enter such information in a footnote on the Diabetes Supplement.

4. Miscellaneous points

The interviewing principles contained in Chapter 1, Part E of your Manual apply to the diabetes questions as well as to the other health questions. It is particularly important that you display an objective and impartial attitude and avoid influencing the respondent's answers by expressing any knowledge you yourself may have about diabetes--it is the respondent's account we are interested in, not yours.

If you are asked the purpose of the diabetes questions, you may say that it is to obtain, on a national basis, up-to-date information on diabetes from the people who actually have it so that all the various agencies concerned with this important health problem will have access to the kind of diabetes statistics that will help them plan their research and information programs. Point out that the information requested will be accorded confidential treatment (this is a specific provision of the law) and only statistical totals will appear in any ensuing publications.

NHS-HIS-100
FY 1965

PART E

INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES

QUALITY AND QUANTITY OF WORK

AND ADMINISTRATIVE

CHAPTER 1.

THE INTERVIEW

A. Purpose of this chapter

This chapter covers the techniques and procedures essential for accurate interviewing.

B. How to begin the interview

1. Introduce yourself to the respondent

The first step in the interview is to introduce yourself, state that you are from the United States Bureau of the Census, and show your identification card. Use the following introduction:

> "I am _____ from the United States Bureau of the Census; here is my identification (show your identification card). We are making a survey for the United States Public Health Service." (Be sure to mention that the survey is being conducted for the United States Public Health Service.)

At sample units for which the "year built" determination is to be made (a "year built" stamp is on the front of the questionnaire for assigned units), ask first "When was this structure built?" See Part D, Chapter 1.

If you are not invited in immediately after you have introduced yourself and determined that the household is to be interviewed, you may add, "May I come in?"

2. Ask the first question as soon as possible

After seating yourself, begin immediately with the first question of the interview:

> "What is the name of the head of this household?"

The sooner you get the respondent to participate in the interview, the better. To start off with the interview is much more desirable than to describe the types of questions you are planning to ask.

a. Advance letter

An advance letter (sometimes called the "Dear Friend" letter) is sent out from the Regional Office immediately prior to the week of interview. It is sent only to those households for which a specific street address or mailing address has been obtained. This letter tells the respondent that his household has been selected for inclusion in the sample and briefly explains the general purpose of the survey. Enclosed with the letter is a booklet (prepared by the Public Health Service) describing further how the survey is conducted and illustrating the kinds of statistics which are produced.

Even though the advance letter and the booklet are sent to inform the household of your visit, you should not ask whether they have been received or voluntarily supply the respondent with copies. Drawing attention to the letter might interfere with the introduction as specified in Par. B-1. However, if the respondent questions why you are there, you may use the material in the letter and the booklet in making your explanation.

3. If persons outside immediate family are present

If persons who are not members of the immediate family are present, suggest to the respondent before continuing that he might prefer to talk to you in a more private place. Even though a respondent might not refuse to be interviewed under these circumstances, the presence of outsiders might cause a reluctance to talk about certain types of illnesses which could result in a loss of information.

4. Explaining the survey

You will find that most respondents will accept the brief explanation in your introduction of the reason you are taking the survey. However, there will be a few who will want more information about the survey and you should be prepared to answer their questions. There may be a few others who are reluctant to give information, or who may actually refuse to be interviewed because they don't want to be bothered or because they don't believe the survey has any real value.

a. Respondent questions purpose

If a respondent questions the purpose of the survey, explain that it is being taken to obtain information on the health of the people of the entire country. Point out that all information about individuals will be given confidential treatment. If it is necessary to give additional explanation, you should base it on the material given in Part A, Chapter 1 of this manual, using your own words to suit the level of the understanding of the respondent.

If a respondent questions you as to whether the National Health Survey has any connection with any National or local health program or legislation, use the following statement as a guide:

> The National Health Survey was set up by an Act of Congress in 1956. The National Health Survey Act was originally proposed by the Eisenhower administration but it was supported by both major political parties and also by the American Medical Association, and other organizations.
>
> The reason it received this support from all groups was because it was intended to be--and still is--a fact-finding survey only--with no axe to grind at all.
>
> Everybody realized that the information about people's health and medical care, was very badly needed, and they trusted the Survey to be concerned only with gathering facts about these health problems--and <u>not</u> with how the problems should be solved.
>
> Actually, when there are controversies about how to solve some health problem both sides turn to the National Health Survey for the facts on the situation because they trust the Survey to be unbiased.

b. Confusion with other Census work

If the respondent confuses this survey with other Census work, or the 10-year Census, explain that this is one of the many special surveys that the Census is asked to carry out because of its function as an objective fact-finding agency and because of its broad experience in conducting surveys.

c. Why this household

If you are asked why you are interviewing this particular household, explain that this happens to be one of the representative addresses picked. Who lives at the address, and whether or not they have problems with their health, had nothing to do with the selection. Taken as a group, the people living at these sample addresses will represent the total population of the United States in the health statistics produced and published by the Public Health Service in their various publications.

d. Respondent questions time required for interview

If the respondent asks how much time will be required for the interview, tell him that this depends on the number of people in the family and on their health conditions. Do not say that the interview will take only a few minutes.

If the respondent states that he has no time right now for an interview, find out when you can come back. However, always assume (without asking) that the respondent has the time right now unless he tells you otherwise.

e. Refusals

Our experience has been that very few respondents actually refuse to cooperate. However, if you have difficulty in obtaining an interview, explain the purpose and importance of the survey, and stress the confidential treatment accorded all information furnished by the respondent. This should be done also at any point during the interview if the respondent should hesitate to answer certain questions.

C. Your own manner

Your greatest asset in conducting an interview efficiently is to combine a friendly attitude with a business-like manner. If a respondent's conversation wanders away from the interview, try to cut it off tactfully--preferably by asking the next question on the questionnaire. Over-friendliness and concern on your part about the respondent's personal troubles may actually lead to your obtaining less information.

It is especially important in this survey that you maintain an objective attitude. Do not indicate a personal opinion about replies you receive to questions, even by your facial expression or tone of voice. Since the illness discussed may be of a personal or serious nature, expressions of surprise, disapproval, or even sympathy on your part may cause respondents to give untrue answers or to withhold information. Your own objectivity about the questions will be the best method for putting the respondent at ease and making him feel free to tell you of the conditions and impairments in his family.

Avoid "talking down" to respondents when explaining terms but give as direct and simple explanations as possible.

D. How to ask the questions

1. Follow the order on the questionnaire

Ask the questions in the order specified in these instructions. If you change the order, it is likely that both you and the respondent will become comfused. This is especially true of the health questions, which refer to different periods of time. Asking the questions out of order would force the respondent to keep jumping back and forth between time periods and would invite confusion.

Again, as pointed out earlier, the questions in Table I and Table II are to be asked only after all conditions and hospitalizations for each related member of the household have been reported in questions 12-13. Going back and forth between the top and the bottom of the questionnaire would be the "hard way" to conduct the interview. It is also likely that if you should skip around the questionnaire you would not remember to ask every question for every person.

2. Information given out of turn or volunteered

Sometimes respondents will start describing the health of the family in answer to the very first question and will cover their own illnesses and those of other family members in such a way that it is difficult to keep straight which person has which condition.

When this happens, you should explain your problem to the respondent, namely, that you cannot keep up with him in recording the information and at the same time be sure that you are recording accurately what he says. Then, ask him to permit you to ask the questions as they appear so that he won't need to give the information more than once.

3. Ask each question exactly as worded

You are to ask each question exactly as it appears on the questionnaire, except for the substitution of the name of the person for "you," etc.

The wording and order of each question have been tested in actual interviewing, and have been carefully designed to give the desired information. Therefore, the uniformity and value of the final results depend on all interviewers asking the questions in the same order and with the same wording.

a. Do not ask question when the answer has been provided earlier

However, you should avoid asking questions unnecessarily. It is bad interviewing practice to ask a question when the respondent has already provided you with the specific answer. It may confuse the respondent, or even antagonize him, and may result in loss of information for later questions in the interview.

If you are sure of the specific answer you may make the appropriate entry without asking the question. If you are not sure, it is good interviewing practice to verify the answer by saying something like: "I believe you told me earlier that --. Is this correct?"

For example, if you recall that the respondent said in answer to question 7 that he was under a doctor's treatment for "diabetes," you should check the "Yes" box in column (c) of Table I for the "diabetes" without asking the question. Similarly, if you learned (and remember) that a person had a foot cut off in a World War II injury, you may make the appropriate entry in column (m) and the "Before 12 mos." box in column (p) for the "missing foot" without asking those questions.

Of course, if you do not remember the answer to any question, you must always ask it.

4. **Avoid influencing the respondent**

Experience in other studies has shown that respondents tend to agree with what they think you expect them to say even though the facts in the case may be different. Therefore, you must avoid "leading" the respondent by adding words to the questions or making slight changes in them that might indicate an answer you expect to hear. Even slight changes which may seem to make no apparent difference can prove harmful and should be avoided. For example, the question "Were you sick at any time last week or the week before?" is greatly changed in meaning when changed to "You weren't sick at any time last week or the week before, were you?"

The question, "What did the doctor say it was--did he give it a medical name?" would have a different meaning if changed to, "Did the doctor say you had bronchitis?"

Changes in question wording such as these suggest answers to the respondent and must be avoided. In an effort to be helpful the respondent may say, "Yes, that was it" or "That is true" or "That sounds about right," whereas the true facts may have been quite different. Sometimes the respondent may not know the answers to the questions, and if this is the case, the fact that he doesn't know should be recorded (see par. F-2 on page E-12).

5. **Listen to the respondent**

Listen to the respondent until he finishes his statement. Failure to do so can result in your putting down incorrect or incomplete entries. The two most common types of errors made in this regard are:

a. Failure to listen to the last half of the sentence because you are busy recording the first half.

b. Interrrupting the respondent before he has finished, especially if the respondent hesitates. A respondent often hesitates when trying to recollect some fact, and you should allow sufficient time for this to be done. Also, people will sometimes answer "I don't know" at first, when actually they are merely considering a question. When you think that

this may be the situation, wait for the respondent to finish the statement before repeating the question or asking an additional question.

6. Repeat the question when necessary

The respondent may not always understand the question when it is first asked, and sometimes you can tell from the answer that the question has not been understood. In this case, repeat the question using the same phrasing as you used originally. This should not prove to be embarrassing since what you said the first time was not heard or understood. Frequently the respondent is capable of understanding the question but has missed a word or two. If you think it helpful, you can preface the repetition of the question by a phrase such as "I see," "Oh, yes," and the like, and then repeat the actual question. A conversational tone will go far in making the question sound new, even though you are using exactly the same words.

7. Repeating the answer

Sometimes it is helpful to repeat the respondent's answer and then pause expectantly. Often this will bring out additional information on the subject. It is also useful as a check on your understanding of what has been said, expecially if the statements or comments given have not been entirely clear.

8. Do not practice medicine

You are to interview the respondent, not practice medicine. Do not try to decide yourself whether or not any member of the household is ill. Enter on the questionnaire everything the respondent mentions. If a person mentions some condition but makes light of it or expresses doubt that he was "ill," enter the condition on the questionnaire anyway and ask the appropriate questions about it.

Do not attempt to diagnose a respondent's illness from his symptoms, or to substitute names of diseases for the respondent's own description of the trouble. If a respondent's answer to a question is not specific or detailed enough, ask additional questions in accordance with instructions in paragraph E below. However, the final entry must always represent what the respondent said, in his or her own words.

9. Pacing the interview

Try to avoid hurrying the interview even under trying circumstances. If the respondent senses that you are in a rush to complete the questions and get out of the house she will probably cooperate by omitting important health information which she might feel would take too much time to explain and record.

Maintaining a calm, unhurried manner and asking the questions in an objective and deliberate way will do much to promote an attitude of relaxed attention on the part of the respondent.

10. Flashcard Booklet, NHS-HIS-501

Reference has been made to Cards A-K in the instructions for various parts of the interview. These cards and calendars for 1963, 1964, and 1965 are bound together in your flashcard booklet, NHS-HIS-501(b). Of these, the respondent is to look at Cards E-K, select a statement, note the types of nonprescription medicines in which we are interested, or select the income group.

To facilitate the interview, a version of the flashcard booklet for the respondent's use, containing Cards E-K, has been prepared. Each of these cards is a different color, to help the respondent locate the correct card. When you first ask the activity limitation question, column (t) of Table I, locate the appropriate card and hand the respondent the booklet with that card on top. (Have the respondent keep the booklet until you have completed the income question.)

For later questions involving looking at one of the cards, ask the respondent to turn to the appropriate card, giving both the letter and the color. For example, if you are asking the mobility limitation question, column (v) of Table I, ask the respondent to turn to the tan card (Card I). By noting the color of the card at which he is looking you can make sure the respondent is looking at the right card. (In some households, of course, only Cards J and K will be used by the respondent.) Be sure to get the booklet back before leaving the household.

The foregoing procedure is not mandatory. In some interviews, it may be more efficient to use only your Flashcard Booklet, but by and large the use of this method will avoid the delays and interruptions caused by the necessity of passing the Flashcard Booklet back and forth.

E. Asking additional questions

1. When to ask additional questions

Sometimes a person will give you an answer which does not furnish the kind of information you need or one which is not complete. You should always ask additional questions in such cases, being careful to encourage the respondent to do the explaining without your suggesting what the explanations might be. In all sections of the questionnaire you should ask as many questions as necessary to satisfy yourself that you have obtained complete and accurate information insofar as the respondent is able to give it to you.

Be sure to keep asking additional questions until you have a complete picture and all the pertinent details.

However, do not "over-probe." If the respondent says she does not know the answer to a question, to try to insist that she give some answer to the question might not only irritate the respondent, but also make her wonder about our interest in accurate responses.

2. How to ask additional questions

Additional questions must be asked in such a way that you obtain the information required without suggesting specific answers to the respondent.

There are many acceptable phrases that you can use to draw out the respondent. For example, "Please explain that a little more," "Please describe what you mean," or "What was the operation for?" might be used when the information given is sketchy or incomplete. In every case you will need to fit the questions to the information which has already been given.

In some instances you may need to suggest specific alternatives to the respondent when general phrases have not been successful in obtaining the information. This is also an acceptable method for asking additional questions, provided the respondent is never given a single choice. Any items specifically suggested to the respondent must always consist of two or more choices.

The examples below call attention to some acceptable methods for asking additional questions as well as to methods that are not acceptable.

Acceptable	Not acceptable
a. Can you tell me the approximate number of times?	Would you say it was six times?
b. You said you first noticed the condition about a year ago. Was it more than 12 months ago or less than 12 months ago?	Was it more than a year ago?
c. Do you all live and eat together?	Are you all one household?
d. Does she live the greater part of the year here or at her sister's home?	Is she a member of this household?
e. What kind of asthma is it?	Is it bronchial asthma?

The "Not Acceptable" questions in examples (c) and (d) shown an interviewer who is unable to apply Census rules for determining the composition of a household, and expects the respondent (who doesn't know the Census rules) to make the decision.

The "Not Acceptable" questions in examples (a) and (e) illustrate an invitation to the respondent to just say "Yes" without giving any thought to the question.

The "Acceptable" question in example (b) illustrates a proper way to give the respondent an opportunity to tie an event to a particular period of time. The "Not Acceptable" question is again an invitation to the respondent to say "Yes."

F. Recording information correctly

1. General

Recording the information exactly is just as important a part of the interview as asking the questions correctly. This involves writing clearly and plainly, recognizing in advance the amount of space allotted for descriptive entries and adjusting the size of your writing to fit into the space provided. If additional description is required, make free use of the footnote space. Be careful not to leave blank spaces where they should be filled in. You may use ink or pencil

as you prefer. In case you use pencil, be sure the lead isn't so soft that it smudges, or so hard that it is difficult to see the writing.

2. Recording answers of "don't know"

As mentioned earlier, every effort should be made to encourage the respondent to give specific and complete answers to the questions. However, it may happen sometimes that the respondent doesn't have the information needed to answer a question. In such cases, you should enter "DK" for "don't know" in the space for the answer.

Do not use "DK" to indicate that you, the interviewer, don't know whether or not to ask the questions.

The use of "DK" is only to indicate that the respondent does not know the answer to a particular question. It is not to be used to fill answers for questions that you may have overlooked at the time of interview. If, after an interview, you discover blanks on the questionnaire for questions which should have been asked, leave the items blank.

3. Recording information for unrelated persons

As pointed out earlier, the same questionnaire (or set of questionnaires) is to be used for an entire household, including any members not related to the head. Since you must interview the unrelated members separately from the related members, you must be careful about two points:

a. You must not permit any respondent to look at information previously entered on the questionnaire for persons to whom he is not related.

b. You must be sure to enter the information for each of the persons in the proper column.

4. Making corrections

Do not erase any entries. See Part D, Chapter 2 for procedures in making corrections. Do not copy questionnaires over since copying is often a major source of error.

G. Review of work

It is important that you review your work.

1. At close of interview

Be sure to look over the questionnaire while you are in the house and with the respondent, so that you can ask any additional questions that are needed.

2. Prior to transmittal

You should carefully review all questionnaires again before mailing them back to your supervisor. Check to make sure that the correct column number of person and question number have been entered in Table I and Table II, that all "Und. 17 yrs." boxes have been checked where applicable, that there are entries in question 15a, and similar items. However, do not make any entries of information which should have been furnished by the respondent and recorded during the interview.

H. Letter to be left at household after interview

You will receive a supply of "Thank You" letters (Form NHS-601) signed by the Surgeon General of the U. S. Public Health Service. One of these is to be left at each household after the interview has been completed. The letter thanks the respondent briefly for his cooperation, and can be shown by the person interviewed to other members of the household who were not at home at the time of your call.

In leaving the letter you can say something like the following: "Here is a letter of appreciation from the U. S. Public Health Service," (or) "Here is a letter from the Public Health Service thanking you for your cooperation in this survey."

I. Use of telephone

Telephone calls can be used for the following purposes only:

(1) To make appointments.
(2) To obtain one or two items of information for which the respondent has specifically invited you to telephone later.

Such calls should be made by use of a local telephone wherever practicable.

CHAPTER 2.

MAINTAINING BALANCE BETWEEN QUALITY AND QUANTITY OF WORK

A. Introduction

1. The group you are joining

You are joining a group of over 700 Census interviewers who each month interview some 35,000 households on a Current Population Survey, about 8,000 businessmen on a Current Business Survey and about 3,5000 households in the National Health Survey.

All Census interviewers are given continuous guidance and counsel during training periods in the Regional Office and through on-the-job observation of their interviewing and activities related to interviewing.

Periodically, supervisors independently reinterview some of the households to determine whether the interviewers understand and are following the correct survey procedures. Interviewers are also told what production is expected of them, that is, in terms of completing assignments efficiently and economically.

2. Rules to become a successful interviewer

Except for the types of questions asked, many of the techniques and procedures these interviewers apply will also be used by you on the National Health Survey.

It would be well for you to know and apply, at the outset, several fundamental rules to become a successful interviewer--one who will consistently enjoy the pride of accomplishment of a job well done.

a. Know precisely what your job is.
b. Obtain the required information as correctly as you can.
c. Record this information accurately and completely.
d. Work efficiently, with a minimum of lost motion.
e. Complete your assignment on time.

Your supervisory staff will give you all possible assistance toward helping you attain these objectives as quickly as possible.

B. Importance of careful work

1. Know your questionnaire

As you no doubt realize by now, you must become very familiar with the organization of the questionnaire, the skip pattern of the questioning and the types of entries you have to make in each item. Your initial training will have given you a start on this. Becoming a skilled interviewer can be achieved only by maintaining an active interest in all phases of the NHS program, with close and continuing study of the instructions contained in this Manual and with the application of these instructions in your actual field work.

2. Review completed questionnaires

Be sure to review all your questionnaires, as instructed in Part E, Chapter 1. This is the only way to be sure that you have not made careless errors.

C. Plan each day's travel

Before you start, make sure you have a good plan of the segments you will visit each day. This plan should take into account the possibility of having to go back to each segment up to three times. Consider all such factors in planning the day's work, and take time each morning to decide how you can get to the necessary segments using the least number of miles.

D. Getting enough successful interviews

One major requirement of a successful survey is to obtain information from every occupied household assigned to you. You should try your very hardest to obtain interviews at all occupied households. You should work conscientiously to obtain interviews at those households where no one is at home during the day and from the few respondents who may be reluctant to cooperate.

E. Plan your calls

1. Concentrate on "Not home"

Frequently, however, there are households whose occupants are not home when you call. These are usually households of a single person or a working husband and wife. After your first call when you find no one home ask neighbors, janitors or switchboard operators, when the absent persons usually come home. Then, make your next visit coincide with the information given you about the best time to call. If you are unable to find out when someone is most likely to be home, don't waste your time calling again during the day, but make your second call during the evening hours, since experience has shown that it is during these hours when you are most likely to find people at home. Conscientious application of these procedures will enable you to complete your interview within the authorized number of calls. If other attempts fail, try to get the name of the head of a "not home" household, so you can telephone him for an appointment.

F. Number of calls allowed

To keep the number of calls to a single household within reason, you should limit your calls on a household to three (at different times of the day or evening). If you have to obtain interviews from additional specific individuals in a household, two more visits may be made.

G. Quality Standards

Just like every organization which operates on a large-scale basis, we have to continuously inspect our product--which is statistics--to insure that there are no flaws. Here is a summary of the things that are done to make sure our product is consistently of the highest quality.

1. Some of your households will be reinterviewed

Every so often, certain households you have interviewed are revisited by the program supervisor and interviewed again. This is to insure that you understand and consistently apply the correct rules. Any differences found are reviewed with you so that your performance can be improved as needed.

2. Excessive Type A noninterviews

There are some few households in which it is difficult to find someone at home or in which the persons are reluctant to give information. In order to insure that you are meeting these problems satisfactorily, your office will notify you if such noninterviews are excessive. You should ask for your supervisor's advice and help in dealing with the problems of noninterviews.

3. Completion of work on time

Not only must interviews be obtained for all occupied households, but they must be obtained within the alloted time, i.e., during the interview week for the assignment. Therefore, except for some unusual circumstance such as illness, you must start your assignment on Monday of interview week and complete it as soon as possible. With an early start and efficient planning, you should generally be able to finish the greater portion of your assignment by Wednesday of interview week. This should help to insure better information, also, since the sooner the respondent is interviewed the better will be his recall of the time reference period.

If you are not able to start your assignment on Monday, or if you cannot complete your assignment during interview week, get in touch with your supervisor immediately. No interviews for the assignment are to be conducted after the end of interview week unless you receive special permission from your supervisor.

4. Editing Reports (Form NHS-HIS-705)

From time to time you may receive Editing Reports (Form NHS-HIS-705) containing transcripts of some entries of diagnostic information in Tables I, II, or A which you made on questionnaires during a previous assignment. The entries on this form will tell you the type and nature of errors which you made on a particular questionnaire. An illustration of a completed Form NHS-HIS-705 together with a list of Error Codes is shown in Figure IV and Appendix B to Part E.

You may also receive other types of reports telling you about omissions or inconsistent entries from other parts of your completed questionnaires.

These errors are reported to you as a continuation of your training on the survey. If you do not understand why you received a particular error report, return it to your supervisor with a request for an explanation.

5. Observation

Periodically, a supervisor will accompany you on an assignment to observe your interviews. During these observations, you will be advised on any phase of your work which may require improvement. It will also give you an opportunity to consult with him on any problems you may have about your work.

6. Group training

From time to time, you will come into the office to meet with other NHS interviews to discuss common problems, and to take refresher training on certain subjects related to the survey.

7. Home study

You will also be expected to complete home study exercises and return them for office review and correction. Any misunderstandings reflected by your answers will be clarified by the Regional Office.

8. INTERviewer COMMunication (Referral Sheet)

You may sometimes run across problems which you cannot resolve through studying your Manual or other NHS memoranda which have been furnished you. Use the INTERCOMM (Form 11-36) to communicate to the Regional Office any problem or question for which you cannot find an answer in the Manual.

In some cases you may think you know what to do but may not be certain. If this is so, do what you think is right, but communicate your problems to your Regional Office and ask them to review what you did.

Of course, if your question is one which must be answered before you can complete your assignment, and to await a mail reply would delay the work beyone the established deadline, you should use the telephone. In other cases, making your inquiries by an INTERCOMM will allow your supervisor to think your problem and his answer out more completely, and will lessen the possibility of any misunderstanding.

Directions for filling the INTERCOMM appear on the back of the last sheet of each set of the forms.

H. Production Standards

The yearly budget for an operation as large as this one, is determined some time in advance of the time the expenditures start. This budget assumes that each interviewer will complete his work within a prescribed number of hours and keep his travel within a prescribed number of miles.

For this reason, production standards have been established so that each interviewer may know what is expected of him. These standards are based on past experience, taking into account insofar as possible the size and nature of the assignment area. Details on how these are measured are given in the Administrative Handbook for Interviewers.

These production standards represent the performance which must be met or bettered in order that the National Health Survey can operate within its budget.

Your supervisors will keep you informed at all times as to the performance standards required of you. At regular intervals, generally once every 3 months, you will be told how your performance compared with the established standards. Where necessary, your supervisors will advise you on ways to improve your performance which will help you meet the standards that the Bureau of the Census expects of each interviewer.

CHAPTER 3.

ADMINISTRATIVE

A. General information

When you were interviewed you were given the essential facts about your job. Further information about your job is given in your Administrative Handbook for Interviewers. This also contains information and instructions for the pay procedure for claiming salary and reimbursements, travel and per diem, and accidents and injuries. You should familiarize yourselves thoroughly with these instructions.

B. Hours of work

Since you must complete your work within a certain week, you will be required to work evenings and some Saturdays to enable you to interview persons not usually home during the day. Of course, no interviewing should be done on Sundays, except when specifically requested by respondents.

C. Confidentiality of Survey Information

Information obtained in this survey must not be discussed with or disclosed to any persons except other Census and U. S. Public Health Service employees. This applies even to members of your immediate family.

1. Falsification of information

The same laws and regulations that require confidentiality also stipulate severe penalties for any Census employee who deliberately falsifies any information.

2. Bureau of the Census Administrative Order

Your responsibilities in this regard are set forth in the Bureau of the Census Administrative Order reprinted in Appendix A of Part E.

D. Use of Forms 11-35 and 11-35A

With each assignment, you will receive Forms 11-35 and 11-35A. (See Figures I, II, and III.)

The white Form 11-35 is for your use to keep as a control on the progress of your work. The green sheet 11-35A (Figure II) must be completed and returned to the office immediately after receiving and checking in an assignment. Enter in "Date received" the date and the time you received the shipment and check carefully that each item listed is in the package. If any item listed is not in the package check "All not received" and describe what is missing. If you need any supplies, use the back of Form 11-35A (Figure III). However, if you need specific supplies at any other time, request the items and amount needed by memorandum to your Regional Office.

E. Transmittal of materials

All "materials" for a segment are to be transmitted to the Regional Office together, in the same package. These include all questionnaires (completed interviews and final noninterviews) and the Segment Folder. Be sure that any Diabetes Supplements completed are enclosed in their respective questionnaires.

These are to be mailed on the day you make your last call, i.e., complete your last interview, in the (each) segment, without exception.

If you have picked up an "extra" unit(s), enter "Extra" in the serial number column of the "Record of Transmittal" on the Segment Folder, following the serial numbers for questionnaires received from your office.

Enter the date you are mailing the "materials" for the segment on the Segment Folder in the "Date of Shipment" column opposite serial number "01."

1.	Late transmittal	If, in unusual circumstances, you are permitted to complete any questionnaires <u>after</u> interview week, enter the following notation in the lower left hand corner of the mailing envelope: "Late transmittal for Week ___" (enter the appropriate interview week number, e.g., 01, 02, etc.).
2.	Packaging and mailing	You must make sure that any mailing piece--whether it be a card or a large package--has the correct address of your office on it. To insure this, envelopes and labels having the office address on them will be given you. You will be shown during your initial training how to package materials satisfactorily for mailing.

APPENDIX A (PART E)

CONFIDENTIAL NATURE OF INFORMATION COLLECTED IN NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEYS

1. PURPOSE OF SURVEYS:

National Health Surveys are conducted for the U. S. Public Health Service to obtain accurate and current statistics as to the amount, distribution, and effects of illness and disability in the United States, and the health services received as a result of these conditions.

2. PARTICIPATION BY BUREAU OF THE CENSUS:

The Bureau of the Census is cooperating in the surveys by collecting and compiling the data for the Public Health Service.

3. NONDISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION:

National Health Surveys involve obtaining on a continuing basis details of the personal health records of a large number of individuals throughout the Nation. The Public Health Service has given assurance to the public that information identifying the individual will be held strictly confidential, will be used solely by persons engaged in and only for, the purposes of the survey, and will not be disclosed or released to other persons or for any other purpose. Bureau of the Census employees will observe this assurance of confidentiality and are subject to the Public Health Service as well as Department of Commerce and Bureau of the Census laws against unauthorized disclosure. In addition, the sworn statement or affidavit of nondisclosure each employee signs upon entering on duty pertains to National Health Surveys the same as to our programs.

4. SUBPENA OF RECORDS:

In the event of a record collected in the National Health Survey being subpenaed, any Bureau employee upon whom such subpena is served will communicate with the Director of the Census. Action to satisfy such subpena will be taken only as authorized by Public Health Service Regulation, Section 1.108 of Title 42, Code of Federal Regulations.

5. PENALTIES FOR UNAUTHORIZED DISCLOSURE OR FALSIFICATION:

Unauthorized disclosure of individual information collected in the National Health Surveys is punishable by a fine of up to $1,000, or emprisonment up to one year, or both (18 U.S.C. 1905).

Deliberate falsification by an employee of any information in the Survey is punishable by a fine of up to $10,000, or imprisonment up to five years, or both (18 U.S.C. 1001).

By Direction: _____ Dated: April 18, 1957

USCOMM--DC

APPENDIX B (PART E)

Edit of NHS-HIS Questionnaires

A. Purpose and timing

At the start of each new fiscal year the Regional Office does a complete edit of your first few assignments in order to notify you of errors early enough for you to correct them in subsequent assignments. If you are a new interviewer, your first few assignments will be edited after you begin your regular interviewing. Then, throughout the rest of the year, one or more of your assignments will be edited in the Regional Office on a sample basis, the number depending on your rate of improvement.

In addition to the Regional Office edit, all of your assignments are edited in Washington and the results are made known to you at periodic intervals.

B. Forms used to report your errors

The forms used in the edit of your questionnaires are Form NHS-HIS-705, for reporting diagnostic errors, and Form NHS-HIS-706, for reporting errors and omissions other than "diagnostic" errors.

C. How you are informed of the results

After your assignment has been edited in the Regional Office, the results will be sent to you on Forms NHS-HIS-705 and NHS-HIS-706. After receiving the forms, note the nature of the errors by referring to the error codes assigned and matching them with the explanations of the codes given in this appendix. The error code explanations for Form NHS-HIS-705 are in Part I of this Appendix (disregard the error codes printed on the back of Form NHS-HIS-705); Part II lists the error code explanations for Form NHS-HIS-706. If, after consulting the lists of error codes and the Manual instructions, you do not understand why a particular error was assigned, send an INTERCOMM, Form 11-36, to your office for an explanation.

PART I--[APPENDIX B (PART E)]

LIST OF ERROR CODES FOR ILLNESS, INJURY, AND HOSPITALIZATION ENTRIES

(Codes used on Form NHS-HIS-705. See Figure IV.)

A. General

The following columns and questions are edited for inadequate entries and omissions:

Table I -- columns (a), (d-1)-(d-4)
Table II -- columns (a), (c)-(h)
Question 14
Table A -- question 2

Errors and omissions in any of the above columns or questions are called diagnostic errors.

B. List of Diagnostic Error Codes used with Form NHS-HIS-705

Error Code	Definition
01	"Present effects" or "impairment" not given, Table I, but "old" "operation" or "injury" entered. (Injury happened prior to "last 2 weeks"--no indication that injury itself had not yet healed.)
02	"Condition" which was reason for "operation," "laboratory tests," "observation," etc., not given in same table, Table I or Table II.
03	Column (d-1) of Table I or column (h) of Table II blank or only "part of body" entered.
04	"Nature of injury" not given or inadequate--in Table I for an injury "last week or the week before," or in Table II for an injury current at time of hospital admission.
05	"Cause" not given--in column (d-2), Table I for a "symptom" in column (d-1), or in column (h), Table II for a "symptom."
06	"Cause" given for a "symptom" in column (d-2), Table I or column (h), Table II is also a "symptom," and "cause" not given for the second "symptom."

Error Code	Definition
07	"Cause" not given--in column (d-2), Table I for an "impairment" in column (d-1) or in column (h), Table II for an "impairment."
08	"Cause" given in column (d-2), Table I or column (h), Table II is an "impairment" and "cause" not given for this "impairment."
09	"Cause" not given in column (d-2) for an entry in column (d-1), Table I which came from question 9 or 11.
10	"Kind" (or "Manifestation") not given for the specified "conditions" in column (d-3), Table I or column (h), Table II.
11	"Kind" given in column (d-3), Table I or column (h), Table II is a "symptom" or otherwise "vague description" and "Kind" not re-asked.
12	"Part of body" affected not given or inadequate in column (d-4), Table I or column (h), Table II.
13	Impossible date in column (c), Table II, or omission or inconsistent entries in columns (c)-(g) of Table II.
14	Table A not filled for an "injury" or a "condition" due to an injury (or accident) in Table I.
15	"Nature of injury" not given or inadequate in question 2, Table A (injury occurred prior to "last week or the week before").
16	"Part of body" not given or inadequate in question 2, Table A (injury occurred prior to "last week or the week before").
17	Failed to ask question 14 for person 6 years old or over with eye condition reported in Table I.
18	Wrong column number of person entered in column (a) of Table I or Table II.

Error Code	Definition
00	Condition reported in one of questions 6-12 not brought down to Table I. --or-- A line of Table II not filled for each hospital stay reported in question 13 or 15.
OX	Condition reported in Table II only not brought back to Table I when it should have been because it is an impairment, is on Card A, or had one or more nights in column (f), Table II.

PART II--[APPENDIX B (PART E)]

LIST OF ERROR CODES FOR ERRORS OTHER THAN DIAGNOSTIC

(Codes used on Form NHS-HIS-706. See Figure V.)

A. General

An edit of the remaining sections is made for omissions or incorrect entries. These errors are tallied on Form NHS-HIS-706. This form also shows the number of completed and noninterview (by types) households and the total number of errors which you made on this assignment as shown by the NHS-HIS-705 and NHS-HIS-706.

B. List of Error Codes for Errors Other than Diagnostic

Error Code	Questions 1-5	Manual Reference
20	Failed to ask one or more of questions 1c, 1d, or 1e.	Pages D-27, D-28, pars. D-1, D-1-a, D-1-b.
21	Failed to ask question 1f if any adult males listed as household members.	Page D-29, par. D-2-b
22	Failed to footnote reason for deleting listed household members.	Page D-30, par. D-4
23	Failed to enter the Relationship for each household member in question 2.	Page D-32, par. E
24	Failed to enter Age in question 3.	Page D-34, par. G
25	Failed to check Race or Sex in question 3.	Page D-35, par. G-1.
26	Failed to check Marital Status in question 4 for person 17 years old or over.	Page D-35, par. H
27	Failed to ask question 5a for each person 17 years old or over.	Page D-36, par. I
28	Failed to ask BOTH questions 5b and 5c for "No" answer to question 5a.	Page D-36, par. I-2

Error Code	Questions 1-5	Manual Reference
29	Failed to ask question 5d for "Yes" answer to question 5c.	Page D-38, par. I-5
30	Failed to ask question 5e for males 45 years old or over and all "No's" to questions 5a through 5c.	Page D-38, par. I-6
	Item H	
31	Failed to fill Item H for each household member.	Page D-39, par. J
	Question 13	
32	Failed to check "Yes" or "No" in question 13a for each household member.	Page D-53, par. G
33	Failed to record "number of times" in question 13b for "Yes" answer in question 13a.	Pages D-53, D-54, par. G
	Item R	
34	Failed to fill Item R for each household member.	Page D-55, pars. H, H-1, H-2
35	Item H checked "At home" but Item R indicates person did not respond for self and no footnote explaining circumstances.	Page D-55, par. H-3
	Table I	
36	Failed to check (or ask) column (c)--"Doctor talked to."	Page D-58, par. A-4
37	Failed to check column (e) or (f).	Page D-86, par. E-1
38	Failed to check column (g) or (h) of Table I when column (f) is checked.	Page D-87, par. E-1-b
39	Column (h) is checked but failed to ask columns (i), (j), and (k) or (l) (depending on age and entry in question 5a or 5b).	Pages D-88, D-89, pars. E-2, E-3, E-4, E-5

Error Code	Table I	Manual Reference
40	Failed to check (or ask) column (m) or (n).	Page D-92, par. E-9
41	Failed to check (or ask) column (o) when column (n) is checked.	Page D-93, par. E-9-c
42	Failed to check (or ask) column (p) when column (m) is checked.	Page D-93, par. E-10
43	Failed to check (or ask) column (q) for condition eligible to be carried past column (aa).	Pages D-94, D-95, pars. E-11, E-12
44	Failed to check (or ask) column (r) for condition with one or more days in column (q) and column (j) is blank or checked "None."	Page D-95, par. E-13
45	Failed to ask column (s) for condition carried past column (aa) with "Yes" checked in column (c).	Page D-96, par. E-14
46	Failed to make an entry in column (t) on line for last condition for person with one or more conditions carried past column (aa).	Page D-96, par. E-15
47	Failed to check "Yes" or "No" in column (u) for entry of "1," "2," or "3" in column (t).	Page D-99, par. E-16
48	Failed to make at least one "X" in column (u) for "Yes" answer in column (u).	Page D-99, par. E-16-a.
49	Failed to make an entry in column (v) on line for last condition for person with one or more conditions carried past column (aa).	Page D-99, D-100, par. E-17
50	Failed to check "Yes" or "No" in column (w) for entry of "1," "2," "3," or "4" in column (v).	Page D-100, par. E-18

Error Code	Table I	Manual Reference
51	Failed to make at least one "X" in column (w) for "Yes" answer in column (w).	Page D-100, par. E-18
	Question 14	
52	Failed to ask question 14b with "Yes" checked in question 14a.	Page D-102, par. E-19-b
53	Failed to ask question 14c with "No" checked in question 14b.	Page D-102, par. E-19-b
	Table II	
54	Failed to check "None" box or enter TOTAL number of hospitalizations in space to left of Table II.	Page D-103, par. A-1
55	Failed to check "Yes" or "No" in column (i) for each line of Table II or "Yes" checked in column (i) but no operation entered.	Page D-109, par. A-9
56	Failed to enter Name of hospital, Street, City and/or State or "DK" in column (j).	Page D-111, par. A-10
	Question 15	
57	Question 15 left blank or some part of question 15 filled incorrectly.	Page D-112, par. B
	Questions 16-17	
58	Failed to check "Yes" or "No" in question 16a or 17a.	Page D-114, par. B-1, Page D-118, par. B-2
59	Failed to enter at least one medicine in column (a) of Table P with "Yes" answer in question 16a.	Page D-115, par. B-1-b
60	Failed to ask (or fill) all applicable columns of Table P for each medicine listed in column (a).	Pages D-116, D-117, pars. B-1-d-(1), (2), (3), and (4)

Error Code	Questions 16-17	Manual Reference
61	Failed to enter at least one medicine in column (a) of Table NP with "Yes" answer in question 17a.	Pages D-118, D-119, par. B-2
62	Failed to ask (or fill) all applicable columns of Table NP for each medicine (or condition) listed in column (a).	Pages D-120, D-121, D-122, pars. B-2-c-(1), (2), (3), and (4)
	Questions 18-22	
63	Failed to ask question 18a for each person 17 years old or over.	Page D-123, par.C
64	Failed to ask question 18b with a "Yes" or "DK" answer to question 18a.	Page D-124, par. C-1-a
65	Failed to ask question 19a with a "Yes" or "DK" answer to question 18a.	Page D-124, par. C-2
66	Failed to ask questions 19b and 19c with a "Yes" answer to question 19a.	Pages D-124, D-125, par. C-2-a
67	Failed to ask questions 20a and 20b with a "No" answer to question 19a.	Page D-126, par. C-3
68	Failed to ask question 21a for each person 17 years old or over.	Page D-127, par. C-4
69	Failed to ask question 21b with a "Yes" answer to question 21a.	Page D-127, par. C-4-b
70	Failed to ask question 21c with a "Yes" answer to question 21b.	Page D-127, par. C-4-c
71	Failed to ask question 21d with a "No" answer to question 21b.	Page D-127, par. C-4-d
72	Failed to ask question 22a for each person 17 years old or over.	Page D-128, par. C-5

Error Code	Questions 18-22	Manual Reference
73	Failed to ask question 22b with a "Yes" answer to question 22a.	Page D-128, par. C-5-b
74	Failed to ask question 22c with a "Yes" answer to question 22b.	Page D-128, par. C-5-c
75	Failed to ask question 22d with a "No" answer to question 22b.	Page D-128, par. C-5-d
	Questions 23-25	
76	Failed to ask question 23 for males 17 years old or over.	Page D-129, par. B
77	Failed to ask question 24 for each person 17 years of age or over.	Page D-129, par. C
78	Failed to check "Yes" or "No" in question 24b for a person having a "highest grade attended" circled in question 24a.	Page D-131, par. C-8
79	Failed to enter income group letter in question 25 in column for head of household.	Page D-132, par. D-1
80	Two income group letters given for related members.	Page D-132, par. D-1
81	Failed to enter income group letter for unrelated person (i.e., roomer, servant, etc.) in the column for that person.	Page D-133, par. D-2
	Item D	
82	Failed to fill a Diabetes Supplement for a person reported in Table I to have diabetes.	Page D-135, par. B

Figure I. Example of Form 11-35

SHEET 1 OF 1 SHEETS

FORM 11-35 (4-1-63) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

INTERVIEWER'S ASSIGNMENT AND CONTROL SHEET

REGIONAL OFFICE: Dallas, Texas
DATE MAILED: 9-2-64
INTERVIEWER: Jane Doe
CODE: 12

TRANSMITTED –
- [x] HEREWITH
- [ ] UNDER SEPARATE COVER

SURVEY –
- [ ] CPS-HVS
- [ ] SOC
- [ ] CBR
- [ ] QHS
- [x] NHS
- [ ] _____

ENCLOSED –
- [ ] MEMORANDUM
- [ ] TRAINING MATERIALS
- [x] ASSIGNMENT
- [ ] _____

SURVEY PERIOD – THIS ASSIGNMENT:
1. SHOULD BEGIN ON 9-7 (Date)
2. SHOULD BE COMPLETED BY 9-12 (Date)

[x] PSU AND SEGMENT NUMBER
[ ] OTHER (Specify) _____

		SERIAL NOS. OF UNITS	FOR INTERVIEWER'S USE: DATE LAST UNIT COMPLETED	NOTES (CPS Units held for office phoning, locality of segment or unit, times to call, callbacks, etc.)
1	999-1132P	01		
2		02		
3		03		
4				
5				
6	-1136	01		
7		02		
8		03		
9		04		
10		05		
11		51		
12		52		Call Sat. 10 a.m.
13		53		
14		54		
15				
	TOTAL UNITS	12		

SEGMENTS –

TO BE NEWLY LISTED	TO BE UP-DATED
999-0941	999-0922
-0945	

SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS

INTERVIEWER'S COPY

Figure II. Example of Form 11-35A (Front)

SHEET 1 OF 1 SHEETS

FORM 11-35A (4-1-63) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

INTERVIEWER'S ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF RECEIPT

REGIONAL OFFICE: Dallas, Texas

DATE MAILED: 9-2-64

INTERVIEWER: Jane Doe

CODE: 12

TRANSMITTED –
- [x] HEREWITH
- [ ] UNDER SEPARATE COVER

SURVEY –
- [ ] CPS-HVS
- [ ] SOC
- [ ] CBR
- [ ] QHS
- [x] NHS
- [ ] _____

ENCLOSED –
- [ ] MEMORANDUM
- [ ] TRAINING MATERIALS
- [x] ASSIGNMENT
- [ ] _____

SURVEY PERIOD – THIS ASSIGNMENT:
1. SHOULD BEGIN ON 9-7 (Date)
2. SHOULD BE COMPLETED BY 9-12 (Date)

[x] PSU AND SEGMENT NUMBER
[ ] OTHER (Specify) _____

NOTE: Please check below if "Received OK" or "Not Received," enter missing items in "Notes."

DATE RECEIVED: 9-4 10:30 a.m.

	PSU AND SEGMENT NUMBER	SERIAL NOS. OF UNITS	ALL REC'D OK	ALL NOT REC'D	NOTES
1	999-1132P	01	✓		
2		02	✓		
3		03	✓		
4					
5					
6	-1136	01	✓		
7		02	✓		
8		03	✓		
9		04	✓		
10		05	✓		
11		51	✓		
12		52	✓		
13		53	✓		
14		54	✓		
15					
	TOTAL UNITS	12			[x] SUPPLIES BEING REQUESTED (Over)

SEGMENTS –

TO BE NEWLY LISTED	TO BE UP-DATED
999-0941 ✓	999-0922 ✓
-0945 ✓	

(CHECK THOSE RECEIVED)

SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS

EMPLOYEE – FIELD OFFICE COPY

Figure III. Example of Form 11-35A (Back)

INTERVIEWER'S REQUISITION OF STOCK SUPPLIES

Please enter the number of the following stock supplies needed and check the box for "Supplies being requested," on the front of the form.

Form Number	Form Name	Number needed	Form Number	Number needed
Administrative BC-27A	Time and Cost Distribution Report for Non-Leave Earning Personnel		**SOC** SOC-900	
BC-27B	Field Employee's Record of Mileage, Per Diem, and Other Reimbursable Expenses.	10	SOC-900A	
11-36	INTERVIEWER COMMUNICATION	10	SOC-900B	
11-38	Appointments Notice		SOC-901	
	Small White Return Envelopes		SOC-902	
	Large Brown Return Envelopes	25	SOC-905	
	Lead, 2.5		SOC-921	
			SOC-922	
CPS CPS-263	Dear Friend Letters		**QHS** QHS-300	
CPS-260	Control Cards (Sample)		QHS-301	
CPS-262	Individual Census Reports		QHS-400	
11-171	Segment Lists (also used on NHS)		QHS-401	
11-174	B Segment Address List			
P-2255	Special Dwelling Listing Sheets (also used on NHS)			
HVS-1	Housing Vacancy Form			
CBR BUS-054F	CCBR Interview Cards		**OTHER**	
BUS-093A	Census Current Business Reports			
BUS-093SA	Monthly Service Trade Reports			
BUS-095 Section III	Continuation Sheets			
BUS-095 Section IV	Enumeration Sheets			
NHS NHS-HIS-1	Questionnaires	25		
NHS-600	Dear Friend Letters			
NHS-601	Thank you Letters	100		
NHS-HIS-501	Book of Flash Cards	1		
NHS-HIS-1(d)	Diabetes Supplement	10		

FORM 11-35A (4-1-63)

Figure IV. Example of Form NHS-HIS-705

FORM NHS-HIS-705 (6-7-63)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

DIAGNOSTIC EDITING FOR ILLNESSES, INJURIES, AND HOSPITALIZATIONS

(To be used for edit of Form NHS-HIS-1)

Regional office: San Francisco — 13

Sample: B-30 | PSU: 818 | Segment No.: 0513

Interviewer's name: Jeanne Gordon | Code: 44 | Edited by: Charles Allen

Table I - ILLNESSES, IMPAIRMENTS, AND INJURIES

H.H. serial number	Came from Q.No.	Column (d-1)	Column (d-2) Cause	Column (d-3) Kind	Column (d-4) Part of body	Error code
05	11	Cancer	[x]	[x]	[x]	12
09	12	Partial blindness	Injury x	[x]	One eye x	17
			x	x	x	
			x	x	x	
			x	x	x	
			x	x	x	

Table II - HOSPITALIZATIONS

H.H. serial number	Columns: Date of entry (c) Mo.	Day	Year	Nights (d) Total	(e) 12 mos.	(f) 2 wks.	(g)	Column (h)	Error code
03	Dec.	20	1964	10	10	None	[ ] Yes [x] No	Pneumonia	13
							[ ] Yes [ ] No		
							[ ] Yes [ ] No		

Table A - ACCIDENTS AND INJURIES

H.H. serial number	Question 2: Part(s) of body	Kind of injury(injuries)	Error code
04	Leg	Fractured	16

Comments

USCOMM-DC 15621 P-63

Figure V. Example of Form NHS-HIS-706

FORM NHS-HIS-706 (6-17-63)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS

TALLY OF ERRORS OTHER THAN DIAGNOSTIC ERRORS
(To be used for edit of Form NHS-HIS-1)

See explanation in Appendix C (Part E of the NHS-HIS-100 Manual)

1. REGION: San Francisco
2. EDITED BY: C.A.
3. SAMPLE: B-30
4. WEEK: 05
5. INTERVIEWER: Jeanne Gordon — CODE: 44

6. PSU NUMBER(S) THIS WEEK	7. NUMBER OF SEGMENTS	
818	THIS WEEK	2
	TO DATE—THIS QUARTER	

8. NUMBER OF INTERVIEWS (INCLUDING HOUSEHOLDS WITH TYPE Z'S)	COMPLETED	A	B	C
THIS WEEK	16	—	2	—
TO DATE				

ERROR CODE	9. TALLY OF ERRORS	10. ERRORS THIS WEEK	10. ERRORS TO DATE	ERROR CODE	9. TALLY OF ERRORS	10. ERRORS THIS WEEK	10. ERRORS TO DATE
20	/	/		54			
21				55			
22				56			
23				57			
24				58			
25				59			
26				60			
27	///	3		61			
28				62			
29				63			
30				64			
31				65			
32				66			
33				67			
34	/	/		68	/	/	
35				69	///	3	
36				70			
37				71	/	/	
38				72			
39				73			
40				74			
41				75			
42				76			
43				77			
44	//	2		78			
45				79			
46				80	/	/	
47				81			
48				82			
49				11. TOTAL OTHER ERRORS (FORM NHS-HIS-706)		13	
50							
51				12 TOTAL DIAGNOSTIC ERRORS (FORM NHS-HIS-705)		4	
52							
53				13. TOTAL ERRORS		17	

Interviewer copy

USCOMM-DC 15741 P-63

PART F

PROCEDURE FOR B SEGMENTS

CHAPTER 1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF B SEGMENTS AND PROCEDURES FOR HANDLING

A. Description of B Segments

B Segments fall into two categories which we shall refer to as "Regular B Segments" and "Permit B Segments".

Regular B Segments consist of a cluster of addresses selected from the 1960 Census Listing Books in which the 1960 Census Taker recorded the addresses of all living quarters in his Enumeration District (ED).

Permit B Segments consist of one or a few addresses selected from the Survey of Construction (SOC) building permit data.

1. From 1960 Listing Books

Most B Segments are Regular B Segments selected from 1960 Census Listing Books and the addresses in the segments are transcribed from consecutive lines of the Listing Books. These addresses are generally in consecutive order on the ground, but in some cases may not be--depending on the order of enumeration in the 1960 Census.

The reason for selecting segments from 1960 Census Listing Books is to take advantage of advance knowledge of the number of addresses in an ED which permits us to divide it into segments with a relatively uniform number of addresses for each sample. This avoids a large increase in the number of households and persons interviewed from segment to segment and sample to sample and increases the precision of the estimates from the survey.

2. From SOC data

The Permit B Segments selected from SOC permit data will have the letter "P" in the segment number and the name of the permit-issuing office may appear in the upper-left corner of the B Segment Address List.

For MLS Permit B Segments only, the upper left corner of the B Segment List may also show in parentheses after the permit office name, the specific name of the place where the sample units have been built. This specific place name (town, unincorporated area, development) need not be the same as the "Place" name on the tab of the Segment Folder which should be used to find the general location of the segment. The reason for selecting segments from SOC permit data is to include new construction since the 1960 Census.

B. General procedure for B Segments

The general procedure for B Segments at the time of interview is about the same as for TA and NTA Segments. Just as for TA and NTA Segments, you will be given a Segment Folder containing listing sheets and a Special Dwelling Worksheet or Special Dwelling Listing Sheet if there is a special

dwelling place in the segment. A map may be provided to help you locate the segment.

You will locate the addresses comprising the segment and interview the units designated for the current sample.

C. How procedure for B Segments differs from TA and NTA Segments

The procedure for B Segments differs from that for TA and NTA Segments in the following major ways:

1. For B Segments, you will be furnished with a list of addresses transcribed from Census data. For TA and NTA Segments the list you receive will be one prepared by yourself or another interviewer when the segment was canvassed in a previous visit.
2. You will be using a different listing sheet for B Segments — a yellow B Segment Address List, 11-174, instead of the Segment List used in TA and NTA Segments.
3. For B Segments, you will <u>not</u> be using the Supplemental Segment List, 11-172, nor the List of Structures with NO Dwelling Units (Living Quarters). These forms will continue to be used for TA and NTA Segments as required.
4. You will not update the lists for B Segments as you do for TA and NTA Segments (except for Special Dwelling Places).
5. Occasionally in B Segments, you will list units at a given designated address at the time of interview. These addresses will be identified on the B Segment List by a reference to "Fill Sheet ___".
6. "Extra" units in B Segments are defined and handled somewhat differently than in TA and NTA Segments.
7. Special dwelling places in B Segments will be visited for the first time for a particular sample at the time of interviewing; not by a previous visit as in TA and NTA Segments.
8. A special coverage check, called the predecessor-successor (P and S) procedure, may be used in B Segments to account for units missed during the 1960 Census and units newly constructed since the Census. This procedure is comparable to that of bringing lists up to date in TA and NTA Segments. The special coverage check will be conducted in a separate visit by persons especially trained in the procedure.

A. To locate B Segments

There are no mapped boundaries for B Segments since these segments consist of addresses and not specific land areas.

To locate a B Segment, use the Grid Map and the grid coordinates given on the tab of the Segment Folder. If a map is stapled to the inside of the Segment Folder, also use it to help locate the segment.

For NHS, MLS and SORAR, there will be no map in the Segment Folder if the segment can be located easily on the grid map or a map can be obtained locally.

For CPS, the map in the Segment Folder shows ED boundaries outlined in green and small land areas in which red numbers and asterisks appear. These red and green entries have no meaning at the time of the interview. They are used only by the person conducting the special coverage check. The ED boundaries on these maps are <u>not</u> the boundaries of the segment.

Occasionally you may find that a sample unit is outside the ED boundary shown on the map. In such cases, interview the sample unit and report it on an INTER-COMM (Referral) with a rough sketch showing its location in relation to the ED boundary. (NOTE that this is different from the procedure for TA and NTA Segments where units found to be outside Segment boundaries are not interviewed.)

1. Cluster of addresses within segment

Notice that, in general, we have provided you with enough addresses on the B Segment List for two or three samples at a time on the assumption that it is easier to locate a large cluster of addresses.

B. To identify sample units

1. Specific address

Sample units in B Segments are identified by the street name, house number and other specific location, if needed, such as "Apt. 102", "1st floor left", etc. At the time of interview, go to each address designated for the current sample.

2. Points to consider when specific address is not found

In cases where an address is not found exactly as listed, you can assume that the listing corresponds to some living space that does or did exist. Consequently in trying to locate a particular unit, you should consider all possible units in the vicinity which resemble the listed address.

a. Conclusions

After considering all such possible units, you should come to one of the following conclusions:

1) Similar unit located

"I have located a unit which is not identical to the listed address, but which matches the listed address better than any other. The address of this unit does not appear anywhere on the listing, therefore, I have probably located the sample unit under another address."

Instructions in Chapter 3 show how to indicate on the B Segment Address List that you have found the sample unit but at a different address.

2) Unit not located

"I can find no unit now existing which could reasonably be represented by the listed address."

Instructions in Chapter 3 show how to report units which are apparently non-existent.

a) Units not yet started in permit B Segments

You may be assigned a permit B Segment (letter "P" in the segment number) and find that construction of a sample unit in the segment has not been started. Treat this type of unit as a Type B Non-interview and mark the reason "Permit granted, construction not started". For CPS, MLS and QHS you will be assigned the unit each time it is to be interviewed and you must determine each time whether construction has been started.

b) Different from procedure in regular B Segments

Note that this procedure differs from the procedure in regular B Segments (segment numbers not including the letter "P") where sample units not found to exist are reported as "non-existent" and not visited again during the life of the sample.

b. Name of 1960 Census household head

For addresses selected from the 1960 Census Listing Books, you will also be given the name of the household head as of April 1960 if it is available. This may help you locate the correct sample unit if house numbers or street names have changed. Do <u>not</u> use the name of the 1960 household head unless you are unable to identify the sample unit by the address alone. Additional instructions on the use of the name of household head are given in Chapter 3. If in doubt as to whether you have located the appropriate unit, indicate this to your supervisor on an INTER-COMM.

When you use the name of the head to locate a particular sample unit, explain that you are trying to identify the sample unit in order to interview the present occupants, regardless of who they are, because our sample is based on addresses, not individuals.

3. Sample units identified as "Vacant"

If a sample unit was vacant at the time of the 1960 Census, "Vacant" will appear on the listing sheet. You must visit such sample units and conduct an interview if the unit is occupied at the time. If the unit is vacant at the time of your visit, treat it as Type B Non-interview.

A. Basic copy

The cluster of addresses comprising the B Segment is recorded on one or more yellow sheets of the B Segment Address List, Form 11-174. We shall refer to these as the "basic" copies of the B Segment Address Lists. Locate and interview the addresses designated for the current sample on these lists.

1. Address and name of 1960 household head

The address, and name of the 1960 Census household head, if known, for the units comprising the segment were transcribed to the basic copies of the B Segment Address Lists. The 1960 household head name is provided only to help you locate the sample unit. Do not change the household head name if you find the unit is now occupied by a different household.

2. Sample designation

A sample designation (for example, A21, B38, C4 or S5) appears on the list for some or most of the addresses in the segment. Interview only the units designated for the sample for which you are furnished interview forms.

In addition, interview any "extra" units you discover at current sample addresses (see Chapter 5 for the definition of "extra" units in B Segments).

3. Serial number

A serial number will appear on the list for units in the current sample. This number appears as part of the control number in item 6 of the CPS, MLS, and SORAR Control Card and will be the same number that appears in item 9 on the NHS-HIS Questionnaire.

4. "R" in Column 7

Disregard any "R" that appears on the bottom line in column 7 for units in the current sample. This "R" is used in reinterview.

5. Identification of sample address in columns 8 and 9

Fill column 8 or 9 for each <u>current</u> sample address during the first visit to the address.

a. Purpose

The purpose of these columns is to provide a record of whether each sample unit which you locate corresponds exactly with the listed address, or if not, how it is different from the <u>listed address</u>.

b. How to show sample unit found as listed

Enter an "X" in column 8 for each unit found identical to the sample address listed. This will be the most common situation.

Do not verify the name of the 1960 household head. As stated earlier, this name is provided only to help you find a sample unit when you are unable to locate the unit by the address alone. Check column 8 if the unit found is identical to the sample unit as listed even if you happen to learn that the household head whose name appears on the list has never lived at the address given. This procedure is necessary since we are using a <u>sample of addresses</u> and not a sample of names.

c. How to show sample unit not found as listed

If you cannot find the identical address of a sample unit or find a change in what comprises that address, such as a merger or conversion, enter a code in column 9 according to the following situations:
Treat the sample unit as a Type C - noninterview when you use any of the codes specified in paragraphs 1) through 6) below.

1) Demolished units

Enter "D" in column 9 if you find that a sample unit has been demolished and another unit does not exist in its place.

2) Replaced unit

Enter "R" in column 9 if you find that a sample unit has been replaced by new construction.

Note: When the code "R" is used, report the situation on an INTER-COMM showing:

(a) address of the new construction
(b) type of new construction such as, "replaced by single-family house, private apartment building, general hospital, city owned public housing, etc."
(c) if the new construction is a special dwelling place, also give the name of the place
(d) number of new units
(e) the month and year new construction was started (as best you can determine).

3) House or Trailer moved

Enter "HM" if you find that a sample unit was a house or trailer which has been moved off the property.

4) Apparently Non-Existent unit

Note: This code is to be used in Regular B Segments only; See paragraph 11)-13) below, for the code to use when you cannot locate a sample unit in a Permit B Segment.

Enter "NE" in column 9, and an explanation in Remarks, if you find that a sample unit apparently never existed and has not been demolished or merged. Also explain the reason in complete detail on the Control Card or NHS Questionnaire.

Inquire about Regular B Segment units which appear to be "NE"

Before reporting a listed sample unit as non-existent, inquire of residents or business establishments in the area. If you are unable to locate a number of addresses in a segment, look in the telephone directory for names of the 1960 household heads for the units you cannot locate. You may find that the street name was misspelled or partially incorrect. For example, you may be trying to locate a sample unit at 401½ East Third Street which was occupied by Mr. Beck in 1960. The telephone directory shows a Mr. Beck at 401½ West Third Street. If you find that other sample units in the segment are also on West Third rather than East Third and the households lived on West Third in 1960, you conclude that the listed addresses should be West Third not East.

If the listed sample unit appears to be a structure containing no living quarters such as a store or church, be sure to inquire as to the existence of living quarters at the address using the name of the 1960 household head, if necessary, to locate the unit.

Note: Report the situation on an INTER-COMM when the code "NE" is used, explaining what action you took to locate the unit.

5) Unit Never Living Quarters

Enter "NL" if you find that a sample address was never living quarters.

6) Unit Converted to Permanent Business or Storage

Enter "CP" if you find that a sample unit was used as living quarters in 1960 but has since been converted to permanent business or storage.

7) Unit outside the ED boundary

Conduct the interview and enter "OE" in column 9 if you find that a sample unit is outside the green boundary shown on the ED map (if a map has been furnished).

Note: Report the situation on an INTER-COMM as specified on page F-3 when code "OE" is used.

8) Merged unit

Enter "M" on the line for each unit involved if you find a sample unit has merged with another unit and enter in the remarks column, on the line for the first merged unit listed, the date the merger was discovered. Treat mergers in B Segments in the same manner as mergers in TA and NTA Segments.

Note: If a current sample unit in a B Segment has merged with an unlisted unit or with a listed unit which is not designated for any sample, report the situation on an INTER-COMM.

9) Unit Converted to More Units

Enter "CM" if you find that a sample unit has been converted to more units.

10) Use of the Code "OT" (Other)

Enter "OT" in column 9 and explain the situation in the remarks for any case where a sample unit is not found exactly as listed and the situation would not be explained by using one of the above codes. The following are examples of use of the code "OT".

EXAMPLE I: Suppose a sample unit which is listed on a separate line of the B Segment Address List is found to be a unit in a special dwelling place. You should enter "OT" in column 9 and indicate in the remarks that the unit is a staff or non-staff or unclassified unit in _____ (specify the name of the special dwelling place).

EXAMPLE 2: Suppose a sample address is 803 Main Street with "Adams" the head. When you look for the address, you find that there never was an "803 Main Street" and that Adams has lived at 805 Main Street for 10 years. There is a vacant lot between 801 and 805 Main Street but the address 805 is not on the B Segment List. You would conclude that the 1960 Census enumerator had recorded the house number incorrectly and that 805 Main Street is the sample unit. After entering "OT" in column 9, you should enter "805 Main Street is correct address" in the remarks. This example points out one use of the name of the 1960 household head in locating the correct unit. A different situation would have existed in this example, if you had found 803 Main Street but discovered that Mr. Adams had always lived at 805 Main Street. Since, in that case, you would have found the listed address, the name of the household head in 1960 would be disregarded.

EXAMPLE 3: Suppose your sample addresses are several apartments in a multi-unit structure and you find that the apartments are actually unnumbered or that their numbers do not resemble the listed numbers. If you are unable to identify the listed units by using the 1960 household head names, prepare an INTER-COMM explaining the situation including a sketch, if possible, showing the location and identification of the apartments now existing in the structure.

11)-13) Additional Codes for Permit B Segments

To locate units in Permit B Segments where houses are not properly numbered, it may be necessary to use the permit number listed in column 12 or in the remarks column of the B Segment List. If a respondent cannot verify that his home was built under this permit number, it may be necessary to contact the permit-issuing office to verify the address and permit number and determine to whom the permit was issued. If it was issued to a contractor, contact him and find out for whom he built the house or to whom he sold it.

If, after inquiry, you cannot find a Permit B Segment sample unit, enter one of the following codes in column 9, according to the situation.

11) Unable to Locate

Enter "UL" in column 9 and treat the sample unit as a Type A noninterview if you cannot find the property on which the sample unit was to have been built.

12) Construction Not Started

Enter "CNS" in column 9 and treat the sample unit as a Type B noninterview if you find the property but construction has not been started.

13) Unused Permit

Enter "UP" in column 9 and treat the sample unit as a Type C noninterview if you discover that a permit has not been used and is abandoned.

6. Remarks Column

This column is to be used to explain the "OT" code as specified above and to record other information about the sample unit.

7. S Check (Cols. 10-13)

Columns 10-13 are used to record information from the successor check conducted as a special coverage check. Make no entries in these columns at the time of interview (these are columns 10-11 on B Segment Lists dated 9-8-64).

B. Snapout "extension" copy of B Segment Address List

In some cases you are asked to list all of the units at a specific address. This address is generally for a multi-unit structure such as an apartment house, rooming or boarding house or nontransient hotel. Occasionally, it is for part of a multi-unit structure such as "first-floor","downstairs", etc.

For each such case, you will be instructed to "Fill Sheet ___" for the address on the basic list and will be provided with an "extension" copy of the B Segment Address List in snapout form (top sheet yellow, botton sheet white). On the "extension" sheet, the address of the structure (or Part to be listed) will be recorded in Columns 2 and 4 on the first line and the sample designations will be entered in Column 7. Note that the sampling pattern of sample designations on an "extension" sheet is not necessarily the same as on the basic sheet.

You may find that an address which is expected to be for a multi-unit structure is actually a single-unit structure. Special instructions regarding such cases are given on Page F-12.

1. Reason for listing units in multi-unit structures

When you are asked to list all units in specific multi-unit structures on an "extension" sheet, it is because the units within these structures were not identified separately by apartment number or location in the 1960 Census Listing Books. We assume, however, that these were multi-unit structures at the time of the Census because the street address was recorded more than once with different names of household heads entered for this same address.

For the current survey, we need a complete identification of all units existing in each such structure at the time the "extension" sheet is filled.

2. Reason for "snapout" version

The "snapout" version of the B Segment Address List is provided as an "extension" sheet because a copy of the listing you make is needed for the records of the Processing Office. The carbon (white) copy will be removed by the Regional Office and forwarded to the Processing Office after you have completed your enumeration of the segment.

3. Timing of listing of specified multi-unit structures

a. For NHS

For NHS the listing of a structure for which an "extension" sheet is provided is to be done during the week in which the lowest numbered sample on the particular "extension" sheet is interviewed.

1) Example — For example, you may be interviewing sample B27 units and find that an "extension" sheet in the Segment Folder has only Sample B31 and B35 designations. No listing would then be required for the "extension" sheet until you are to interview the Sample B31 units.

b. For CPS, MLS and SORAR — For CPS, MLS and SORAR, fill the "extension" sheet at the time specified on the line following the instruction "Fill Sheet ___".

c. Reason for procedure — The reason for not listing the structure until you are to interview one or more sample units in it is to have a complete listing for the first sample in which the structure is included.

d. No updating of "extension" sheet required — If a listing was made on an "extension" sheet for a previous sample or survey, do not bring the listing up to date but interview the units designated for the current sample making sure the current sampling pattern has been extended through all units listed.

4. Procedure for listing units in multi-unit structures — When there is an entry of "Fill Sheet ___" opposite an address on the basic B Segment Address List and an "extension" sheet is provided for the structure, proceed as follows:

a. Determine number of living quarters — At the time units in the structure are to be listed, determine the number of separate living quarters in the structure as instructed below:

1) When structure appears to be single-unit — If the structure appears from the outside to be a single-family house, you must inquire to determine the number of separate living quarters it contains. This instruction applies to B Segments only and is different from the listing instructions for such structures in TA and NTA Segments. It is necessary in B Segments because the entries in the 1960 Census Listing Book indicate that the structure is multi-unit.

Make your inquiry as instructed in Chapter 4 to Part C of this manual.

2) When structure contains numbered or lettered apartments — If the structure contains apartments which are numbered or lettered, list the apartments from information obtained from a desk (if any) in the lobby or from information obtained from a resident manager making sure to ask about any basement apartments. If there is no desk in the lobby or resident manager, canvass each floor of the structure and list each apartment by observation as specified in Chapter 7 to Part C of this manual.

3) When there are a number of quarters not identified by number or letter

If it is apparent that the structure contains a number of separate living quarters which are not identified by number or letter, but which are off a public hall, ask the resident manager for a listing of the apartments or canvass the hall and list the quarters by location as specified in Chapter 7 to Part C of this manual.

If these separate living quarters do not open off a public hall, inquire of the landlady or janitor or, if none, inquire of one of the tenants to determine the number and location of each separate living quarters in the structure.

b. How to list

List each separate living quarters in the structure on a separate line beginning on line one of the "extension" sheet. List in the order specified in Chapter 7 to Part C of this manual which is the order you follow in listing in TA and NTA Segments.

1) Column 5 on "extension" sheet

Enter the apartment number or a description of the location in Column 5. Do not list any of the units in the structure on the basic sheet where you are instructed to "Fill Sheet ___".

a) Special instructions for addresses found to be single-unit structures

If you find that the structure at the address listed on the "extension" sheet is a single-unit structure, enter a dash in Column 5 on line 1 and explain in Column 14 of the "extension" sheet why you believe it might have appeared from the Listing Book that this was a multi-unit structure. Also enter the name of the April 1960 household head for any units which existed at that time but which have been demolished, converted, etc. For example, you might have learned that the occupants formerly rented the upstairs as an apartment and now occupy the whole house. The entry in Column 14 in this case would be "Upstairs formerly rented as apartment - Jones". The Processing Office needs the name of the April 1960 household head to help determine whether the units were listed in the 1960 Census.

2) Column 6 on "extension" sheet

Leave Column 6 blank. You are not to obtain the name of the household head for the units you list except in the special cases described above and in paragraph 5) below.

3) Columns 8 and 9 on "extension" sheet

You will usually enter an "X" in Column 8 of the basic sheet and leave Columns 8 and 9 of the "extension" sheet blank since you are making a current listing of the units within the structure. However, if you do not find the identical sample address of the structure itself as listed,

enter the appropriate code in Column 9 on both the basic list and the "extension" sheet opposite the address for the structure. Note that for structures to be listed on the "extension" sheet the codes M (Merged) and CM (Converted to More Units) for Column 9 are not applicable at the time you make a complete listing of all units in the structure.

4) Columns 10-13 on "extension" sheet

These columns pertain to the predecessor-successor coverage check. Make no entries in them at the time of interview.

5) Column 14 on "extension" sheet

If you find that there is more than one structure at the address on the "extension" sheet and each structure is part of the specific address given with no separate house number, list on a separate line of the "extension" sheet, each unit in those structures which are identified by the specific address. Enter in Column 14 the name of the 1960 household head for each unit. For example, if the address on the "extension" sheet is "801 Main" and you find a single-unit house with this number and another "house in the rear" at this address with no separate house number, you would list the units in each structure on separate lines. On the other hand, if the address on the "extension" sheet is "614 Park" and you find a house with that address and another unit on the property with a house number of "614½ Park", you would not list the unit at 614½ on a separate line of the "extension" sheet but would explain the situation in Column 14 and enter the last name of the 1960 household head of the unit at the 614½ address; for example; "614½ Park - occupied in 1960 by Brown".

6) Designation of sample units on "extension" sheet

Sample units will have been designated in advance by sample designations in Column 7 of the "extension" sheet. Conduct an interview at those units designated for the current sample. It is possible that none of the units on a particular "extension" sheet will be designated for the current sample; in which case, no interviewing will be required of any units on this sheet for this sample.

5. Serial Numbers on "extension" sheet

Serial numbers will have been entered in Column 7 on the "extension" sheet for some or all units designated for the current sample.

a. If sample line has no serial number

If you list a unit on a line designated for the current sample and no serial number appears on the line, interview the unit. For such units in CPS, MLS or SORAR, enter the last name of the household head in the space for control number on the Control Card and schedule. For NHS, enter the last name of the household head in the space for the serial number on the questionnaire.

b. If no unit listed on line for current sample

If a serial number appears on a line designated for the current sample and not enough units are found in the structure to list a unit on the line, report the serial number as Type C-"unused line on extension sheet".

6. Control Cards and questionnaires for sample units on "extension" sheet

You will receive Control Cards (for CPS, MLS or SORAR or questionnaires (for NHS) for the units designated for the current sample if serial numbers have been assigned. Since your office does not know the apartment number or a description of the location of the unit at the sample address shown on the "extension" sheet, for CPS, MLS and SORAR you are to enter this information in Item 7 of the Control Card after you have listed the units.

For NHS enter the apartment number or a description of the location of the unit after the address in Item 2(a) of the questionnaire.

When asking the coverage questions on the CPS, MLS or SORAR Control Cards or NHS Questionnaire, treat the units listed on an "extension" sheet as specific units in multi-unit structures (or single-unit structures if appropriate in special cases).

7. Extension of sampling pattern on "extension" sheet

Occasionally, in regular B Segments you may have to extend the current sampling pattern further to provide for the number of units you list in a structure. To extend the sampling pattern, <u>examine the "extension" sheet to see what the skip pattern is for the current sample</u> (the one you are interviewing) and continue that pattern through all units listed.[1/] Interview all units designated for the current sample after you have extended the sampling pattern.

If you need more "extension" sheets for a structure than provided in the Segment Folder, use a snapout "extension" form from your supply. Extend the sampling pattern for the <u>current</u> sample to the additional "extension" sheets for that same structure and interview the current sample units.

Example

For example, if on the "extension" sheet for 400 Poplar Street, Lines 3, 6, 9, 12, 15 and 18 are designated for the current sample, you would continue designating every third unit for the current sample and enter

---

1/ In permit B Segments (those which have the letter "P" in the segment number) do <u>not</u> extend the sampling pattern through the listed units.

the current sample designation on Lines 1, 4, 7, etc., as far as necessary on the second "extension" sheet for the structure. You would interview the units listed on the lines designated for the current sample and follow the procedure in B5 above regarding entries in the serial number item on the interview forms.

8. Numbering of additional "extension" sheets

A separate sheet number will be assigned to each "extension" sheet if they are for different structures. If you need additional "extension" sheets to complete the listing of all units within a structure, use as many blank snapout copies of the B Segment Address List as necessary. Use the same "extension" sheet number of each additional sheet for the particular structure but add the letter "a" to the first additional sheet, "b" to the second additional sheet, etc. For example, if more sheets are needed to complete the listing of the structure on "extension" sheet 2, the second "extension" sheet for the structure would be numbered "2a", the third "2b", etc.

CHAPTER 4. PROCEDURE FOR SPECIAL DWELLING PLACES IN B SEGMENTS

A. Identification of special dwelling places in B Segments

When a special dwelling place in a B Segment is to be included in the sample, you will find the address for the place listed on the basic B Segment Address List with an instruction "Fill Sheet ___". In most cases the sheet you are to fill is a Special Dwelling Worksheet which has been numbered and inserted in the Segment Folder. A carbon will be attached to the sheet so that a copy can be returned to the Processing Office. For example, if a particular Segment Folder contains a basic B Segment Address List and a worksheet and Line 12 of the basic B Segment Address List appears as "1091 University Ave.--Fill Sheet 2"; sheet 1 would be the basic sheet and sheet 2 would be the Special Dwelling Worksheet. (Occasionally a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet instead of a Special Dwelling Worksheet may be inserted. If so, it will contain specific instructions regarding sampling and assignment of serial numbers.)

If the Segment Folder contains one or more "Fill Sheets" which are Special Dwelling Worksheets (or Special Dwelling Listing Sheets), examine the upper right heading of each worksheet (or Special Dwelling Listing Sheet) to determine whether a sample of units is to be selected for the current sample. If you find a worksheet for a place to be included in the current sample, the place may have been included in a previous sample or in another survey. If included in only one other sample for the same survey, Section I or Section II will be filled for the current survey depending on whether the other sample precedes or follows the current sample. If included in more than one other sample or in another survey, the worksheet for the current sample will be cross-referenced with the appropriate worksheet(s) for the other sample or survey. If the place which is to be included in the current sample has not been included in a previous sample for the same survey, Section I will be partially filled by your office.

B. Use of Special Dwelling Worksheet

The Special Dwelling Worksheet may be printed on either white or blue paper--the forms are alike and either may be used.

1. Heading and Column 2

Identification and sampling information will have been entered in Items a, b, e, f, and g in the heading and in Column 2 of the worksheet in advance and sampling instructions for more than one sample may appear on the form. You are to use the instructions for the current sample.

a. Item a

In Item a of the heading, either "staff" or "unclassified", whichever is appropriate, should be checked. (For CPS, "non-staff" will be checked only on the worksheet which will be provided for the annual non-staff enumeration in March or April. Non-staff units are not scheduled to be interviewed for MLS, NHS or SORAR unless you receive specific instructions to do so.) Follow the instructions in Chapter 14, Part C of this manual to determine which kind of units (staff or unclassified) are to be interviewed in each type of Special Dwelling Place.

b. Item b

The sample designation will appear in Item b. If the place is in more than one sample, a separate column will be used for each sample. Always use the column for the current sample.

c. Item e

The Processing Office may have entered a figure in Item e for your office to use as a guide in designating the sample numbers on the worksheet. If so, the entry should appear opposite either "staff" or "unclassified" depending on the kind of units to be interviewed. In some places where staff units are to be interviewed you may find that the Processing Office has mistakenly entered the figure opposite "unclassified" units in Item e. Follow the instructions in Chapter 14, Part C, regarding the kind of units to be included in the interview.

2. If special dwelling place has a usable register

If the special dwelling place has a usable register from which to sample (as defined in Chapter 14), use the Special Dwelling Worksheet to select the current sample units from the register in the same manner as instructed for NTA Segments in Part D of this manual.

a. Enter an "X" in Item c opposite "Register" to show that you are sampling from a register.

b. Indicate in Item d of the heading of the worksheet whether you are sampling living quarters (Rooms, HUS, etc.) or persons. For staff units and unclassified units, a register of persons is to be used only as a last resort.

c. Disregard the figure (if any) entered in Item e and ask how many units (staff or unclassified) there are in the place at the time you select the units to be interviewed for the current sample. Record this figure in Item e after drawing a line through the figure previously entered in Item e, if any. The figure you enter should be the

kind of units you are sampling—that is, (1) living quarters such as rooms, housing units, etc., or (2) persons (as a last resort). The Regional Office needs this figure to determine whether you have interviewed the correct number of sample units.

3. If special dwelling place has NO usable register

If the special dwelling place has no usable register from which to sample and:

a. Place has not been in previous sample or survey

the place has not been in a previous sample:

(1) Make a complete listing on a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet of all of the kind of units (staff or unclassified) to be included in the interview for the particular place. Copy the identification information from the heading of the Special Dwelling Worksheet for the place.

(2) Consider the listing you have made as a register and use the Special Dwelling Worksheet to select the sample units from it.

(3) Enter an "X" in Item c on the worksheet opposite "New Listing".

(4) Indicate in Item d, on the worksheet whether you are sampling rooms, housing units or persons.

(5) Record in Item e, the number of units in the place.

b. Place has been completely listed for previous sample or survey

The place has been completely listed for a previous sample or survey:

(1) Update the previously prepared Special Dwelling Listing Sheet during your visit to the place for the current sample. Do this by inquiring whether any new structures or wings or new trailer sites in trailer camps have been added since the special dwelling place was previously listed. If such additions have taken place, add the new units (staff or unclassified) to the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. Do not cross off the list, units which no longer exist and do not inquire about new units within structures which were previously listed.

(2) Enter an "X" opposite "Previous Listing" in Item c and fill Item d on the worksheet.

(3) Record in Item e, the number of units now listed for the place.

(4) Use the updated listing as a register to select units corresponding to the encircled sample numbers entered in Column 2 on the worksheet.

4. Exclusion of units in Special Dwelling Places

On some Special Dwelling Worksheets attached to the B Segment Address List, there will be a notation to exclude certain units in the listing and sampling of these places. For example, for a sorority house you might find the notation "Exclude housemother's apartment". This means that you are to exclude this unit in listing or in sampling from a register. The reason for this is that the unit (in this case, the housemother's apartment) was listed on a separate line in the 1960 Census Listing Book and has a chance to come into sample on a B Segment Address List. Such units may or may not appear on the basic sheet.

5. Special Dwelling Worksheet provided for a hotel found to be non-transient

If Jeffersonville has provided a worksheet for a non-transient hotel, retain the place on the worksheet and treat it as a special dwelling place. In such a case, follow the rules for listing and sampling transient hotels <u>except</u> that:

(1) all units are to be listed.

(2) all sample units are to be considered as housing units and

(3) "non-transient hotel" and code "09", are to be entered for type of place and type code.

6. Special dwelling place found to be demolished or non-existent

If the special dwelling place is found to be demolished or non-existent, indicate this fact in the upper margin on both copies of the Special Dwelling Worksheet (or Listing Sheet).

C. When "extension" sheet is for a special dwelling place

You may be provided with an "extension" sheet for a multi-unit structure which you find to be a special dwelling place. In this case, proceed as follows:

1. List all units (staff or unclassified) in the place on a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet. (Exclude any entries specified as exclusions on the "extension" sheet and any units in the place listed at different addresses on the basic sheet.) Fill the heading of the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet (if the place contains staff units, enter STAFF above the title of the form).

2. Transcribe all sample designations from the "extension" sheet to the corresponding lines on the Special Dwelling Listing Sheet, extending the sampling pattern for each sample designated through the last unit listed.

3. Interview the units corresponding to the current sample designation.

4. Enter the last name of the household head in the space for control number on the Control Cards and schedules for CPS, MLS and SORAR, or in the space for serial number on the NHS Questionnaire. Enter "vacant" if the unit is vacant.

5. Send an INTER-COMM to your office indicating that the structure is a special dwelling place and that you have filled a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for it.

6. Enter in the Remarks column on Line 1 of the "extension" sheet, "Special Dwelling Listing Sheet filled."

7. In Section V on the front of the Segment Folder, check the "yes" box and enter the name of the special dwelling place.

D. When Sample unit on basic sheet is a unit in a special dwelling place

You may observe that some units in special dwelling places are listed on separate lines of the basic B Segment Address List. You are to consider these units as properly listed there and interview them if they are designated for the current sample. Enter "OT" in Column 9 and specify in Column 14 the type of unit (staff, non-staff or unclassified) and the type of place (transient hotel, home for aged, etc.).

If the unit is in a specified institution as shown on page 86, Part C of this manual, report the situation on an INTER-COMM giving the following information:

1. The name and type of the place. (If it existed in April 1960 and had a different name then, enter that name and the present name, identifying each.)

2. The number and identification of all units in the place, for example, "rooms 1-14 non-staff", "room 15 staff".

3. If all of the units in the place do not have the same street address, identify the units at each address separately. For example, "Park Rest Home, 545 Canyon Road, rooms 101-212 nonstaff; Manager's Residence (staff) 547 Canyon Road".

E. When regular sample unit on basic sheet has always been or is found to be converted to a special dwelling place

If the specific address in Column 4 on a separate line of the B Segment Address List has always been or is found to be converted to a special dwelling place, prepare a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for that specific address. For example, if the specific address in Column 4 of the B Segment Address List is, at the present time a college dormitory, prepare a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for the dormitory at that address (not for all the living quarters located on the college campus).

For such a place proceed as follows:

1. Return the originally prepared interview forms as Type C-noninterview.
2. Enter "OT" in Column 9 on the line for the original unit on the basic sheet of the B Segment Address List and specify "Unit is Special Dwelling Place" together with the date in Column 14.

   NOTE: These instructions do not apply if the sample unit has been <u>replaced</u> by a special dwelling place. The proper code for those places is "R" as instructed on page F-7.

3. Prepare the heading of a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet and list all of the units in the place (staff or unclassified, whichever is appropriate) on consecutive lines of this form. If you are listing staff units, enter "STAFF" above the title of the form. If you are listing unclassified units, no entry is required above the title. Enter the current sample designation in Column 3 opposite each unit listed.
4. Interview each unit (staff or unclassified) for the current sample.
5. Enter the last name of the household head in the space for control number on the Control Cards and schedule for CPS, MLS, and SORAR; in the space for serial number on the NHS Questionnaire, Enter "vacant" if the unit is vacant.
6. Send an INTER-COMM to your office indicating that the address is a special dwelling place and that you have filled a Special Dwelling Listing Sheet for it.

CHAPTER 5. TREATMENT OF MERGED AND "EXTRA" UNITS

A. Merged units

Guest houses

Treat "merged" units in the same manner as in TA and NTA segments. You are to treat guest houses as merged with the main house if the guest house is not rented or for rent. For example, the listing sheet may show:

Line Number	Street Name	House Number	Apartment Number or Location	Sample Designation
4	Oak	801		A16
5		801	Rear	A17

If you learn that the structure in the rear is a guest house, treat the two units at 801 Oak Street as a merger. (By treating the units as merged, you combine the guest house with the main house as you do in TA and NTA Segments.)

B. "Extra" units

"Extra" units will generally be discovered by asking what we call "coverage questions".

In CPS, MLS and SORAR the coverage questions to be asked in B Segments at the time specified on the Control Cards are questions 8a and 8b.

In NHS, coverage questions 12 and 13 on the questionnaire are applicable in B Segments.

1. Definition of "extra" unit in B Segments

In B Segments, an "extra" unit is a housing unit or "other" unit <u>within the same structure</u> and <u>within the specific address</u> of the sample unit as recorded in Columns 4 and 5 of the B Segment Address List (Item 7 of the Control Card and Item 2a of the NHS questionnaire). To be an "extra" unit it must <u>not</u> be listed elsewhere (either on a separate line or in a notation) on the B Segment Address List and must be discovered while interviewing the sample unit. The specific address of the sample unit may appear on the B Segment Address List as a single-unit structure or an apartment or other location within a multi-unit structure.

2. Coverage Questions

For CPS, MLS and SORAR ask the coverage questions at the time specified on the Control Card. For NHS, ask them as instructed in Chapter 1, Part D of this manual.

When house number is for an apartment in a single structure

Occasionally you may find that a sample unit appears to be listed as a single-unit structure, but that the house number in Column 4 of the B Segment Address List is for an apartment in a multi-unit structure and that each apartment in the structure has a separate house number. For example, 301 Green Street may be for a downstairs apartment and 303 Green Street for an upstairs apartment in the same structure. In this case treat each unit as though it were listed as a specific unit in a multi-unit structure since the house number is actually the identification of the unit within the structure.

In this case, you should:

(1) Footnote the original address entered on the CPS, MLS or SORAR Control Card or NHS Questionnaire and enter a description of the location of the unit, such as "Downstaris apartment".

(2) Skip Item 8a on the CPS, MLS or SORAR Control Card or Item 13 on the NHS Questionnaire.

NOTE: The above instruction applies only when the house number is part of a single structure, but not in the case of a house number for a semi-detached house or a row house where each house constitutes a separate structure.

3. Procedure for "extra" units

If, in asking the coverage questions, you discover what you believe to be an "extra" unit within the specific address of the sample unit, proceed as follows:

a. Check B Segment Address List

Check the B Segment Address List for the segment to see whether the unit is already entered on a separate line (in consecutive order or out of order) or included in a notation on the sheet. If the unit appears on the list, it is not an "extra" unit unless it had previously been reported as merged (indicated by the code "M" in Column 9). You would not interview it unless, of course, it falls in the sample in its own right. (Some B Segment Lists may have several units listed on one line either at the top or bottom of the sheet. These are never on sample lines and are referred to as "Notations". You are to consider all the units entered in this way as listed units.)

b. Apply Table X on Control Card or questionnaire

If the unit which appears to be an "extra" unit is not entered anywhere on the B Segment Address List, fill Table X on the back of the Control Card (on the front of the NHS questionnaire) as follows:

1) Col. 2

Column 2. Enter the item number through which the unit was discovered (8a or 8b for CPS, MLS and SORAR; 12 or 13 for NHS).

2) Col. 3

Column 3. The purpose of this column is to find out the number of separate living quarters in each space reported; for example, the number of separate quarters on the second floor, etc. Check "Yes" or "No" in Column 3a or 3b as appropriate and fill a separate line of Table X for each separate living quarters reported.

3) Col. 4

Column 4. Enter a description of the location of the specific quarters you are inquiring about; for example, "2nd floor"; "basement", etc.

4) Cols. 5-7

Columns 5-7. The questions in these columns will help determine whether the living quarters are a housing unit, "other" unit or are not separate living quarters.

Column 5. If the living quarters recorded in Column 4 are occupied, ask question 5 and record the answer by entering a check in Column 5a or 5b.

Column 6. Ask question 6 whether the quarters are occupied or vacant, and check Column 6a or 6b as appropriate.

Column 7. Ask question 7 for both occupied and vacant quarters and check Column 7a or 7b. If the quarters are vacant, and have no direct access or cooking equipment it will be necessary to ask whether the last occupants had cooking equipment (see Page B-8, Paragraph D).

5) Cols. 8-9

Columns 8 and 9. Use these columns to classify the information recorded in Columns 5-7 as follows:

Column 8. If the quarters are neither a housing unit or "other" unit, enter an "X" in Column 8 and, if occupied, add the occupants to the household for the sample unit where you discovered the quarters.

Column 9. If the quarters qualify as a housing unit or as an "other" unit, check Column 9a or 9b as appropriate. Then fill a separate Control Card for CPS, MLS and SORAR (a questionnaire for NHS) for the "extra" unit and interview it.

6) Cols. 10-11

Columns 10 and 11. Ask the questions in Columns 10 and 11 only if the quarters are classified as a housing unit and are in a B Segment. Information on the year this unit was created and the name of the household head on April 1, 1960 (if the unit was in existence then), will help us check the "extra" unit against the 1960 Census Listing Books and against new construction data to see whether it is already covered by either of these two sources.

Column 10. Record the year the unit was created (built, converted) by entering the last two digits of the year. If the year was 1959 or 1960, ask whether it was the first or last half of the year. The first half means January through June and the last half means July through December.

Enter before the year in Column 10 an "F" to indicate "first half" or an "L" to indicate "last half" for example:

Situation	Entry
The Unit is a result of conversion in January 1959	F 59
The Unit was created when the house was built in November 1959	L 59
The Unit was converted from storage space in May 1960	F 60
The Unit has existed since house was built in September 1960	L 60

Column 11. If the unit was created before July 1960, ask the question in Column 11. Record the last name of the household head on April 1, 1960, if the unit existed at that time. Enter the first and last name if the respondent provides this readily; otherwise, enter the last name only. If the respondent does not know who lived in the unit on April 1, 1960, enter "NA". If the respondent finds it difficult to recall the situation on April 1, 1960, try to help him in any way that you can.

7) Col. 12

Column 12. If the space inquired about is found to be an "other" unit, describe the unit in Column 12; for example, enter "room in boarding house"; "staff unit in mental hospital", etc.

c. Treatment of "extra" units in later periods of interview

If the Processing Office does not find the "extra" unit in the 1960 Listing Book or the new construction data, you will receive a Control Card (for CPS, MLS or SORAR) for the unit which you are to interview in succeeding months. If the unit is found in either of the above sources, it will be deleted from interview in later periods of and you will not receive a Control Card for it.

NHS-HIS-100
FY 1965

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

National Health Survey
Interviewer's Manual

Parts A, D, and E

(For subjects concerning Definition of Housing Unit and Related Terms, How to List, and B Segments see also the index to Parts B, C, and F.)

(Page number given is page on which reference instructions appear or start. Note that they may continue on the following page or pages.)

Page

Ability to read newspaper print with glasses (Question 14a).....D-101
Acceptable entries for accidents and injuries.....D-64
Access to living quarters (see also Parts B and C Index).....A-28
Accidents and injuries during last week or
week before (Question 8).....D-47
Accidents or injuries - entry in column (d-1).....D-62
Accidents involving motor vehicles.....D-81
Active duty in Armed Forces, now on - delete.....D-29
Activities affected by health.....D-96
Activities Card, use of - (Table I, column (t)).....D-96
Activities statement (Table I, column (t)) - when to reask.....D-99
Activities statement (Table I, column (t)) - where to record answer..D-98
Additional lines needed for completing Table I.....D-56
Additional questionnaires for a household.....D-1
Additional questionnaires if more than 6 household members.....D-31
Address in item 2a which appears to identify a
single-unit structure.....D-12
Adequate and inadequate nature of injury - examples.....D-64
Adequate entries for conditions in column (d-1), Table I.....D-62
Adequate entries for conditions in column (h), Table II.....D-108
Adequate entries for injuries.....D-64
Adjacent premises (Table A).....D-84
Adult, at home at time of interview, check entry - Item H).....D-39
Adult - defined.....D-25

Page

Advance ("Dear Friend") letter.....E-2
Age at last birthday (Question 3).....D-34
Allergies - how to ask column (d-3).....D-70
Amount of detail required for column (d-2).....D-67
Annulled marriages.....D-35
"Anything else?" probe question.....D-42
Apply household membership rules at every household.....D-27
Area segments - in sample - defined.....A-7
Armed Forces - active members - delete.....D-29
Armed Forces - defined.....D-30
Armed Forces - female members - delete.....D-29
Armed Forces Reserve.....D-30
"Arrested" conditions.....D-51
Ask each question as worded.....E-6
Ask the first question as soon as possible.....E-1
Asking additional questions.....E-10
"At home" checked (Item H) for an adult not interviewed
for self - procedure.....D-55
At work when accident happened (Table A).....D-85
Attendance of schools in foreign countries.....D-131

B segments - in sample - defined.....A-7
B segments - procedures in - see Part F
Babies under 1 year of age.....D-34
Bed days during past 2 weeks.....D-89, D-95
Bed days during past 12 months.....D-95
Bed, when to use as separate sample unit in
Special Dwelling Place.....A-50
Begin the interview, how to.....E-1
"Being in a hospital" - defined.....D-54
Blanks discovered on questionnaire for questions
which should have been asked.....E-11
Boarders or roomers as household members.....A-40
"Bought or obtained" as used in Table P, column (d) - defined.....D-114
"Bought or obtained" as used in Table NP, column (b) - defined.....D-120
Brand name of "non-prescription" medicine,
Table NP, column (a).....D-119
Business - defined.....D-37

Calendar Card, change of reference period for
delayed interviews.....D-45
Calendar Card, preparation of.....D-44

Page

Calendar Card, use of - during interview.....D-44
Calls, number allowed.....E-16
Calls on household - see Record of calls on household
Card A (Conditions List).....D-48
Card B (Impairments List).....D-51
Card C - conditions for which columns (d-1)-(d-4),
Table I need not be asked.....D-67
Card D (List of symptoms).....D-67
Cards E-H (Activities Cards) used for questions
in column (t).....D-96
Card I (Mobility) used for question in column (v).....D-100
Card J - "non-prescription medicine" (Question 17).....D-118
Card K - Income Card (Question 25).....D-132
Cause of conditions reported in questions 9 or 11.....D-66
Cause of impairments.....D-67
Cause of symptoms.....D-67
Caution about deciding two conditions are the same.....D-79
Caution regarding correct entry of year
in column (c), Table II.....D-105
Check between columns (i), (j), (k),
and (l) of Table I.....D-92
Check local telephone directory for name
and address of hospital.....D-112
Check of column (e), Table II with column (q), Table I.....D-109
Check of disability days, Table I.....D-89
Checking listing in TA segments.....A-15
Childbirth entries in Table I.....D-75
Children - eligible respondent for.....D-26
Children under 1 year of age - reporting age for.....D-34
Chronic conditions as related to talking to a doctor.....D-59
Cigar smoking (Question 21).....D-127
Cigarette smoking (Question 18).....D-123
Cigarettes, average number smoked in a day (Question 19b).....D-125
Cigarettes, former smokers (Question 20).....D-126
Cigarettes, greatest number ever smoked in a day (question 18b).....D-124
Cigarettes, length of time since smoking fairly
regularly (Question 20b).....D-126
Cigarettes, number smoked in life time (Question 18a).....D-123
Cigarettes, number smoked 12 months ago (Question 19c).....D-125
Cigarettes, persons now smoking cigarettes (Question 19).....D-124
Cigarettes, present smoker defined (Question 19a).....D-124
Cigars, length of time since smoking cigars regularly
(Question 21d).....D-127

Page

Cigars, number of cigars smoked in a day (Question 21c).....D-127
Cigars, persons now smoking cigars (Question 21b).....D-127
Citizens of foreign countires.....A-43
Column number of person in Table I - importance of accuracy.....D-56
Column number of person in Table II - importance of accuracy.....D-104
Column number of person in Table NP, column (e).....D-122
Column number of person in Table P, column (c).....D-116
Columns in Table I, Table II - see Table I, II
Common-law marriages.....D-33, D-35
Completed interview - defined.....D-18
Completion of work on time.....E-17
Complications of childbirth.....D-75, D-109
Condition first noticed during past 12 months or before.....D-93
Condition reported later than question 17.....D-78
Condition to which columns (e)-(v) should refer.....D-72
Conditions discovered in asking questions 16 and 17.....D-122
Conditions experienced during past 12 months - not now present.....D-76
Conditions first noticed during or prior to past 3 months.....D-92
Conditions first reported in Table II.....D-112
Conditions List (Card A).....D-51
Conditions not causing trouble at present time.....D-50
Conditions not experienced during past 12 months.....D-51
Conditions not picked up by questions 6-12 - how to record.....D-58
Conditions not present at time of interview.....D-50
Conditions now "arrested".....D-51
Conditions reported in question 9 or 11, except
conditions on Card C, require "cause".....D-66
Conditions reported separately which may be the same.....D-79
Conditions reported to be the same - procedure.....D-79
Conditions reported while filling the Diabetes Supplement.....D-137
Conditions reported while reading Card A.....D-51
Conditions to be carried back to Table I from Table
P and NP.....D-122
Conditions to be carried back to Table I from Table II.....D-112
Conditions to be carried past column (aa), Table I.....D-94
Conditions to be recorded as reported by respondent.....D-42, E-8
Conditions (Card C) which do not require asking columns
(d-1)-(d-4) of Table I.....D-67
Confidential treatment of information obtained in survey A-6, E-20
Confusion of this survey with other Census work.....E-3
Continued exposure - not injury.....D-64
Converted unit - "extra" unit created.....A-21, D-20
Converted unit - permanent - noninterview.....D-22
Converted unit - temporary - noninterview.....D-21
Converted units - see Segment List, changes on
Cooking equipment, exclusive use of (See also Parts B and C Index)..A-29

Page

Corrections - how to make them.....D-24, E-12
Cost of non-prescription medicine (Question 17, column c).....D-120
Cost of prescription medicine (Question 16, column e).....D-117
Coverage questions (Items 12-14).....D-12
"Current" injury causes impairment.....D-65
"Cut down for as much as a day" - defined.....D-87
"Cut down on the things you usually do".....D-88
Cutting down on usual activities.....D-88
Cysts, tumors and other growths.....D-76

Dashes - symbol.....D-24
Date entered hospital or nursing home, etc.....D-104
Dates of Wars.....D-130
Day in bed - defined.....D-89
Days cut down during two-week period.....D-88
Days lost from school.....D-89
Days lost from work.....D-90
Delete the name if not a household member.....D-30
Deleted units - see Segment List, changes on
Deleting lines of Table I or Table II for illness, etc.,
starting after "last Sunday night".....D-77
Deleting lines of Table II - "none" in column (d).....D-106
Deletion of entries on questionnaire - procedure.....D-24
Delivery or childbirth.....D-75, D-109
Demolished unit - noninterview.....D-21
Demolished units - see Segment List, changes on
Dental conditions.....D-75
Description of conditions - general - cols. (d-1)-(d-4) of Table I..D-60
Design of sample for the survey.....A-5
Detail needed for part of body, column (d-4).....D-71
Detail required for column (h), Table II.....D-108
Detail required for question 2, Table A.....D-81
Diabetes Supplement, (Form NHS-HIS-1d).....D-135
Complete identification information on front (cover) page.....D-135
General interviewing procedures.....D-136
How to fill.....D-136
Miscellaneous points.....D-137
Purpose of the diabetes questions.....D-137
Record of return calls.....D-136
Respondent rules - on front (cover) page of Supplement.....D-135
To be returned with its basic questionnaire.....E-21
Whether to fill.....D-135

Page

Direct access to living quarters (See also Parts B and C Index).....A-28
Dislocations and fractures, setting of -
considered operations (Table II column i).....D-110
Doctor "talked to" - defined.....D-58
Domestic employees in separate house or cabin.....A-30, A-42
"Don't know" answers.....E-12
"DK" - use of - general rules.....E-12
Dots - symbol.....D-24
Doubts about recording.....D-50
Drugs - reaction to.....D-76

Earlier injuries causing current ill-effects.....D-47, D-63
Editing Reports (Forms NHS-HIS-705 and NHS-HIS-706).....E-17, E-25
Education.....D-130
Eligible respondent.....D-25
Eligible respondent for children.....D-26
Eligible respondent for questions 8-16 and Tables I, II, and A.....D-55
Eligible respondent rules - exceptions.....D-26
Eligible respondent for unrelated persons.....D-26
Eliminated in subsample - noninterviews.....D-21
Employment status in past 2 weeks.....D-36
Entire stay (in hospital) prior to reference period.....D-106
Entries from questions 9 or 11 - ask column (d-2).....D-67
Entry required for Item 2(b).....D-6
Error Codes for Errors other than Diagnostic (Appendix B, Part E)...E-29
Error Codes for Illness, Injury, and
Hospitalization Entries (Appendix B, Part E).....E-26
"Ever talked to doctor" - defined.....D-58
Exceptions to eligible respondent rules.....D-26
Explaining the survey to respondents.....E-2
"Extra" units - interviewing.....A-18
"Extra" units - see Segment List, changes on

Fact-finding nature of NHS.....E-3
"Fairly regularly" for cigarette smokers defined (Question 20b).....D-126
Family income.....D-132
Family reference as used in questions 10 and 11.....D-49, D-51
"Farm buildings" checked on Segment List.....A-20
Farm - where accident happened.....D-84
Figures I-V - Examples of forms.....E-35
First noticed condition - defined.....D-92
First noticed condition during or prior to past 3 months.....D-92
First noticed condition during the past 12 months or
before that time.....D-93
Floor plan or diagram - how to sample from in Special
Dwelling Place.....A-49

Page

Follow order on the questionnaire.....E-5
Footnotes - general rules for use of.....D-25
Foreign citizens.....A-43
Forms 11-35 and 35A - use of.....E-20
"Free" medicine, how to record in Table NP, column (c).....D-120
"Free" medicine, how to record in Table P, column (e).....D-117

General description of conditions - columns (d-1)-(d-4).....D-60
General procedure for questions 1-5.....D-24
General procedure for questions 6-13.....D-40
General procedure for Table I.....D-56
General procedure for Table II.....D-103
Grade or years of school attended.....D-130
Grade or years of school finished.....D-131
Grid map, reference and use.....A-8
Group training.....E-18
Growths, cysts, tumors.....D-76

Has a job or business.....D-36
"Head" deleted - procedure.....D-32
Head of household - defined.....D-32
Health Examination Survey.....A-4
Health Interview Survey.....A-4
Health Records Survey.....A-5
HEAVY TYPE questions.....D-24
Help the respondent to estimate number of days in bed.....D-95
Highest grade attended in school.....D-130
Highest grade finished in school.....D-131
Home accidents ("Home" defined).....D-83
Home study.....E-18
Hospital, "being in a hospital" - defined (Question 13).....D-54
Hospital days to be counted as bed days.....D-89, D-109
Hospital name and address.....D-111
Hospitalizations first reported while filling the
Diabetes Supplement.....D-137
Hospitalization probe question 13.....D-43, D-53
Hospitalizations, Table II.....D-103
Hours of work - interviewer's.....E-20
House and land on farms rented separately for cash - "place".....D-8
Household - defined.....A-28
Household membership rules.....A-40
Household members - how to enter names.....D-31
Households in sample.....A-5
Housing unit - defined (See also Parts B and C Index).....A-28
How to answer respondent who asks if doctor
seen counts as a doctor.....D-59

Page

How to apply the housing unit definition at the time of interview...A-37
Additional household members - ask about separate quarters.....A-37
Five or more boarders or roomers.....A-38
Tyical family group.....A-37
Vacant living quarters.....A-38
How to ask additional questions.....E-10
How to ask question 5.....D-36
How to begin the interview.....E-1
How to delete an entry.....D-24
How to enter names of household members.....D-31
How to fill Table A.....D-80
How to record conditions reported in questions 6-13.....D-42
How to record the answers to question 5.....D-37
How to report surgical operations.....D-110

Identification items on questionnaire.....D-5
Identification of housing unit.....A-17
Identification sheet of questionnaire.....D-1, D-5
If persons outside immediate family are present.....E-2
Ill-effects from earlier injuries.....,D-47, D-63
Illnesses, etc., starting after "last Sunday night".....D-44, D-77
Illnesses occurring in past 12 months not now present.....D-76
Illnesses resulting from vaccination, immunization, etc.....D-76
Illustration A - Order of asking questions 1-5.....D-34
Illustration B - Order of asking questions 6-13.....D-41
Illustration C - Order of filling lines of Table I.....D-57
Illustration D - Examples of entries in columns (d-1) and (d-2), Table I.....D-69
Illustration E - Examples of conditions properly reported in columns (d-1)-(d-4), Table I.....D-73
Illustration F - Patterns of restricted activity, columns (e)-(j), Table I.....D-91
Illustration G - Order of asking questions 23-25.....D-129
Immunization - vaccinations, etc., resulting in illnesses.....D-76
Impairment - defined.....D-66
Impairments List (Card B).....D-51
Importance of careful work.....E-15
In Armed Services (Table A).....D-86
In bed or in a hospital (column (g), Table I).....D-87
In sample by mistake - noninterview..... .....D-21
Income Card (K).....D-132
Income for past 12 months.....D-132
Income of unrelated persons.....D-132
Industrial place and premises (Table A).....D-84

Page

Ineligible respondents.....D-25
Influencing respondent.....E-7
Information volunteered or given out of turn.....E-5
Injections or shots, not considered as medicine prescribed
by doctor (Question 16a).....D-115
Injuries and accidents which happened in last two weeks.....D-36, D-62
Injuries - defined.....D-63
Injuries - how to ask column (d-1).....D-61
Injuries - internal.....D-65
Injuries - multiple.....D-65
Injuries - requiring Table A.....D-79
Injuries which still bother a person (Question 9).....D-47
Injury happened in last two weeks - entry in column (d-1).....D-62
Injury happened prior to last two weeks - entry in column (d-1).....D-63
Injury - nature of.....D-63, D-81
Inmates of institutions - not household members.....A-41
"Inside" house - Table A.....D-84
Instructions for making the determination of "Year Built"
(front page).....D-1
Internal injuries.....D-65
INTERviewer COMMunication (Referral Sheet) - Form 11-36.....E-18
Interviewing assignments - starting and completion.....E-17
Interview week.....A-8
Introduction to the respondent.....E-1
Items 1-19 and Table X (Front of Questionnaire).....D-1
Item 1.....Number of questionnaires.....D-5
Item 2a.....Address or description of unit.....D-6
Item 2b.....Mailing address.....D-6
Item 2c.....Name and type of code of Special Dwelling Place.D-6
Items 3-8.....Identification.....D-6
Item 7(b).....Type of segment.....D-6
Item 8.....Serial number.....D-7
Item E.....For "extra" unit in B or NTA segment.....A-18, D-7
Item L.....Check entry (filled by office).....D-7
Item 9.....Own, Rent, or Rent-free.....D-7
Item 10.....Acreage and sale of produce.....D-8
Item 11.....Type of unit.....D-11
Items 12-14.....Listing check.....D-12
Table X.....Classification of unit discovered.....D-14
Item 15.....Telephone number.....D-15
Item D.....Diabetic condition in Table I.....D-16
Item 16.....Record of calls.....D-16
Item 17.....Noninterviews.....D-18
Items 18-19.....Name and code of interviewer.....D-23

Page

Item D.....Diabetic condition in Table I.....D-16, D-135
Item E.....For "extra" unit in B or NTA segment.....A-18, D-7
Item H.....Whom to interview.....D-39
Item L.....Land usage.....D-7
Item R.....Who responded - in household interviews.....D-55
Items to be copied to additional questionnaires.....D-7

Job - defined.....D-37
Junior High School - how to count for years of education.....D-130

Kind of injury - column (d-1) of Table I.....D-62
Kind of trouble - column (d-3) of Table I.....D-68
Kind of trouble not known - column (d-3) of Table I.....D-70
Kitchen, exclusive use of (See also parts B and C Index).....A-29
Korean War - date of service (Question 23).....D-130
Know your questionnaire.....E-15

Land usage.....D-7
Last week or the week before - defined.....D-44
Law authorizing survey.....A-2
Layoff - defined.....D-38
Length of time since smoking cigarettes "fairly regularly"
(Question 20b).....D-126
Length of time since smoking cigars (Question 21d).....D-127
Length of time since smoking a pipe (Question 22d).....D-128
Letter left at household.....E-13
Limitations of activities.....D-96
Limitations of activities - examples of.....D-96
List every person named by respondent.....D-28
List of Error Codes for Errors other than Diagnostic
(Appendix B, Part E).....E-29
List of Error Codes for Illness, Injury, and Hospitalization
Entries (Appendix B, Part E).....E-26
List of structures with no living quarters.....A-11
Listen to respondent.....E-7
Listing check (Items 12-14).....D-11
Listing materials.....A-7
Location of segment.....A-8
Looking for work - defined.....D-38
Looking for work or on layoff.....D-37

Page

Mailing address.....D-6
"Main condition" (to which remaining questions refer).....D-72
"Main entrance" rule.....A-16
Manner of interviewer.....E-4
Marine Corps service.....D-30
Marital status (Question 4).....D-35
Married persons.....D-35
Medicine prescribed by doctor (Question 16) - defined.....D-115
Medicine or treatment during last week or week before
(Question 7).....D-46
Medicines taken for preventing illness.....D-47
Members of household living at home.....A-40
Members of household temporarily absent.....A-40
Menopausal symptoms.....D-75
Menstruation - difficulties of.....D-75
Mental illness.....D-76
Merchant Marine service.....D-30
Merged units - interviewing.....A-21
Merged units - see Segment List, changes on
More than five medicines reported in Table NP - how to record.....D-122
More than five medicines reported in Table P - how to record.....D-118
More than one unit at address.....A-17
Motor vehicle accidents.....D-81
Motor vehicle accidents - not restricted to collision.....D-82
Motor vehicle - defined.....D-81
Motor vehicle involved in accident.....D-82
Moving motor vehicles.....D-83
Multiple injuries.....D-80

Name and address of hospital.....D-111
Name or brand of non-prescription medicine is not known
(Table NP, column a).....D-119
Name of prescription medicine is not known (Table P, column a).....D-115
Names of household members, how to enter.....D-31
Names of operations - entry for column (d-1).....D-76
National Guard service.....D-30
National Health Survey - Continuing program of surveys.....A-4
National Health Survey - Fact-finding survey.....E-3
Nature of injury (Table I).....D-63
Nature of injury and part of body (Table A).....D-81
Newborn babies still in hospital - as household members.....A-40
New or missed Special Dwelling Place.....A-22
Nights in hospital, nursing home, rest home, etc.....D-106
No eligible respondent in household.....D-27
No one at home - repeated calls at household.....D-19

Page

Non-chronic conditions in relation to doctor ever talked to.....D-59
Nonexistent unit - reason for noninterview.....D-22
Nonexistent unit - see Segment List, changes on
Noninterviews.....D-18
Noninterviews - type:
  Type A.....D-18
  Type B.....D-19
  Type C.....D-21
  Type Z.....D-22
Noninterviews - Type A - excessive.....E-17
Non-motor vehicles.....D-82
Non-moving motor vehicle.....D-82
"Non-prescription medicine" - defined (Question 17).....D-118
Nonregular schools.....D-130
Non-staff units - defined - not included in survey.....A-37, A-48
Nonwhite races.....D-35
Normal delivery or childbirth.....D-75, D-109
"Not home" - concentrate on.....E-16
Not overnight (in hospital), delete.....D-106
NTA Segment - see Segment
Number of days cut down on usual activities.....D-88
Number of days in bed during past 12 months.....D-95
Number of days in bed on account of illness during
  last week or the week before.....D-95
Number of households in survey.....A-5
Number of motor vehicles involved in accident.....D-82
Number of nights in hospital, nursing home or rest home, etc.....D-105
Nurse transmitting doctor's instructions.....D-59
Nursing home, rest home, etc. - defined (Question 13).....D-54
Nursing homes, rest homes, etc., where stay was overnight
  or longer.....D-54

Observation.....E-18
Occasional cigar smoking - how to record entry (Question 21b).....D-127
Occasional cigarette smoking - how to record entry (Question 19a)...D-125
Old injuries causing current ill-effects.....D-47, D-63
One condition reported to be the same as another condition.....D-79
Operation - defined.....D-110
Operation name given for column (d-1).....D-76
Operations - how to report in column (i) of Table II.....D-109
Order of asking question 13(b).....D-53
Order of asking questions 6-13.....D-40
Order of asking questions 18-22.....D-123
Order of asking questions within Table I.....D-56
Order of asking Table A.....D-79

Page

Order of asking Table I....D-56
Order of asking Table II....D-103
Order of listing household members....D-31
Other military service - defined (Question 23)....D-130
"Other" (place) - where accident happened....D-85
Other problems with health (Question 12)....D-43, D-52
Other school systems - how to record answer (Question 24)....D-131
Other Type A noninterviews....D-18
"Other unit" - defined (See also Parts B and C Index)....A-29
Overlapping bed-days....D-92, D-95
Overlapping days of restricted activity....D-92
Own, Rent or Rent-free, definitions of....D-7

Pacing the interview....E-9
"Pack" of cigarettes - how to record entry (Question 18b)....D-124
Part of body affected - column (d-4) of Table I....D-71
Part of body - degree of detail needed....D-72
Partner - household relationship....D-32, D-33
Past 3 months - defined....D-93
Past 12 months - defined....D-49, D-107
Past 12 months' income....D-132
Peace-time service in the Armed Forces....D-130
Periods of Military Service - (Question 23c)....D-130
Permit segments - units not yet started in....D-21
Persons not to be counted as household members....A-41
Persons now in Armed Forces....D-29
Persons "on call"....D-37
Persons present outside immediate family....D-28
Persons temporarily absent from jobs....D-36
Persons temporarily visiting with household....A-41
Persons to be counted as household members....A-40
Persons who have just moved into the housing unit....A-42
Persons who work away from home....A-42
Persons with two or more homes....A-42
Pipe smoking - length of time since you smoked a pipe (Question 22d)....D-128
Pipe smoking - number of pipefuls smoked per day (Question 22c)....D-128
Pipe smoking (Question 22)....D-128
Pipe smoking (regular) - defined - (Question 22d)....D-128
Place - defined for Items 10 and 11....D-8
Place for recreation and sports (Table A)....D-85
Place of purchase of non-prescription medicine (including type of place) (Question 17, column d)....D-121

Page

"Place" on Segment Folder tab....A-8
Plan each day's travel....E-15
Plan your calls....E-16
Poisoning as injury - defined....D-63
Poisonings - injuries - how to record....D-65
Post-graduate schooling - how to count....D-131
Practicing medicine not permitted....E-8
Pregnancy and childbirth....D-75
Prescription medicine - defined - (Question 16)....D-115
Present conditions not causing trouble....D-50
Present effects of "old injuries"....D-47, D-63
Probe questions in questions 6-9....D-42, D-43
Probe questions in question 12....D-43, D-53
Procedure for conditions reported to be the same....D-79
Procedure in determining units to be interviewed....A-7
Production standards....E-19
PSU number....A-8
PSU's in sample....A-5
Public Health Service (U. S.):
  Sponsors survey....A-4
  Uses of survey data....A-2
Publication of survey data:
  Analyzed and published regularly....A-4
  Published by U. S. Public Health Service....A-4
Purpose of survey....A-1

Qualified answer to question 21b (Cigar smoking) - how to record....D-127
Qualified answer to question 19a (Cigarette Smoking) -
  how to record....D-125
Quality and quantity of work....E-14
Quality standards....E-16
Quarterly sample....A-6
Questions 1-5. (Selected personal characteristics)
  How to ask in interviewing....D-27
  Question 1. Names of household members....D-27
  Question 2. Relationship to head of household....D-32
  Question 3. Age last birthday, Race, and Sex....D-34
  Question 4. Marital status....D-35
  Question 5. Work status in past 2 weeks....D-36
  Item H. Whom to interview....D-39

Page

Questions 6-13. (Health Questions) How to ask in interviewing.....D-40
Question 6. Sick last week or week before.....D-46
Question 7. Medicine or treatment taken during past 2 weeks.....D-46
Question 8. Accidents and injuries last week or week before.....D-47
Question 9. Ill-effects from earlier injuries.....D-47
Question 10. Conditions List.....D-48
Question 11. Impairments List.....D-51
Question 12. Other problems with health.....D-52
Question 13. Hospital, stays in.....D-53
Item R.....D-55
Question 14. Visual acuity.....D-101
Question 15. Child 1 year old or under listed as household member..D-112
Completing question 15a - always to be done.....D-112
When to ask questions 15b, 15c, and 15d.....D-112
Questions 16-17. Medicines.....D-114
Question 16. Medicines prescribed by doctor.....D-114
Question 17. Medicines not prescribed by doctor.....D-118
Questions 18-22. Smoking Habits.....D-123
Question 18. Cigarettes smoked during entire life.....D-123
Question 19. Persons now smoking cigarettes.....D-124
Question 20. Former cigarette smokers.....D-126
When to ask in interviewing.....D-126
Question 21. Cigar smoking.....D-127
Question 22. Pipe smoking.....D-128
Questions 23-25. Personal Characteristics and Income
How to ask in interviewing.....D-129
Question 23. Veteran status.....D-129
Question 24. Education.....D-130
Question 25. Family income in past 12 months.....D-132
Question number in Table I.....D-58
Question number in Table II.....D-104
Questions in HEAVY TYPE.....D-24
Questions on personal characteristics.....D-25

Race (Question 3).....D-35
Reaction to drugs.....D-76
Read newspaper print with glasses (Question 14a).....D-101
Re-ask column (c), Table I for "main" condition if "No".....D-72
Re-asking column (d-2), Table I.....D-67
Re-asking column (d-3) of Table I.....D-70
Reasons for obtaining income.....D-134
Recording answers of "don't know".....E-12

Page

Recording information correctly.....E-11
Recording information for unrelated persons.....E-12
Record of calls on household.....D-16
  Calls for entire household.....D-16
  Calls for individual respondents.....D-17
Referral Sheet (Form 11-36) - INTERviewer COMMunication.....E-18
Re-filled prescriptions - how to count (Question 16).....D-115
Refusal-noninterview.....D-18
Refusal to answer questions.....E-4
Register - how to sample staff units.....A-49
Register of persons - when to use in Special Dwelling Places.....A-50
Register - sampling from it for only one building of a
  Special Dwelling Place.....A-50
Regular Cigar smoking - defined (Question 22d).....D-127
Regular (fairly) cigarette smoking - defined (Question 20b).....D-126
Regular pipe smoking - defined (Question 22d).....D-128
Regular school.....D-130
Reinterview by your Supervisor.....E-16
Related - defined.....D-26
Relationship entries - examples of.....D-33
Relationship of persons in Special Dwelling Places.....D-33
Rent, rent-free or own - defined.....D-7
Repeating the answer.....E-8
Repeating the question.....E-8
Reserves of the Armed Forces.....D-30
Resort area - usual residence of inhabitants.....D-19
Rest home, nursing home, etc. - defined (Question 13).....D-54
Restricted activity last week or week before.....D-86
Respondent questions purpose of survey.....E-2
Respondent questions time interview requires.....E-4
Retirement.....D-38
Return call may be necessary.....D-27
Review of work by interviewer.....E-12, E-15
Roomer - household relationship.....D-31, D-33
Roomers and boarders as household members.....A-40
Rules for becoming a successful interviewer.....E-14
Rules for classifying living quarters in
  Special Dwelling Places (See also Parts B and C Index).....A-33
    Armed Forces installations (excluding Armed Forces hospitals)...A-34
    Convents, Monasteries, and Sisters', Brothers', or
      Priests' residences.....A-34

Page

Facilities for housing students - quarters in school for resident students, dormitories, sorority or fraternity houses.A-34
Facilities for housing workers - bunkhouses, labor or logging camps, migratory workers camps, etc.....A-34
Bunkhouses and other barracks-type structures.....A-35
Living quarters other than those in bunkhouses and barracks-type structures.....A-35
Flophouses and missions.....A-35
General hospitals including VA and Armed Forces hospitals, children's hospitals and maternity hospitals.....A-35
Nurses' homes or quarters.....A-35
Private residential clubs and tourist homes.....A-36
Recreational and religious camps.....A-36
Specified institutions listed in Appendix A, (Part A).....A-37
Rules for counting special classes of persons.....A-42
Rules for handling unusual living quarters (See also Parts B and C Index).....A-30
Boarding house.....A-31
Combination rooming and boarding house.....A-31
Guest and servant quarters.....A-30
Hotels.....A-32
Motels, tourist camps or courts, etc.....A-33
Non-transient hotel.....A-32
Rooming house.....A-31
Trailers, boats, tents, and railroad cars.....A-30
Transient hotel.....A-32
Vacation cabins.....A-33
YMCA's and YWCA's.....A-33
Rural TA segments.....A-15

Sales from this place - defined.....D-10
"Same as shown in 2(a)" - when to check in Item 2(b).....D-6
Sample households, selection of.....A-5
Sample PSU's, selection of.....A-5
Sample segments, selection of.....A-5
Sample, quarterly.....A-6
"School day" - defined.....D-89
Schools (where accident happened - Table A).....D-85
Scope of the Survey.....A-6
Seasonal job.....D-37

Page

Segment:
  Area segments - in sample - defined.....A-7
  B segments - in sample - defined.....A-7
  Subsampling when over 20 units in a TA segment.....A-24
  TA and NTA segments.....A-12
Segment boundaries in area segments.....A-13
Segment Folder.....A-8
Segment - in NHS sample.....A-5
Segment List.....A-9
Segment List, changes on:
  B Segments - see Part F
    Converted units.....A-21
    Demolished or nonexistent units.....A-21
    Extra units.....A-18
    Merged units.....A-21
Segment map, use of.....A-13
Separated persons (marital status).....D-35
Serial number on questionnaire.....D-7
Service in Armed Forces, ever.....D-130
Sex (Question 3).....D-35
Shots or injections - not considered as medicine prescribed
  by doctor (Question 16a).....D-115
Sick - defined.....D-42
Sick last week or the week before.....D-46
Smoking habits (Questions 18-22).....D-123, D-128
  Question 18 - Cigarette smoking.....D-123
  Question 19 - Present cigarette smoking.....D-124
  Question 20 - Former cigarette smoking.....D-126
  Question 21 - Cigar smoking.....D-127
  Question 22 - Pipe smoking.....D-128
SOC permit segments - units not yet started.....D-21
"Some other place" (besides home) where accident happened.....D-84
Something entering body - injury - how to record.....D-65
Special Dwelling Listing Sheet (See also Parts B and C Index).....A-22
Special Dwelling Places.....A-22
  Codes for different types - Appendix A, Part A.....A-44
  General.....A-22
  New or missed.....A-22
  See: Rules for classifying Living quarters in Special
       Dwelling Places
  Selecting sample units from a register.....A-22
    Appendix B, Part A.....A-47
Special Dwelling Worksheet:
  Actual number of sample units is larger or smaller than
    number in item e.....A-51

Page

Identification of units to be selected....A-49
When to use....A-47
Sponsorship of survey....A-4
Staff units - defined - included in survey....A-37, A-48
Staff units - how to sample....A-49
Still in hospital last Sunday night....D-108
Street and highway (Table A)....D-84
Strokes - how to ask column (d-3)....D-70
Structures with no living quarters, on property of sample units....A-20
Students as household members....A-40, A-41
Subsampling in TA segment....A-25
Successful interviews - getting enough....E-15
Symbols used....D-24
Symptoms - defined....D-67
Symptoms - List of (Card D)....D-67
Synonyms of symptoms on Card D....D-67

TA segment - see Segment
Table A....D-79
At work when accident happened....D-85
Injuries requiring Table A....D-79
Instructions for filling Table A....D-79
Motor vehicle involved in accident....D-81
Nature of injury and part of body....D-81
Order of asking....D-80
When the accident or injury happened....D-81
Where the accident or injury happened....D-85
Table I....D-56
Column (a)....Column number of person....D-56
Column (b)....Question number....D-58
Column (c)....Doctor ever talked to....D-58
Column (d-1)....What did the doctor say it was....D-61
Column (d-2)....Cause of impairments and symptoms and conditions reported in question 9 or 11....D-66
Column (d-3)....Kind of trouble....D-68
Column (d-4)....Part of body affected....D-71
Columns (e)-(h)....Restricted activity last week or week before..D-86
Column (i)....Number of days cut down during that 2-week period....D-88
Column (j)....Number of days in bed....D-89
Column (k)....Days lost from school....D-89
Column (l)....Days lost from work....D-90

Page

Cols. (m), (n).....Condition first noticed before or during past 3 months.....D-92
Column (o).....Condition started before or during past 2 weeks.....D-93
Column (p).....Condition first noticed during or before past 12 months.....D-93
Column (aa).....Instructions to interviewer for carrying conditions beyond column (aa).....D-94
Column (q).....Bed days during past 12 months.....D-95
Column (r).....Bed days during last week or the week before..D-95
Column (s).....Number of times doctor seen in past 12 months.D-96
Column (t).....Activities affected by health.....D-96
Column (u).....Due to illness conditions.....D-99
Column (v).....Mobility limitation.....D-99
Column (w).....Which condition.....D-100
Table II.....D-103
Column (a).....Column number of person.....D-104
Column (b).....Question number.....D-104
Column (c).....Date entered hospital.....D-104
Column (d).....Number of nights in hospital, nursing home or rest home.....D-105
Column (e).....Number of nights in past 12 months.....D-107
Column (f).....Number of nights during past 2 weeks.....D-107
Column (g).....Still there last Sunday night.....D-108
Column (h).....Condition causing hospitalization or stay in nursing home or rest home.....D-108
Column (i).....Operations performed.....D-109
Column (j).....Name and address of hospital.....D-111
Instruction.....When to carry a condition picked up from Table II back through Table I.....D-112
Table NP.....D-118
Column (a).....Name and brand of medicine.....D-119
Column (b).....When bought.....D-120
Column (c).....Cost of medicine.....D-120
Column (d).....Place of purchase.....D-121
Column (e).....Users of the non-prescription medicine.....D-122
Table P.....D-114
Instructions.....D-114
Column (a).....Name of medicine.....D-115
Column (b).....For what condition.....D-116
Column (c).....For whom prescribed.....D-116
Column (d).....When bought.....D-114, D-117
Column (e).....Cost of medicine.....D-117

Page

Table X - Classification of living quarters discovered (See also Part F)....D-14
"Talked to" doctor - defined....D-58
"Talking to" the nurse under doctor's supervision....D-59
Telephone calls to doctors' offices....D-59
Telephone calls to respondents....E-13
Telephone number of household....D-15
Temporarily absent - from job....D-36
Temporarily absent - noninterview....D-19
Temporarily not smoking - how to record (Question 19a)....D-125
"Temporary" activity limitations....D-99
"Things you usually do" - defined....D-86
"Time" of purchase of medicine prescribed by a doctor - defined (Table P, Column d)....D-114
Time reference of questions 6-8....D-43
Trailers - own or rent....D-8
Transmittal of assignments and materials....E-21
Treatment or medicine during last week or week before (Question 7)..D-46
Tumors, cysts and other growths....D-76
Two conditions reported separately turn out to be the same....D-79
Two-week period - "last week or week before" - defined....D-44
Type of doctor - defined....D-59
Types of conditions that may cause reporting problems....D-74
Types of units (housing unit or "other unit")....A-27, D-13

Uncertain injuries reported in Table I - how to treat....D-78
Under construction - noninterview....D-20
Unfamiliar medical terms....D-62
Unfit for human habitation - housing unit - noninterview....D-22
Ungraded school attendance....D-131
Units no longer in existence or listed in error....A-21
Units not yet started in SOC permit segments....D-21
Unusual living quarters, rules for handling....A-30
Urban TA segments....A-16
Use additional questionnaires if more than 6 household members....D-31
Use of "DK" - general rules....E-12
Use of footnotes....D-25
Use of probe questions in questions 6-9....D-42, D-43
Use of probe questions in question 12....D-43, D-53
Use of pronoun "you"....D-24
Use of three dots....D-24
Use of two dashes....D-24
Use your calendar....D-104

Page

Users of survey data.....A-4
Uses of survey data.....A-2
Usual activities cut down - examples of.....D-87
Usual activities cut down last week or week before.....D-86
Usual activities - defined.....D-86
Usual place of residence - defined.....A-39
Usual place of residence elsewhere - noninterview.....D-19
Usual place of residence for patients in general hospitals.....A-40
Usual place of residence for patients in nursing homes, rest homes, and similar places.....A-41

Vacant - migratory workers - noninterview.....D-21
Vacant - nonseasonal - noninterview.....D-19
Vacant - seasonal - noninterview.....D-19
Vacant trailer space - noninterview.....D-21
Vaccinations, immunizations, etc., resulting in illnesses.....D-76
Vague responses - illnesses.....D-60
Vague responses - injuries.....D-62
Vision (Question 14) - when and how to ask.....D-101
Visitors in household temporarily.....A-41
Visits, number allowed.....E-16
Visual acuity (Question 14).....D-101
Volunteered conditions later in the interview - when to carry back to Table I.....D-78
Volunteered conditions while reading Card A - where to record.....D-51
Volunteered information.....E-5

War-time service in the Armed Forces.....D-130
Week of interview.....A-8
What the doctor called the condition in col. (d-1) of Table I.....D-62
What to record in question 9.....D-48
What was the matter - probe question.....D-42
When one condition is reported to be the same as another.....D-79
When the accident happened (Table A).....D-80
When to ask additional questions.....E-10
When to ask cause - column (d-2) of Table I.....D-66
When to ask item 13 instead of item 12 on page 1.....D-12
When to ask kind of trouble - column (d-3) of Table I.....D-68
When to ask part of body - column (d-4) of Table I.....D-71
When to ask question 20.....D-126

Page

When to re-ask column (d-2) of Table I.....D-67
When to re-ask column (d-3) of Table I.....D-70
When to start interviewing assignment.....E-17
When two conditions reported separately turn out to be the same.....D-79
Where the accident happened.....D-81
Who are household members.....D-30
Who responded, Item R.....D-55
Who uses non-prescription medicine - defined (Table NP, col. e).....D-122
Whom to include in survey.....A-39
Whom to interview, Item H.....D-39
Why "this" household was selected.....E-4
With a job or business.....D-36
Wording of questions to be followed.....E-6
Words in parentheses.....D-24
"Work day" - defined.....D-90
Work status in past 2 weeks.....D-35
Working - defined.....D-36
Working when accident happened.....D-85
World War II - date of service (Question 23c).....D-130

"Year Built" determination.....D-1
  Cases when inquiry about "year built" is not to be made.....D-4
  Definition of "Year Built".....D-3
  Identification of units for which "Year Built" is to
    be determined.....D-2
  Meaning of "Year Built" determination.....D-3
  Procedure for determining "Year Built".....D-2
  Procedure for "extra" units.....D-5
  Procedure for structures built after April 1, 1960.....D-3
  Procedure for structures built before April 1, 1960.....D-3
Years of school (or highest grade) attended.....D-130
Years of school (or highest grade) finished.....D-131
"You" as used for person other than respondent.....D-24
Your manner.....E-4

USCOMM--DC